

# **A DICTIONARY OF JAPANESE PARTICLES**

**Sue A. Kawashima**

**KODANSHA INTERNATIONAL**

Tokyo • New York • London



*To my students*

## PREFACE

Although there are many difficult grammatical points that a student must master in learning the Japanese language, particles belong in a class by themselves. Appearing in nearly every sentence, they are absolutely crucial to a proper understanding of the intended meaning. A student may possess a large vocabulary and a good grasp of verb conjugation, but without a firm command of particles, he or she cannot hope to construct consistently correct sentences. In choice and placement, particles can completely transform the meaning of two sentences that are otherwise exactly the same.

Throughout my teaching career I have felt that particles were the key to learning Japanese. Though not a linguist, I have many years of teaching experience, and in this book I hope to have made good use of that experience by helping students come to a better understanding of particle usage. If the student benefits in any substantial way, I will feel my efforts have been rewarded.

I wish to thank my students at Hunter College, who, by posing many thought-provoking questions, have contributed to the making of this book.

I would also like to express my sincere gratitude to Tetsuo Kuramochi of Kodansha International, who helped to bring about this incarnation of the original edition, *Particles Plus*.

Lastly, I am indebted for much of the translation herein to my daughter, a professor of Japanese literature, who has edited all of my work.

Sue A. Kawashima  
Spring, 1999

Previously published by Harcourt Brace Jovanovich Japan as *Particles Plus*.

Distributed in the United States by Kodansha America, Inc., 575 Lexington Avenue, New York N.Y. 10022, and in the United Kingdom and continental Europe by Kodansha Europe Ltd., 95 Aldwych, London WC2B 4JF. Published by Kodansha International Ltd., 17-14 Otowa 1-chome, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo 112-8652, and Kodansha America, Inc.

Copyright © 1999 by Sue A. Kawashima

All rights reserved. Printed in Japan

First edition, 1999

99 00 01 02 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

ISBN 4-7700-2352-9



# CONTENTS

## PREFACE

INTRODUCTION .....	i
--------------------	---

(C.P. = Combination Particles)

BA ば .....	1
BAKARI ばかり .....	5
<b>DAKE</b> だけ .....	10
DAKE-NI だけに(C.P.) .....	13
DANO だの .....	14
DATTE だって .....	15
<b>DE</b> で .....	17
DEMO でも .....	26
DOKORO どころ .....	29
DOKOROKA どころか .....	29
DOMO ども .....	30
<b>E</b> へ .....	30
<b>GA</b> が .....	34
GA-NA(GA-NAA) が-な(が-なあ)(C.P.) .....	42
GATERA がてら .....	42
HODO ほど .....	43
HOKA ほか .....	45
I い .....	45
KA か .....	46
KA-I かい(C.P.) .....	51
KA-NA(KA-NAA) か-な(か-なあ)(C.P.) .....	52
<b>KARA</b> から .....	53
KARA-SHITE から-して(C.P.) .....	65
KASHIRA かしら .....	66
KE け .....	69

# KEREDOMO (KEREDO, KEDO, KEDOMO)

けれども(けれど、けど、けども) .....	70
KIRI きり .....	73
KOSO こそ .....	75
KOTO こと .....	77
KURAI (GURAI) くらい(ぐらい) .....	79
KUSE-NI くせ-に(C.P.) .....	81
<b>MADE</b> まで .....	83
MADE-MO まで-も(C.P.) .....	88
MADE-NI まで-に(C.P.) .....	89
<b>MO</b> も .....	91
MONO もの .....	98
MONO-DE (MON-DE) もの-で(もん-で) (C.P.) .....	99
MONOKA (MONKA) ものか(もんか) .....	100
MONONARA (MON-NARA) ものなら(もん-なら) .....	101
MONONO ものの .....	102
MONO-O もの-を .....	103
NA (NAA) な(なあ) .....	105
NADO (NANKA) など(なんか) .....	108
NAGARA ながら .....	110
NAGARA-MO ながら-も(C.P.) .....	111
NANTE なんて .....	112
NARI なり .....	113
N-DE ん-で(C.P.) .....	115
NE (NEE) ね(ねえ) .....	116
<b>NI</b> に .....	118
NI-MO に-も(C.P.) .....	136
NI-MO-KAKAWARA-ZU に-も-かわら-ず(C.P.) .....	137
NI-OI-TE に-おい-て(C.P.) .....	138
NI-SHITE に-して(C.P.) .....	140
NI-SHITE-MO に-して-も(C.P.) .....	140
NI-SHITE-WA に-して-は(C.P.) .....	141
NITE にて .....	142
<b>NO (N)</b> の(ん) .....	143

NO-DA (N-DA) の-だ(ん-だ) (C.P.)	158
NO-DAROO (N-DAROO) の-だろう(ん-だろう) (C.P.)	159
NODE (N-DE) ので(ん-で)	160
NO-DE の-で (C.P.)	162
NO-DE ARU の-である (C.P.)	163
NO-DESHOO (N-DESHOO) の-でしょう(ん-でしょう) (C.P.)	164
NO-DESU (N-DESU) の-です(ん-です) (C.P.)	164
NOMI のみ	166
NONI のに	167
NO-NI の-に (C.P.)	169
O(WO) を	170
SA さ	177
SAE さえ	179
SHI し	180
SHIKA しか	182
SHIMO しも	183
SURA すら	185
TARA たら	186
TARI たり	188
TATTE たって	189
TE て	190
TEBA てば	195
TEMO (DEMO) ても(でも)	196
TE-NE て-ね (C.P.)	198
TE-WA て-は (C.P.)	198
TO と	200
TO-IE-BA と-いえ-ば (C.P.)	210
TO-II と-いい (C.P.)	210
TO-ITTA と-いった (C.P.)	211
TO-ITTE と-いって (C.P.)	211
TO-IWA-ZU と-いわ-ず (C.P.)	212
TOKA とか	213
TOKORO ところ	215
TOKORODE ところで	215

TOKORO-E ところへ(C.P.)	216
TOKOROGA ところが	216
TOKORO-O ところを	217
TOMO とも	218
TO-MO とも(C.P.)	220
TO-MO-ARE と-もあれ(C.P.)	220
TO-SHI-TE と-して(C.P.)	222
TO-SHITE-MO と-して-も(C.P.)	223
TO-SHITE-WA と-して-は(C.P.)	224
TO-WA と-は(C.P.)	225
TO-WA-IE と-はいえ(C.P.)	226
TO-YUU と-いう(C.P.)	227
TO-YUU-KOTO-WA と-いう-こと-は(C.P.)	229
TO-YUU-NO-WA(MO) と-いう-の-は(も)(C.P.)	230
TO-YUU-TO と-いう-と(C.P.)	231
TTE って	232
WA は	235
WA わ	239
YA や	241
YAI やい	246
YA-INA-YA や-いな-や(C.P.)	247
YARA やら	248
YO よ	251
YORI より	253
ZE ぜ	257
ZO ぞ	258
ZUTSU ずつ	259
MASTERING PARTICLES : EXERCISES	261
ANSWER KEYS	319
PATTERNS	324
GLOSSARY (English-Japanese)	329
GLOSSARY (Japanese-English)	339

# INTRODUCTION

## DEFINITION OF PARTICLES

- 1) A particle (助詞 *joshi*) in the Japanese language follows a word to:
  - A) show its relationship to other words in a sentence, and/or
  - B) give that word a particular meaning or nuance.
- 2) Unlike verbs, adjectives and adverbs, particles are not inflected, and therefore stay in the same form regardless of where they appear in a sentence.
- 3) Generally, particles are considered to be equivalent to prepositions, conjunctions and interjections of the English language; of these three, the majority of particles belong to the first category.
- 4) A particle should always be placed after the word it modifies, which means that in translating them into English, the word order should be changed.

Example:

English phrase: “top of the desk”

Japanese phrase: tsukue no ue = “(the) desk of top”

## WHEN TO USE PARTICLES

Consider the following sentence: “My mother *and* my father had dinner at a restaurant *in* Tokyo *with* a friend.”

This example contains three prepositions (at, in, with) and one conjunction (and). However, the same sentence translated into Japanese is:

“Watashi *no* haha *to* chichi *wa* tomodachi *to* issho *ni* tookyoo *no* resutoran *de* yuushoku *o* tabe-mashita.”

There are eight particles in the above example. Note, then, two points:

- 1) You cannot simply replace English prepositions, conjunctions and interjections with particles; there are particles that cannot be translated into English but still have vital functions in a Japanese sentence.
- 2) Nouns are usually followed by particles.

When you are just starting to learn Japanese, get into the habit of looking for the appropriate particle every time you see a noun. Of course, there are exceptions to this rule:

A) Particles are normally not placed directly before a copula (*desu*, *da*, *deshita*, *datta*, etc.).

Example: “This is an apple.” = *kore wa ringo desu*.

Note the absence of any particles before “*desu*,” even though *ringo* (“apple”) is a noun.

B) Words that express quantity, extent, or numbers are not usually followed by particles, even though they are considered nouns.

Example: “Please give me three of those.” = *sore o mit-tsu kudasai*.

Note that *mit-tsu* (“three”) is not followed by a particle, though it is considered a noun.

Particles also follow verbs, adjectives, and adverbs, though less frequently than nouns. Learning when to use particles after verbs, adjectives,

and adverbs is really a matter of memorization.

## FUNCTIONS OF PARTICLES

As stated above, particles are vital in Japanese. Consider the case of pronouns in English: “I,” “my,” and “me” are separate words that independently signify their functions in a sentence. However, in Japanese, there is one word *watashi* that serves as the basic “stem” for the singular first-person pronoun, and the subjective, possessive, and objective cases are constructed in the following ways, through the use of particles:

“I” = watashi	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 0 2px;">wa</span>	/watashi	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 0 2px;">ga</span>		わたし	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 0 2px;">は</span>	/わたし	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 0 2px;">が</span>
“my” = watashi	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 0 2px;">no</span>				わたし	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 0 2px;">の</span>		
“me” = watashi	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 0 2px;">ni</span>	/watashi	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 0 2px;">o (wo)</span>		わたし	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 0 2px;">に</span>	/わたし	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 0 2px;">を</span>

It’s clear, then, that only through the use of particles can the precise function of the stem “watashi” be identified.

Let’s look at another set of examples. The meaning of the English sentence “I eat fish” is straightforward: the subject is “I,” the verb “eat” is a transitive verb that requires an object, which is “fish” in this case. However, if we translate it into Japanese without particles, it would look like this:

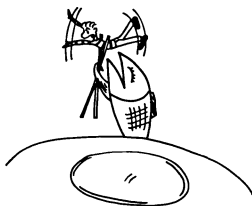
watashi      sakana      taberu.

As it stands, this group of words has no apparent meaning. If we were to insert some possible particles after the two nouns, we can create sentences with vastly different meanings (particles are enclosed in squares):

watashi  sakana  taberu. “I eat fish” (the meaning of the original English sentence)



watashi  sakana  taberu. “The fish eats me.”



watashi  sakana  taberu. “I, too, eat fish.”

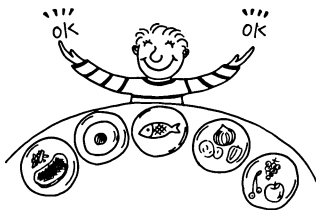


watashi  sakana  taberu. “The fish and I eat (something).”





watashi **wa** sakana **mo** taberu. “I eat fish also (as well as other things).”



watashi **mo** sakana **wa** taberu. “Even I eat (it if it's) fish.”



There are other possibilities as well, but you can see from these rather humorous examples that you could be communicating completely different messages depending on the particles you choose, even though your nouns, verbs, and other parts of speech in a sentence remain the same! It is therefore essential for you to grasp the usage of particles in order to master the Japanese language.

## FEATURES OF THIS BOOK

This book is designed for use by students of Japanese at almost all levels. For the beginners, the most fundamental particles are shown in bold face, explained in detail, and accompanied by illustrations where appropri-

ate. Since this book contains most particles in the Japanese language with their usages and examples, even intermediate- and advanced-level students can use it as a reference tool.

(1) Only particles used in Modern Japanese are included. Some archaic or very rarely-used particles have been omitted. Certain combination particles (C.P.) called rengo (連語) which frequently occur are also explained in this book. The combination particle (C.P.) combines particles and other words such as adverbs, copulas, etc.

(2) Particles have squares around them every time they appear in an example sentence (such as no), and parts of speech of the words, or phrases/clauses that they modify are underlined: n. \_\_\_\_\_ for nouns, v. \_\_\_\_\_ for verbs, adj. \_\_\_\_\_ for adjectives, adv. \_\_\_\_\_ for adverbs, c. \_\_\_\_\_ for copulas, cl. \_\_\_\_\_ for clauses, ph. \_\_\_\_\_ for phrases, etc. However, certain patterns and phrases are not underlined, since they are considered one unit, including the particle enclosed in the square. Their usages are listed in outline form, together with the closest approximate English equivalents where applicable. Sample sentences using the particles follow their definitions.

(3) Particles are listed in alphabetical order in dictionary form, and there is a glossary at the back that lists the approximate English meanings and the corresponding particles. Also, for quick reference, see the chart on the endpapers.

(4) Although the Japanese sentences contain mostly Joo-yoo-Kanji (most commonly used standard Kanji), there are a few exceptions where other Kanji appear.

(5) Some sample sentences contain some compounds that are slightly advanced, but most of the sample sentences rely on basic vocabulary so that they are easy to understand, even for beginning-level students.

(6) All Kanji (Chinese characters) are accompanied by furigana (phonetic readings in hiragana) over them so that the student can immediately recognize their pronunciation.

(7) Grammar is explained in a way that English-speaking students can understand clearly; consequently, the method differs from the way grammar is taught to native Japanese speakers.

(8) Question marks appear much less frequently in a Japanese question than in English. However, in order to clearly indicate interrogative sentences, they are followed by question marks.

(9) There are exercises at the back of the book that are designed to familiarize the beginning-level student with the most fundamental particles. An answer key is also provided.

(10) The Romanization system of this book basically follows the Hepburn system as shown in the chart below.

aあ	ア	い	イ	う	ウ	eえ	エ	oお	オ
kaか	カ	kiき	キ	kuく	ク	keけ	ケ	koこ	コ
saさ	サ	shiし	シ	suす	ス	seせ	セ	soそ	ソ
taた	タ	chiち	チ	tsuつ	ツ	teて	テ	toと	ト
naな	ナ	niに	ニ	nuぬ	ヌ	neね	ネ	noの	ノ
haは	ハ	hiひ	ヒ	fuふ	フ	heへ	ヘ	hoほ	ホ
maま	マ	miみ	ミ	muむ	ム	meめ	メ	moも	モ
yaや	ヤ	—		yuゆ	ユ	—		yoよ	ヨ

raら	ラ	riり	リ	ruる	ル	reれ	レ	roろ	ロ
waわ	ワ	—	—	—	—	—	—	o(wo)を	ヲ
nん	ン								
gaが	ガ	giぎ	ギ	guぐ	グ	geげ	ゲ	goご	ゴ
zaざ	ザ	ziじ	ジ	zuず	ズ	zeぜ	ゼ	zoぞ	ゾ
daだ	ダ	jiぢ	ヂ	zuづ	ヅ	deで	デ	doど	ド
baば	バ	biび	ビ	buぶ	ブ	beべ	ベ	boぼ	ボ
paぱ	パ	piぴ	ピ	puぷ	プ	peぺ	ペ	poぽ	ポ
kyaきゃ	キャ		kyuきゅ	キュ		kyoきょ	キョ		
shaしゃ	シャ		shuしゅ	シュ		shoしゅ	ショ		
chaちゃ	チャ		chuちゅ	チュ		choちょ	チョ		
nyaにゃ	ニャ		nyuにゅ	ニュ		nyoにょ	ニョ		
hyaひゃ	ヒャ		hyuひゅ	ヒュ		hyoひょ	ヒョ		
myaみゃ	ミャ		myuみゅ	ミュ		myoみょ	ミョ		
ryaりゃ	リャ		ryuりゅ	リュ		ryoりょ	リョ		
jaじゃ	ジャ		juじゅ	ジュ		joじょ	ジョ		
byaびゃ	ビャ		byuびゅ	ビュ		byoびょ	ビョ		
pyaぴゃ	ピャ		pyuぴゅ	ピュ		pyoぴょ	ピョ		

(a) Long vowels are indicated by two vowels placed one after the other.

Example: Tokyo ..... Tookyoo

The second vowel will remind the beginning-level student that there should be a hiragana character there that stands in for the long vowel sound.

Example: To o kyo o (Tokyo) ; e e ga (movie)  
 と う き ょ う え い が

- (b) Two identical vowels that are placed right next to each other are separated by hyphens, in order to avoid confusion with the long vowel sound.

Example: kinoo (yesterday)

monoo (particle “mono” + another particle “o”)

- (c) Some words are divided by hyphens to indicate the separate syllables, or the separate units, that compose the word, so that it is easier to identify these elements visually.

Examples: ありません…………ari-masen (there is/are not)

勉強する…………benkyoo-suru (to study)

生き字引…………iki-jibiki (a walking dictionary)

思い出す…………omoi-dasu (to remember)

女…………on-na (a woman)

している…………shite-iru (be doing)

食べたい…………tabe-tai (to want to eat)

読まない…………yoma-nai (do not read)

- (d) The honorific prefixes “o” and “go” are considered as being part of the word, and therefore are not set off by a hyphen.

Example: oree (appreciation) omatsuri (festival)

gohan (meal) gochisoo (delicacies)

## **List of Abbreviations**

adj. = adjective

adv. = adverb

c. = copula (da/desu, datta/deshita, daroo/deshoo, etc.)

cl. = clause

conj. = conjunction

c.p. = combination particle

g. = gerund (te/de form)

interj. = interjection

m. = mimesis

n. = noun (including pronouns), and nominal

o. = onomatopoeia

p. = particle

ph. = phrase

## BA ば

1. Presents a condition that would result in the clause that follows.

English approximation: “if ...”

- A) <sup>いまで</sup>今出かけれ ば <sup>ま</sup>間に合いますよ。

Ima <sub>v.</sub> dekakere ba maniai-masu yo.

If you leave now, you'll make it in time.

- B) こんなペンでもよけれ ば どうぞ。

Kon-na pen demo <sub>adj.</sub> yokere ba doozo.

If this sort of pen is okay with you, go ahead (and use it). (implication: the pen is not so great.)

- C) <sup>あめ</sup>雨さえ<sup>ふ</sup>降れ ば <sup>ほうさく</sup>豊作は<sup>まちが</sup>間違いないのだから。

Ame sae <sub>v.</sub> fure ba hoosaku wa machigai-nai noda ga.

If only it would rain, there's sure to be a bountiful harvest.

2. Shows a cause-and-effect relationship between the topic it presents and the clause or phrase that follows.

English approximation: “when (something happens) ...” (instead of “if ...”  
above)

- A) こおろぎが<sup>な</sup>鳴き<sup>だ</sup>出せ ば <sup>あき</sup>秋も<sup>まぢか</sup>間近い。

Koorogi ga <sub>v.</sub> naki-dase ba aki mo ma-jikai.

When crickets start to chirp, autumn is just around the corner.

- B) <sup>ゆうや</sup>夕焼けになれ ば <sup>よくじつ</sup>翌日は<sup>てんき</sup>天気になる。

Yuyake ni <sub>v.</sub> nare ba yokujitsu wa tenki ni naru.

When there's a vivid sunset, the next day will be clear.

3. In set patterns such as “... to ie ba ...” and “... hara ba ...”

らば,” indicates the topic which is to be discussed in the phrase or clause that follows.

English approximation: the nuance is similar to “speaking of (topic)...,” “in terms of (topic)...,” or “according to (topic)...”

- A) おすしなら **ば** <sup>みせ</sup>あの店がおいしいですよ。

Osushi c. nara **ba** ano mise ga oishii desu yo.

In terms of sushi, that restaurant is a good one.

- B) うわさによれ **ば** <sup>かのじょ</sup>、<sup>こいびと</sup>彼女は<sup>わか</sup>恋人と別れたらしい。

Uwasa ni v. yore **ba**, kanojo wa koibito to wakareta rashii.

According to rumors, she broke up with her boyfriend.

- C) ミステリー<sup>えい</sup>映画<sup>が</sup>と言え **ば**、やっぱりヒッチコックの<sup>いちばん</sup>が一番だね。

Misuterii eega to v. ie **ba**, yappari Hitchcockku no ga ichiban dane.

Speaking of mystery movies, Hitchcock's are the best after all, don't you think?

4. Similar to the meanings of the patterns “... suru to ～すると” and “... shita tokoro ga ～したところが.”

English approximation: “considering (something, it is evident that ...)”

- A) <sup>まえ</sup>前の<sup>しごと</sup>仕事を<sup>おも</sup>思え **ば**、<sup>いま</sup>今の<sup>しごと</sup>仕事は<sup>らく</sup>楽なものです。

Mae no shigoto o v. omoe **ba**, ima no shigoto wa rakuna mono desu.

Considering my former job, my current job is pretty easy.

- B) <sup>よろんちょうき</sup>世論調査からみれ **ば**、その<sup>せいじか</sup>政治家の<sup>にんき</sup>人気は<sup>お</sup>かなり落ちたようだ。

Yoron-choosa kara v. mire **ba**, sono seejika no ninki wa kanari ochita yoo da.



In looking at the public opinion polls, it seems that the politician's popularity has fallen quite a bit.

5. In a "... mo ...ba 〜も〜ば" pattern, serves to list events, categories and things.

English approximation: "(something) and (something) also," or "neither ... nor ..."

- A) <sup>おんな</sup>女もいれ ば <sup>おとこ</sup>男もいる。

On-na mo <sub>v.</sub> ire ba otoko mo iru.

There are women, and there are also men.

- B) <sup>た</sup>食べる <sup>もの</sup>物もなけれ ば、<sup>す</sup>住む <sup>ところ</sup>所もない。

Taberu mono mo <sub>v.</sub> nakere ba, sumu tokoro mo nai.

There isn't anything to eat, or anywhere to live. (i.e. There's neither food nor shelter.)

- C) <sup>かのじょ</sup>彼女は <sup>ひ</sup>ピアノ <sup>え</sup>も弾け ば <sup>た</sup>絵 <sup>さい</sup>もかく <sup>ひと</sup>多才な人です。

Kanojo wa piano mo <sub>v.</sub> hike ba e mo kaku tasai na hito desu.

She's a multi-talented person who can play the piano and paint as well.

6. In the patterns "ne ba nara-nai ねばならない" and "nakere ba nara-nai/nari-masen なければならぬ/なりません," to indicate that something has to be done or that a standard must be observed.

English approximation: "must do (something)."

- A) <sup>とうきょう</sup>東京 <sup>まい</sup>には <sup>つき</sup>毎月 <sup>しゅっ</sup>出張 <sup>ちゅう</sup>で行 <sup>い</sup>かなけれ ば なりません。

Tookyoo ni wa maitzuki shucchoo de <sub>ph.</sub> ikanakere ba nari-  
imasen.

(I) have to go to Tokyo every month on business trips.

- B) 予算内<sup>よ さん ない</sup>で計画<sup>けい かく</sup>を立てね<sup>た</sup> **ば** ならない。

Yosan-nai de keekaku o <sub>ph.</sub> tatene **ba** naranai.

(I) must devise plans within the budget.

- C) 人<sup>ひと</sup>との約束<sup>やくそく</sup>は守<sup>まも</sup>らなけれ **ば** ならない。

Hito to no yakusoku wa <sub>ph.</sub> mamoranakere **ba** naranai.

One has to keep promises one makes to others.

7. In set patterns such as “iwa ba いわば” and “tatoe ba たとえば.”

English approximation: “let us say ...” or “so to speak.”

- A) ハロウィーンは、たとえ **ば** <sup>に ほん</sup> 日本のお盆<sup>ぼん</sup>のようなものです。

Harowiin wa, <sub>ph.</sub> tatoe **ba** nihon no obon no yoo na mono desu.

Halloween is, let us say, similar to the Obon festival in Japan.

- B) 彼は、いわ **ば** <sup>い</sup> 生き字引<sup>じ び き</sup>のようなものだ。

Kare wa, <sub>ph.</sub> iwa **ba** iki-jibiki no yoo na mono da.

He is, so to speak, like a living dictionary.

8. In the set pattern “naze nara ba なぜならば.”

English approximation: “the reason being...” or “because...”

- A) 時間<sup>じ かん</sup>があれば、汽車<sup>き し ゃ</sup>で行くべきだ。なぜなら **ば** <sup>ほ う</sup> その方が景色<sup>け し き</sup>を十分<sup>じ ゅ う ぶん</sup>楽しめるから。

Jikan ga are ba, kisha de iku beki da. <sub>ph.</sub> Naze nara **ba** sono hoo ga keshiki o juubun tanoshimeru kara.

If (you) have the time, (you) should go by train, because (you) will be able to fully enjoy the scenery that way.

- B) 人<sup>ひと</sup>に意地悪<sup>い じ わる</sup>をしないほうがいい。なぜなら **ば** <sup>じ ぶん</sup> いつか自分<sup>も づ</sup>に戻<sup>く</sup>って来るからだ。

Hito ni ijiwaru o shi-nai hoo ga ii. <sub>ph.</sub> Naze nara **ba** itsuka jibun

ni modotte-kuru kara da.

One shouldn't do mean things to others, because some day, (your deeds) might be returned to you.

## BAKARI ばかり

1. Indicates a limit.

1) Shows that something is always limited to a particular action, place, or thing. Similar to “dake だけ” or “nomi のみ.”

English approximation: “always just doing (something),” or “doing only one thing all the time”

A) その子犬はいつも眠ってばかりいます。

Sono koinu wa itsumo g. nemutte bakari i-masu.

That puppy is always just sleeping.

B) いつまでも遊んでばかりいないで早く職でも見つけなさいよ。

Itsu made mo g. asonde bakari i-nai de hayaku shoku demo mitsuke nasai yo.

Why don't you stop playing around all the time and look for a job or something?

C) うちにばかりいないで、たまには外出しよう。

Uchi p. ni bakari i-nai de, tama ni wa gaishutsu-shiyoo.

Instead of just being at home all the time, let's go out once in a while.

2)

English approximation: “could only do (something)”

- A) そのニュースを聞いて、彼はただおろおろするばかりでした。

Sono nyuusu o kiite, kare wa tada v. oro-oro-suru bakari deshita.

Hearing that news, he could only panic.

- B) 突然の停電に人々は右往左往するばかりだった。

Totsuzen no teeden ni hito-bito wa v. uoo-saoo-suru bakari datta.

In the sudden blackout, all people could do was wander in confusion.

- 3) In the pattern “bakari ni ばかりに.”

English approximation: the nuance is “solely due to (one cause), matters took a turn for the worse.”

- A) あの電車に乗ったばかりに、事故に遭った。

Ano densha ni v. notta bakari ni, jiko ni atta.

It was only because I got on that train that I was involved in an accident.

- B) 犯罪の場にたまたま居合わせたばかりに、事件に巻き込まれてしまった。

Hanzai no ba ni tama-tama v. i-awaseta bakari ni, jiken ni maki-komarete shimatta.

It was only because (I) just happened to be at the scene of the crime that (I) got dragged into the case.

2. Indicates a degree of things.

- 1) Similar to “hodo ほど” and “kurai/gurai くらい/ぐらい.” Usually preceded by a number or quantity.

English approximation: “approximately”

- A) 彼はニメートルばかりもある大男です。

Kare wa n. ni-meetoru bakari mo aru oo-otoko desu.

He is a big man, at about two meters tall.

- B) 旅行の費用は全部で五十万円ばかりかった。

Ryokoo no hiyoo wa zenbu de n. gojuu-man en bakari kakatta.

The total cost of the trip came to about five hundred thousand yen.

- C) わたしは十日ばかり留守にします。

Watashi wa n. tooku bakari rusu ni shi-masu.

I will be away for about ten days.

- 2) Following a verb, shows that the action is/was about to be carried out.

English approximation: “just about to do (something)”

- A) 食事を作り終って、もう食べるばかりのところに、電話がかかってきました。

Shokuji o tsukuri-owatte, moo v. taberu bakari no tokoro ni, denwa ga kakatte ki-mashita.

I had finished cooking the meal and was about to eat it when there was a phone call.

- B) 雨が降り出さんばかりの空模様だ。

Ame ga v. furi-dasan bakari no sora moyoo da.

The sky looks like it's about to rain.

- 3) In the pattern “...ta bakari ～たばかり,” to indicate that an action has/had just been completed.

English approximation: “have/has just done (something)”

- A) わたしは習ったばかりの日本語を使ってみました。

Watashi wa v. naratta bakari no nihon-go o tsukatte mi-mashita.

I tried using Japanese that I had just learned.

- B) さっき食べたばかりなのに、またすぐおなかですいてしまった。

Sakki v. tabeta bakari na noni, mata sugu onaka ga suite shimatta.

Although I had just eaten a little while ago, I was hungry again right away.

3. In the pattern “bakari ka ばかりか.” (also see p. 12 4.)

English approximation: “not only (something), but also (something)…”

- A) <sup>あたま</sup>頭 bakari か のど <sup>いた</sup>も痛い。

n. Atama bakari ka nodo mo itai.

Not only my head but my throat hurts, too.

- B) <sup>せいと</sup>あの生徒は<sup>きょうじゅ</sup>教授にごまをする bakari か、<sup>てん</sup>カンニングまでしていい点をとろうとするそうだ。

Ano seeto wa kyooju ni v. goma-o-suru bakari ka, kanningu made shite ii ten o toroo to suru soo da.

I hear that student not only butters up professors, but even cheats to get good grades.

4. In the patterns “... bakari de (wa) naku ... mo 〜ばかりで(は)なく〜も,” “bakari ja naku ... mo 〜ばかりじゃなく〜も.” (also see p. 12)

English approximation: “not only ... (a noun, an adjective, a verb) but also ... (a noun, an adjective, a verb)”

- A) <sup>おとこ</sup>男の子 bakari じゃなく、<sup>おんな</sup>女の子も<sup>おおぜい</sup>大勢いたよ。

n. Otoko no ko bakari ja naku, on-na no ko mo ooze ita yo.

There were not only boys but also many girls.

- B) わたしは、日本語<sup>にほんご</sup> **ばかり** でなく、中国語<sup>ちゅうごくご</sup>も勉強<sup>べんきょう</sup>したい。

Watashi wa, n. Nihon-go **bakari** de naku, Chuugoku-go mo benkyoo-shitai.

I would like to study not only Japanese but also Chinese.

- C) この手提げ<sup>てき</sup>は、デザイン<sup>でざいん</sup>がいい **ばかり** でなく、値段<sup>ねだん</sup>も手ごろ<sup>て</sup>だ。

Kono tesage wa, dezain ga <sup>adjii</sup> **bakari** de naku, nedan mo tegoro da.

As for this bag, not only is its design nice, but the price is reasonable as well.

- D) のど<sup>のど</sup>が渴<sup>かわ</sup>いた **ばかり** でなく、おなか<sup>おなか</sup>もすいた。

Nodo ga v. kawaita **bakari** de naku, onaka mo suita.

Not only am I thirsty, but I'm also hungry.

5. In the pattern “bakashi ばかり,” a variant of “bakari ばかり,” used casually.

- 1) Indicates an approximate amount, often with the implication that it is not very much.

English approximation: “(only) about...”

- A) わたしの財布<sup>さいふ</sup>のなかには五百円<sup>ごひゃくえん</sup> **ばかり** しかない。

Watashi no saifu no naka ni wa n. go-hyaku en **bakashi** shika nai.

There is only about five hundred yen in my wallet.

- B) これ **ばかり** の貯金<sup>ちよきん</sup>では、旅行<sup>りょこう</sup>にも行け<sup>い</sup>ない。

n. Kore **bakashi** no chokin de wa, ryokoo ni mo ike-nai.

With only about this much savings, (I) can't even go on a trip.

2) Indicates a limit.

English approximation: “only”

- A) あの人は、一日中お酒 **ばかり** 飲んでいる。

Ano hito wa, ichi-nichi-juu n. osake **bakashi** nonde-iru.

That person is drinking only liquor all day.

- B) そんなに甘いもの **ばかり** 食べていると、虫歯になるよ。

Son-na ni n. ph. amai mono **bakashi** tabete-iru to, mushiba ni naru yo.

If (you) keep eating only sweets like that, (you'll get cavities.

3) Shows that it has only been a short while after an action has been completed.

English approximation: “just”

- A) 日本語のテストがあった **ばかり** なのに、次はフランス語のテストだ。

Nihon-go no tesuto ga v. atta **bakashi** na noni, tsugi wa furansu-go no tesuto da.

We've just had a Japanese test, but we have a French test next.

- B) 今いけた **ばかり** の花よ。きれいでしょう。

Ima v. iketa **bakashi** no hana yo. Kiree deshoo.

These are the flowers that I just finished arranging. Aren't they beautiful?

## DAKE だけ

1. Indicates a limit imposed upon something.



English approximation: “only” or “just”

- A) 赤<sup>あか</sup>いりんご<sup>みつ</sup> だけ 三つください。

Akai n. ringo dake mittsu kudasai.



Please give me three of the red apples only.

- B) わたしは一人<sup>ひとり</sup> だけ 取り残<sup>とりのこ</sup>された。

Watashi wa n. hitori dake tori-nokosareta.

I was left all alone. (Only I was left.)

- C) 人は外見<sup>ひとがいけん</sup> だけ ではわからない。

Hito wa n. gaiken dake de wa wakara-nai.

You can't tell a person just by his/her looks.

- D) ここにあるのは古い新聞<sup>ふるしんぶん</sup> だけ です。

Koko ni aru no wa furui n. shinbun dake desu.

What's available here is only some old newspapers.

- E) ここ だけ の話<sup>はなし</sup>ですが、わたしは南極探検<sup>なんきょくたんけん</sup>を計画<sup>けいかく</sup>しているんです。

n. Koko dake no hanashi desu ga, watashi wa nankyoku-tanken o keekaku-shite-iru-n desu.

This is just between you and me, but I'm planning an antarctic expedition.

2. Placed after the potential form of verbs “... ru える,” “... reru えられる” and “...rareru えられる,” refers to a degree of something, with the implication that that degree cannot be surpassed.

English approximation: “as much as ...”

- A) わたしは歩ける<sup>ある</sup> だけ 歩<sup>ある</sup>きました。

Watashi wa v. arukeru dake aruki-mashita.

I walked as much as I could.

- B) 出来る <sup>でき</sup> だけ <sup>たす</sup> 助けてあげましょう。

v. Dekiru dake tasukete age-mashoo.

I'll try to help you as much as I can.

- C) やれる だけ やってみようよ。

v. Yareru dake yatte miyoo yo.

Let's try to do as much as (we) can.

3. In the pattern "... ba ... dake 〜ば〜だけ。”

English approximation: “the more (something), the ...”

- A) <sup>やす</sup> 安ければ <sup>やす</sup> 安い だけ いいです。

Yasukere ba <sup>adj.</sup> yasui dake ii desu.

The cheaper the better.

- B) <sup>はや</sup> 早くすればする だけ <sup>ゆうり</sup> 有利だ。

Hayaku sure ba v. suru dake yuuri da.

The faster you do it, the more advantageous it is.

4. In the pattern "... dake de (ja) naku ... mo 〜だけで(じゃ)なく〜も。”

English approximation: “not only ... but (also) ...”

- A) ケーキ だけ でなく、アイスクリームも <sup>た</sup> 食べましょうよ。

n. Keeki dake de naku, aisukuriimu mo tabe-mashoo yo.

Let's eat not only a cake, but also ice cream.

- B) この部屋は <sup>へやひろ</sup> 広い だけ でなく、とても <sup>あか</sup> 明るいね。

Kono heya wa <sup>adj.</sup> hiroi dake de naku, totemo akarui ne.

This room is not only spacious, but also very sunny.

- C) この犬は、<sup>いぬ</sup> 上手に <sup>じょうず</sup> 泳ぐ <sup>およ</sup> だけ でなく <sup>げい</sup> 芸もうまい。

Kono inu wa, joozu ni v. oyogu dake de naku gee mo umai.

This dog not only swims well, but also does tricks well.

## DAKE-NI だけに Combination particle

A combination of the particles “dake だけ” and “ni に.” Often takes the form “dake atte だけあって.”

1. Expresses an opinion that a situation is appropriate and fulfills its expectations.

English approximation: “since/because ..., (as expected) ...”

- A) よく勉強した だけに、いい成績で合格した。

Yoku v. benkyoo-shita dake ni, ii seeseiki de gookaku-shita.

Since I studied hard, (as expected) I passed with good grades.

- B) ここは有名な観光地 だけに、毎日たくさんのお客が訪れる。

Koko wa yuumei na n. kankoo-chi dake ni, mainichi takusan no hito ga otozureru.

Since it's a famous tourist spot, (as expected) many people visit it every day.

- C) ここは赤道に近い だけに、すごく暑いね。

Koko wa sekidoo ni adj. chikai dake ni, sugoku atsui ne.

Since this place is close to the equator, it's terribly hot, isn't it?

2. Indicates that something did not proceed as expected, with the implication that it was an unexpected surprise.

English approximation: “since (... was not expected) ...”

- A) 彼にはもう会えないだろうとあきらめていた だけに、電話がかかってきた時には、とてもうれしかった。

Kare ni wa moo ae-nai daroo to v. akiramete-ita dake ni, denwa ga kakatte-kita toki ni wa, totemo ureshikatta.

Since I had thought that I'd never be able to see him again, I was very happy when he called (unexpectedly).

- B) ハリケーンの被害が**大きかった** **だけに**、その町の復興ぶりには目を見張るものがあった。

Harikeen no higai ga adj. ookikatta **dake ni**, sono machi no fukkoo-buri ni wa me o miharu mono ga atta.

Since the damages caused by the hurricane were extensive, that town's rate of rebuilding was quite something to behold.

## DANO だの

Used to list things successively, usually in a "... dano ... dano ~だの~だの" pattern.

English approximation: similar in feeling to "things like (something) and (something)."

- A) 紙屑 **だの** 空缶 **だの**、道に散らかっている。

n. Kamikuzu **dano** n. akikan **dano**, michi ni chirakatte-iru.

Things like scraps of paper and empty cans are scattered on the street.

- B) 一人歩きは危険 **だの**、地下鉄は怖い **だの**、ニューヨークに引越すと決まったら友達から脅かされた。

Hitori aruki wa n. kiken **dano**, chikatetsu wa adj. kowai **dano**,

Nyuuyooku ni hikkosu to kimattara tomodachi kara odokasareta.

When it was decided that I was to move to New York, my friends

scared me, saying things like “it’s dangerous to walk alone” and “subways are frightening.”

## DATTE だって

1. Takes a special case and shows that it is really the same as other cases.

English approximation: in the sense of “even (something) is/does ...”

- A) 子供<sup>こども</sup> **だって** それくらいわかります。

n. Kodomo **datte** sore kurai wakari-masu.

Even children can understand something like that.

- B) 親友同士<sup>しんゆうどうし</sup> **だって** けんかすることもある。

n. Shinyuu-dooshi **datte** kenka-suru koto mo aru.

Even best friends quarrel sometimes.

- C) 夏<sup>なつ</sup> **だって** 肌寒<sup>はださむ</sup>い日<sup>ひ</sup>もある。

n. Natsu **datte** hada-zamui hi mo aru.

Even in the summer, there are chilly days.

2. Lists things in order to show that each thing is the same as the other, in a “... datte ... datte 〜だって〜だって” (or, variation: “... tatte ... tatte 〜たって〜たって”) pattern. Note that for this usage, “datte だって” can also take the form “tatte たって.”

English approximation: “whether it’s (something) or (something) ...”

- A) あした **だって**、あさって **だって**、構<sup>かま</sup>いませんよ。

n. Ashita **datte**, n. asatte **datte**, kamai-masen yo.

It’s fine with me, whether it’s tomorrow or the day after.

- B) 大阪<sup>おおさか</sup>で買<sup>か</sup>っ **たって**、東京<sup>とうきょう</sup>で買<sup>か</sup>っ **たって**、値段<sup>ねたん</sup>は同じ<sup>おな</sup>だよ。

Oosaka de v. kat tatte, Tookyoo de v. kat tatte, nedan wa onaji da yo.

It's the same price, whether you buy it in Osaka or Tokyo.

3. Follows an interrogative pronoun.

1) To qualify anything in its category as valid in the clause that follows.

English approximation: “anyone” “anytime” “anywhere” etc.

A) いつ だって 見られますよ。

n. Itsu datte mirare-masu yo.

You can see it anytime.

B) そんな物<sup>もの</sup>はどこに だって あるさ。

Son-na mono wa ph. doko ni datte aru sa.

That sort of thing can be found anywhere.

C) だれ だって それくらいわかるはずです。

n. Dare datte sore kurai wakaru hazu desu.

Anyone should be able to understand something like that.

2) In a negative sentence, to show that nothing in the group specified by the interrogative pronoun wants to be something or does something.

English approximation: “no one” “nothing” etc.

A) だれ だって <sup>びんぼう</sup> 貧乏はいやだ。

n. Dare datte binboo wa iya da.

No one likes being poor. (literally: Everyone doesn't like being poor.)

B) どんな所<sup>ところ</sup> だって 行きたくない。

Don-na n. tokoro datte iki-taku-nai.

No matter where it may be, (I) don't want to go.

- C) そんなことは、いつ **だって** したくない。

Son-na koto wa, n. itsu **datte** shitaku-nai.

I never want to do something like that.

4. Placed at the end of a sentence, expresses surprise (and sometimes disapproval) after quoting something someone else has said.

English approximation: “he/she said that ...”

- A) <sup>ぼく</sup>僕は<sup>かね</sup>お金なんか<sup>か</sup>借りていませんよ **だって**。 <sup>わす</sup>忘れたのかしら。

cl. Boku wa okane nanka karite i-masen yo **datte**. Wasureta no kashira.

He said to me, “I haven’t borrowed any money.” I wonder if he forgot?

- B) <sup>こんや</sup>今夜も<sup>かれ</sup>彼とデートなの **だって**。よく <sup>あ</sup>飽きないわね、<sup>ふたり</sup>あの二人。

cl. Konya mo kare to deeto na no **datte**. Yoku aki-nai wa ne, ano futari.

She said, “I’ve got a date with him again tonight.” They’re not bored with each other, those two (i.e. it’s a wonder that they’re not).

## DE で

### FUNDAMENTALS OF “DE で”

1. Placed after a noun of location, indicates it is where an action takes/took place. It is static. Note that the particles “ni に” or “e へ” indicate the direction of the action. Compare the following:

- A) 学校<sup>がっこう</sup>で<sup>べんきょう</sup>勉強する。

Gakkoo de benkyoo-suru.

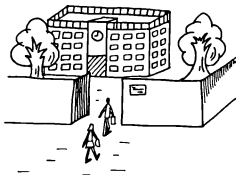
(I) study at school.



- B) 学校<sup>がっこう</sup>に<sup>い</sup>行く。

Gakkoo ni iku.

(I) go to school.



- C) オフィス<sup>でんわ</sup>で<sup>でんわ</sup>電話をかける。

Ofiisu de denwa o kakeru.

(I) make a call at the office.



- D) オフィス<sup>でんわ</sup>に<sup>でんわ</sup>電話をかける。

Ofiisu ni denwa o kakeru.

(I) telephone the office.



English approximation: "at" "in"

- A) わたしは海<sup>うみ</sup>で<sup>およ</sup>泳ぎました。

Watashi wa n. umi de oyogi-mashita.

I swam in the ocean.

- B) あの木<sup>き</sup>の下<sup>した</sup>で<sup>べんとう</sup>お弁当<sup>た</sup>を食べましょう。

Ando ki no n. shita de obentoo o tabe-mashoo.

Let's have lunch under that tree.





- C) わたしは大学<sup>だいがく</sup>  に <sup>ほんご</sup> 日本語を <sup>べんきよう</sup> 勉強しています。

Watashi wa n. daigaku  nihon-go o benkyoo-shite-i-masu.

I'm studying Japanese at college.

- D) デパート<sup>しよくじ</sup>  食事をしてから、<sup>ほんや</sup> 本屋  <sup>じしょ</sup> 辞書を買いました。

n. Depaato  shokuji o shite kara, n. hon-ya  jisho o kai-mashita.

After eating at the department store, I bought a dictionary at the bookstore.

## 2. Indicates the superlative.

English approximation: "in" "among"

- A) 宮田さんは、クラス中<sup>じゅう</sup>  <sup>いちばんはや</sup> 一番速く走ります。

Miyata-san wa n. kurasu-juu  ichiban hayaku hashiri-masu.

Ms. Miyata is the fastest runner in our class.

- B) この中<sup>なか</sup>  <sup>だれが</sup> だれが <sup>ねこ</sup> 猫の <sup>くび</sup> 首に <sup>すず</sup> 鈴を <sup>つけ</sup> 付けに <sup>い</sup> 行くんだい？

Kono n. naka  dare ga neko no kubi ni suzu o tsuke ni iku-n dai?

Among us, who's going to go hang a bell on the cat's neck?



## 3. In the pattern "... de mo ... de mo, ~でも ~でも," lists locations.

English approximation: "in/at (location) and in/at (location) ..."

- A) ここ<sup>ここ</sup>  も、あそこ<sup>あそこ</sup>  も、子供達<sup>こどもたち</sup>が遊んでいる。

n. Koko  mo, n. asoko  mo, kodomo-tachi ga asonde-iru.

Here and over there children are playing.



- B) 今年の夏は海<sup>ことし なつ うみ</sup>でも山<sup>やま</sup>でも事故<sup>じ こ</sup>が続<sup>ぞく</sup>発<sup>はつ</sup>した。

Kotoshi no natsu wa n. umi de mo n. yama de mo jiko ga zokuhatsu-shita.

This summer, accidents occurred one after another both at the ocean and in the mountains.

4. Indicates the time when an action or process happened or happens.  
1) Shows the time period when something occurred/occurs, often found in “de wa では” and “de mo でも” patterns.

English approximation: “in” “at”

- A) 一<sup>せんきゅうひゃくよんじゅうねんだい</sup>九<sup>しゅう</sup>四<sup>し</sup>〇<sup>じゅう</sup>年代<sup>だい</sup>で<sup>で</sup>は、こんな歌<sup>うた</sup>がはやったそうだ。

n. Sen-kyuuhyaku-yonjuu-nen-dai de wa, kon-na uta ga hayatta soo da.

In the 1940's, this sort of song was supposedly popular.

- B) 今<sup>いま</sup>で<sup>で</sup>も、その習慣<sup>しゅうかん</sup>はなお行<sup>おこな</sup>われている。

n. Ima de mo, sono shuukan wa nao okonawarete-iru.

Even now (at present), that custom is still carried out.

- 2) Indicates the age of a person.

English approximation: “at”

- A) 彼<sup>かれ</sup>は六十<sup>ろくじゅう</sup>歳<sup>さい</sup>で<sup>で</sup>退職<sup>たいしよく</sup>した。

Kare wa n. rokujuus-sai de taishoku-shita.

He retired at age sixty.

- B) 母<sup>はは</sup>は二十五<sup>にじゅうご</sup>歳<sup>さい</sup>で<sup>で</sup>結婚<sup>けっこん</sup>した。

Haha wa n. nijuu-go-sai de kekkon-shita.

My mother got married at age twenty-five.

- 3) Imposes a time limit on an action or occurrence.

English approximation: "in (amount of time)"

- A) この仕事は二十分<sup>しごと にじゅうふん</sup>で<sup>で</sup>出来ますか？

Kono shigoto wa n. nijup-pun de deki-masu ka?

Can you do this job in twenty minutes?

- B) もう二週間<sup>にしゅうかん</sup>で<sup>で</sup>夏休み<sup>なつやすみ</sup>になります。

Moo n. ni-shuukan de natsu-yasumi ni nari-masu.

Summer vacation is coming in two weeks.

- C) 光<sup>ひかり</sup>は一秒<sup>いちびょうかん</sup>間<sup>かん</sup>で<sup>で</sup>地球<sup>ちきゅう</sup>を七回り<sup>ななまわ</sup>半<sup>はん</sup>する。

Hikari wa n. ichi-byookan de chikyuu o nana-mawari-han suru.

Light travels around the earth seven and a half times in one second.



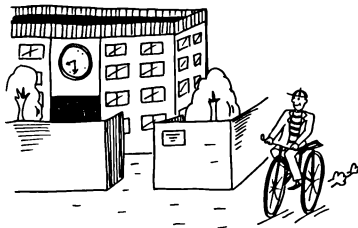
5. Indicates what method or tool is/was employed for an action.

English approximation: "do (something) by using (something)"

- A) わたしは学校<sup>がっこう</sup>へ自転車<sup>じてんしゃ</sup>で<sup>で</sup>通<sup>かよ</sup>っています。

Watashi wa gakkoo e n. jitensha de kayotte-i-masu.

I commute to school by bicycle.



わたしは飛行機<sup>ひこうき</sup>で<sup>で</sup>ロンドンに行ってから、船<sup>ふね</sup>で<sup>で</sup>スペインに行きました。

Watashi wa n. hikooki de rondon ni itte kara, n. fune de supein ni iki-mashita.

I went to London by plane, then went to Spain by boat.

- C) わたしは父<sup>ちち</sup>と電話<sup>でんわ</sup>で<sup>で</sup>話<sup>はな</sup>しました。

Watashi wa chichi to n. denwa de hanashi-mashita.

I talked with my father on (literally: by using) the phone.



- D) 鉛筆<sup>えんぴつ</sup>で<sup>で</sup>書<sup>か</sup>いてください。

n. Enpitsu de kaite kudasai.

Please write with a pencil.

- E) 石けん<sup>せっけん</sup>で<sup>で</sup>よく手<sup>て</sup>を洗<sup>あら</sup>いなさいよ。

n. Sekken de yoku te o arai-nasai yo.

Wash your hands thoroughly with soap.

- F) 彼はいつもユーモア<sup>かれ</sup>で<sup>で</sup>みんなを笑<sup>わら</sup>わせます。

Kare wa itsumo n. yuumoa de min-na o warawase-masu.

He always makes everyone laugh with his sense of humor.

- G) 日本語<sup>にほんご</sup>で<sup>で</sup>話<sup>はな</sup>してください。

n. Nihon-go de hanashite kudasai.

Please speak in Japanese.

- H) ガラス<sup>ガラス</sup>で<sup>で</sup>指<sup>ゆび</sup>を少し切<sup>すこ</sup>ってしまいました。

n. Garasu de yubi o sukoshi kitte shimai-mashita.

I cut my finger a little on glass.

6. Gives the price of something.

English approximation: “at” “for”

- A) その本を二千円  で買いました。

Sono hon o n. ni-sen en  kai-mashita.

I bought the book for two thousand yen.

- B) ハワイへはいくら  で行けますか？

Hawai e wa n. ikura  ike-masu ka?

How much would it cost for a trip to Hawaii?

7. Indicates time or quantity that makes a unit.

English approximation: “by” “for”

- A) 僕は時間  でアルバイトをしている。

Boku wa n. jikan  arubaito o shite-iru.

I'm working part time by the hour.

- B) そのリングは二つ  で五百円です。

Sono ringo wa n. futatsu  go-hyaku en desu.

Those apples are two for five hundred yen.

- C) わたし達のチームは一点差  で勝った。

Watashi-tachi no chiimu wa n. it-ten-sa  katta.

Our team won the game by only one point.

8. Indicates the composition of an object.

English approximation: “from” “of”

- A) これはプラスチック  でできた箱です。

Kore wa n. purasuchikku  dekita hako desu.

This is a box made out of plastic.

- B) それは粘土  で作った器です。

Sore wa n. endo de tsukutta utsuwa desu.

It's a vessel made of clay.

- C) バターはミルクで作ります。

Bataa wa n. miruku de tsukuri-masu.

Butter is made from milk.

9. Indicates the manner of an action, or the condition/intention at the time of occurrence/action.

English approximation: “(in this manner) ...” “(with intention to) ...”

- A) わたしは急いで出かけました。

Watashi wa v. isoi de dekake-mashita.

I left in a rush.



- B) 彼は夢中で走った。

Kare wa n. muchuu de hashitta.

He ran frantically.



- C) 僕はしかるつもりで言ったのではない。

Boku wa shikaru n. tsumori de itta no de wa nai.

I didn't say it with the intention to scold (you).

10. Indicates a reason or motive for an action or occurrence.

English approximation: “due to ...” “owing to ...”

- A) 彼は不注意で階段から落ちた。

Kare wa n. fuchuui de kaidan kara ochita.

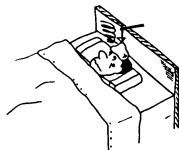
He fell down the stairs due to carelessness.

- B) 僕は今日風邪で学校を休んだ。



Boku wa kyoo n. kaze de gakkoo o yasunda.

Today, I was absent from school due to a cold.



C) 寒さ で 手が凍えそうだ。

n. Samusa de te ga kogoe soo da.

My hands are almost frozen from the cold.



D) このデザインの流行 で 店は大繁盛だ。

Kono dezain no n. ryuukoo de mise wa dai-hanjoo da.

Due to the popularity of this design, the store is doing very well.

11. Indicates the source of information, basis of a condition.

English approximation: “by” “from” “on” “according to”

A) 新聞の天気予報 で 見ると、今日は曇りそうだ。

Shinbun no n. tenki-yohoo de miru to, kyoo wa kumori da soo da.

According to the weather forecast in the paper, it will be cloudy today.

B) あなたの時計 で は今何時ですか？

Anata no n. tokee de wa ima nan-ji desu ka?

What time is it now according to your watch?

C) 彼がひどく悩んでいるのは、顔色 で わかる。

Kare ga hidoku nayande-iru no wa, n. kao-iro de wakaruu.

I can tell from his face that he is very troubled.

12. Indicates the basis of evaluation.

English approximation: “depending on” “according to”

- A) みかんの値段は大きさ  で 違います。

Mikan no nedan wa n. ookisa  de chigai-masu.

The price of oranges varies depending on their size.

- B) 土地の値段は広さと便利さ  で 変わります。

Tochi no nedan wa n. hirosa to benrisa  de kawari-masu.

The price of land changes according to the size and location.

13. Shows which party is/was responsible for an action.

English approximation: in the sense of “(something) is/was done by (something).”

- A) それは家族  で 決めたことです。

Sore wa n. kazoku  de kimeta koto desu.

It was a decision made by (my) family.

- B) その新聞は学校  で 発行された。

Sono shinbun wa n. gakkoo  de hakkoo-sareta.

That newspaper was published by the school.

## DEMO でも

1. Presents an extreme example to make the point that since something applies to such a case, it therefore certainly applies to more normal cases.

English approximation: “even”

- A) 先生  でも わからないでしょう。

n. Sensee  demo wakara-nai deshoo.

Even the teacher probably won't be able to understand it.

- B) ちょっと  でも 見落としがあつては大変だ。



n. Chotto demo mi-otoshi ga atte wa taihen da.

If (we) miss even one thing, there'll be grave consequences.

2. In the pattern “don-na ... demo どんな～でも.”

English approximation: “no matter what/how (something) ...” or “regardless of the fact that...”

A) あの先生<sup>せんせい</sup>はどんな難しい問題<sup>むずかしい もんだい</sup>でも<sup>と</sup>解ける。

Ano sensee wa don-na muzukashii n. mondai demo tokeru.

That teacher can solve any problem, no matter how difficult it may be.

B) わたしはどんな食べ物<sup>たべもの</sup>でも<sup>いちど</sup>一度は食べてみたいと思います<sup>おも</sup>。

Watashi wa don-na n. tabemono demo ichido wa tabete mi-tai to omoi-masu.

Regardless of the type of food, I'd like to try eating it once.

3. After an interrogative pronoun, indicates an all-inclusiveness.

English approximation: “whatever” “whenever ” etc.

A) どこでも<sup>すわ</sup>いいから座ってください。

n. Doko demo ii kara suwatte kudasai.

Please sit wherever you like. (more literally: “Please sit; anywhere is fine.”)

B) なんでも<sup>す</sup>好きなものを注文<sup>ちゅうもん</sup>していいよ。

n. Nan demo suki na mono o chuumon-shite ii yo.

You can order whatever you like.

4. Used in casually mentioning something as a suggestion.

English approximation: in the sense of “something like ...”

B) 帰りにコーヒーでも<sup>の</sup>飲みに行かない？

Kaeri ni n. koohii demo nomi ni ika-nai?

Why don't we go have coffee or something on the way home?

B) ここ でも よければお話ししますが。

n. Koko demo yokere ba ohanashi-shi-masu ga.

If it's all right to talk somewhere like here, I will.

5. To express wishful thinking; sometimes in a “semete ... demo ... せめて  
～でも～” pattern.

English approximation: “if only there were (something), even just a little bit  
of it ...”

A) せめて少しだけ でも 貯金があつたらなあ。

Semete sukoshi n. dake demo chokin ga attara naa.

If only I had even just a little bit of savings ...

B) 腰をおろす所 でも あつたらいいのになあ。

Koshi o orosu n. tokoro demo attara ii no ni naa.

If only there were some place I could sit down ...

6. Often in a “manzara ... demo まんざら～でも” pattern and/or a double  
negative, to indicate that there are other attributes to something, besides  
the obvious.

English approximation: examples are “not all bad” and “not unthinkable.”

A) あの人の言うことは、まんざらうそ でも ない。

Ano hito no yuu koto wa, manzara n. uso demo nai.

What that person says isn't all untrue.

B) この計画は、実現不可能なわけ でも ない。

Kono keekaku wa, jitsugen fukanoo na n. wake demo nai.

This plan isn't impossible to carry out.

## DOKORO どころ

Takes an extreme case of a certain situation and emphatically negates its possibility.

English approximation: “not possible to do, (for example)”

- A) こう<sup>ひと おお</sup>人が多くては、ゆっくり<sup>え かんしょう</sup>絵を観賞する どころ ではない。

Koo hito ga ooku te wa, yukkuri e o v. kanshoo-suru dokoro  
de wa nai.

With this many people, it's out of the question to, say, enjoy looking at the paintings.

- A) 今<sup>いま</sup>とても忙しくて、休暇<sup>きゅうか</sup> どころ の騒<sup>さわ</sup>ぎではない。

Ima totemo isogashiku te, n. kyuuuka dokoro no sawagi de wa  
nai.

I'm so busy now that it's not even plausible to, for example, take a vacation.

## DOKOROKA どころか

Serves to negate the clause it modifies, in order to emphasize the point made by the clause that follows.

English approximation: the nuance is “never mind (something)…”

- A) あの<sup>こ べんきょう</sup>子は勉強する どころか、一日<sup>いちにちじゅうあそ</sup>中遊んでばかりいる。

Ano ko wa v. benkyoo-suru dokoroka, ichi-nichi-juu asonde  
bakari iru.

Never mind studying, all that child does is play all day.

B) お湯<sup>ゆ</sup> どころか 水<sup>みづ</sup>さえ出<sup>で</sup>ない。

n. Oyu dokoroka mizu sae de-nai.

Never mind hot water, there's not even cold water.

## DOMO ども

Placed after a verb.

English approximation: “(even) though”

A) 親友<sup>しんゆう</sup>といえ ども (親友<sup>しんゆう</sup>といっても)、彼女<sup>かのじょ</sup>の本当<sup>ほんとう</sup>の気持ち<sup>きもち</sup>はわからない。

Shinyuu to v. ie domo (shinyuu to itte mo), kanojo no hontoo  
no kimochi wa wakara-nai.

Though we are best friends, I don't know how she really feels.

B) 行<sup>い</sup>け ども 行<sup>い</sup>け ども (行<sup>い</sup>っても行<sup>い</sup>っても)、砂<sup>すな</sup>ばかりの大砂漠<sup>だいさばく</sup>だった。

v. Ike domo v. ike domo (itte mo itte mo), suna bakari no  
dai-sabaku datta.

Though we went on and on, we saw nothing but the sand in the vast  
desert.

## E へ

### FUNDAMENTALS OF “E へ”

First, note that the character “へ,” used as a particle, is read “e,” even though it is normally read “he.” Placed after a noun, it indicates that the noun is the destination, direction or the goal of the action.

Some frequently used verbs that follow “e へ” are:

ageru <sup>あ</sup>上げる (to lift)  
aruku <sup>ある</sup>歩く (to walk)  
dekakeru <sup>で</sup>出かける (to go out)  
denwa o kakeru <sup>でんわ</sup>電話をかける (to telephone)  
denwa o suru <sup>でんわ</sup>電話をする (to telephone)  
deru <sup>で</sup>出る (to exit)  
hairu <sup>はい</sup>入る (to enter)  
ireru <sup>い</sup>入れる (to put in )  
iku <sup>い</sup>行く (to go)  
kaeru <sup>かえ</sup>帰る (to return)  
kaku <sup>か</sup>書く (to write)  
kuru <sup>く</sup>来る (to come)  
modoru <sup>もど</sup>戻る (to come back)  
mukau <sup>む</sup>向かう (to head for)  
oku <sup>お</sup>置く (to place)  
okuru <sup>おく</sup>贈る (to present)  
okuru <sup>おく</sup>送る (to send)  
ryokoo-suru <sup>りょこう</sup>旅行する (to travel)  
shuppatsu-suru <sup>しゅっぱつ</sup>出発する (to depart)  
taoreru <sup>たお</sup>倒れる (to fall down)  
tegami o kaku <sup>てがみ か</sup>手紙を書く (to write a letter)  
tenkin-suru <sup>てんきん</sup>転勤する (to be transferred)  
tsuku <sup>つ</sup>着く (to arrive)

It is interchangeable with the particle “ni に” in most cases. Note, however, that this rule does not apply when the particle “e へ” is followed

by the particle “no の”; “e へ” then cannot be replaced by “ni に.”

Examples:

- A) わたしは母<sup>はは</sup>  へ プレゼントを送<sup>おく</sup>りました。

Watashi wa haha  e purezento o okuri-mashita.

I sent my mother a present.

- わたしは母<sup>はは</sup>  に プレゼントを送<sup>おく</sup>りました。

Watashi wa haha  ni purezento o okuri-mashita.

I sent my mother a present.

- B) これは母<sup>はは</sup>  へのプレゼントです。

Kore wa haha  e no purezento desu.

This is a present for my mother.

Wrong:

- これは母<sup>はは</sup>  のプレゼントです。

Kore wa haha  ni no purezento desu.

1. Shows the direction where an action is headed.

English approximation: “to” “toward”

- A) わたしは大阪<sup>おおさか</sup>  へ 行<sup>い</sup>きます。

Watashi wa n. oosaka  e iki-masu.

I'm going to Osaka.

- B) 彼は駅の方<sup>かれ えき ほう</sup>  へ 歩<sup>ある</sup>いて行<sup>い</sup>きました。

Kare wa eki no n. hoo  e aruite iki-mashita.

He walked toward the station.

- C) 北野<sup>きたの</sup>さんはヨーロッパ<sup>しゅっちやうちゅう</sup>  へ 出<sup>で</sup>張<sup>ちやう</sup> 中<sup>ちゅう</sup>です。

Kitano-san wa n. yooroppa  e shucchoo-chuu desu.

Mr. Kitano is currently on a business trip to Europe.

- D) 地震で五階建ての建物が後  傾いた。

Jishin de go-kai-date no tatemono ga n. ushiro  katamuita.

Because of the earthquake, the five-storied building leaned toward the back.

2. Shows the ending point or destination of an action.

English approximation: “at”

- A) わたしは今空港  着きました。

Watashi wa ima n. kuukoo  tsuki-mashita.

I arrived at the airport just now.

- B) いつ日本  お帰りになりましたか？

Itsu n. nihon  okaeri ni nari-mashita ka?

When did you come back to Japan?

- C) 僕は道に迷ったあげく、三十分も遅れて会議場  たどり着いた。

Boku wa michi ni mayotta ageku, sanjup-pun mo okurete n. kaigi-joo  tadori-tsuita.

After getting lost, I arrived at the meeting place thirty minutes late.

3. Indicates the person or thing to which an action is directed.

English approximation: “to” “for”

- A) これはあなた  のプレゼントです。

Kore wa n. anata  no purezento desu.

This is a present for you.

- B) これは先生  のお手紙だからお渡ししてね。

Kore wa n. sensee  no otegami dakara owatashi-shite ne.

This is a letter to the teacher, so please hand it to (him/her).

4. In the pattern “... tokoro e ～ところへ,” describes a situation that exists when an action takes place.

English approximation: “(this was the situation) when (something else happened).”

- A) <sup>しゅくだい お</sup>宿題が終わったところ  <sup>ともだち あそび</sup>友達が遊びに来た。

Shukudai ga owatta <sub>n.</sub> tokoro  tomodachi ga asobi ni kita.

I had just finished my homework when my friend came over.

- B) <sup>かさ も</sup>傘を持たずに <sup>で</sup>出かけたところ  <sup>あめ ふ</sup>雨が降ってきた。

Kasa o motazu ni dekaketa <sub>n.</sub> tokoro , ame ga futte-kita.

I had just left without bringing an umbrella when it started to rain.

## GA が

### FUNDAMENTALS OF “GA が”

A major function of the particle “ga が” is to emphasize the subject by following directly after it. However, other particles such as “wa は” in particular (see p. 235) also serve the same purpose. Deciding when to use which may be one of the most difficult factors in constructing Japanese sentences; in fact, even native speakers sometimes have to stop and think about the choices. The following are some basic guidelines to help you with this task.

I. When to use “ga が” after the subject or topic:

1. “Ga が” appears in sentences that indicate the existence of something,



in the sense of “there is/are/was/were ...” Note that in Japanese, you must differentiate between living things and non-living things by using separate verbs that both mean “to be in a place.” “Iru いる” is for the former group, and “aru ある” is for the latter.

A) 人 <sup>ひと</sup> が  いる (います)。

n. Hito  ga iru (i-masu).

There is a person.

B) 本 <sup>ほん</sup> が  ある (あります)。

n. Hon  ga aru (ari-masu).

There is a book.



Even in talking about the same thing, you must use different verbs depending on whether or not it is animate:

C) 魚 <sup>さかな</sup> が  いる (います)。

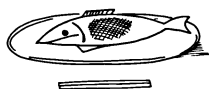
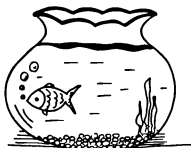
n. Sakana  ga iru (i-masu).

“There is a fish.” (animate)

D) 魚 <sup>さかな</sup> が  ある (あります)。

n. Sakana  ga aru (ari-masu).

“There is a fish.” (inanimate)



2. To express desire, need, ability or opinion, “ga” follows the topic.

A) わたしはアイスクリーム  が <sup>た</sup> 食べたい。

Watashi wa n. aisukuriimu  ga tabe-tai.

I want to eat ice cream.

- B) わたしは英語<sup>えいご</sup> **が** <sup>はな</sup>話せます。

Watashi wa n. eego **ga** hanase-masu.

I can speak English.

- C) 彼女は音楽<sup>かのじょ おんがく</sup> **が** <sup>す</sup>好きです。

Kanojo wa n. ongaku **ga** suki desu.

She likes music.

3. “Ga か” follows an interrogative pronoun or noun phrase.

- A) だれ **が** <sup>き</sup>来ましたか？

n. Dare **ga** ki-mashita ka?

Who came?

- B) あなたはどんな食べ物<sup>たの もの</sup> **が** <sup>す</sup>好きですか？

Anata wa n. ph. don-na tabemono **ga** suki desu ka?

What kind of food do you like?

- C) 何時<sup>なんじ</sup> **が** いいですか？

n. Nan-ji **ga** ii desu ka?

What time is good (for you)?

4. “Ga か” often follows a noun that is modified by an adjective.

- A) 波<sup>なみ</sup> **が** <sup>たか</sup>高い。

n. Nami **ga** takai.

The waves are high.

- B) わたしは気分<sup>きぶん</sup> **が** いいです。

Watashi wa n. kibun **ga** ii desu.

I feel good.

- C) 部屋<sup>へや</sup> **が** <sup>あつ</sup>暑い。

n. Heya **ga** atsui.

The room is hot.

5. In describing one of the five senses, “ga が” often accompanies the noun.

A) いいにおい**が**する。

li n. nioi **ga** suru.

(It) smells good.

B) 甘い味**が**する。

Amai n. aji **ga** suru.

(It) tastes sweet.

6. Sentences with intransitive verbs usually have subjects that are followed by “ga が.”

A) 戸**が**閉まる。

n. To **ga** shimaru.

The door closes.

B) 電気**が**消えた。

n. Denki **ga** kieta.

The lights went off.

C) 月**が**出た。

n. Tsuki **ga** deta.

The moon has come out.

II. Other uses of “ga が” include the following:

1. Functions like a conjunction after “sore ga (ne) それが(ね)” and “tokoro ga (ne) ところが(ね),” with a feeling of unexpected surprise.

- A) それ<sup>なん</sup>が、何とものすごく混<sup>こ</sup>んでいたんだ。

Sore **ga**, nanto monosugoku konde ita-n da.

But actually, it was really crowded.

- B) 僕はもう諦<sup>あきら</sup>めていた。ところ<sup>ぼく</sup>がね、見<sup>み</sup>つかったんだよ、何と。

Boku wa moo akiramete ita. Tokoro **ga** ne, mitsukatta-n da yo, nan to.

I had already given up. But, it was actually found!

2. After a verb, in the patterns “ga gotoku がごとく” and “ga mama ni がままに.”

English approximation: with “gotoku ごとか” = “as if”, with “mama ni ままに” = “exactly as (something)”

- A) 戦争記念碑<sup>せんそう きねん ひ</sup>は、人間<sup>にんげん</sup>の争<sup>あらそ</sup>うさがを悲<sup>かな</sup>しむ<sup>が</sup>ごとく立<sup>た</sup>っていた。

Sensoo-kinenhi wa, ningen no arasou saga o kanashimu **ga** gotoku tatte ita.

The war memorial stood, as if grieving over the nature of human-kind to fight against each other.

- B) 彼は、母<sup>かれ</sup>のすすめる<sup>はは</sup> <sup>が</sup> ままに技師<sup>ぎし</sup>になった。

Kare wa, haha no susumeru **ga** mama ni, gishi ni natta.

Following his mother's advice exactly, he became an engineer.

3. Makes an introductory clause before the main point.

English approximation: “as” in the patterns “as for...,” “as you’ve already heard ...,” etc.

- A) その点<sup>てん</sup>です<sup>が</sup>、もっと詳<sup>くわ</sup>しく説<sup>せつ</sup>明<sup>めい</sup>してください。

Sono ten c. desu **ga**, motto kuwashiku setsumee-shite kudasai.

As for that point, please explain it in more detail.

- B) すでに<sup>もう</sup>申し<sup>あ</sup>上げました<sup>が</sup>、この計画<sup>けいかく</sup>の成功<sup>せいこう</sup>は間違<sup>まちが</sup>いないもの<sup>おも</sup>だと思います。

Sude ni v. mooshi-age-mashita ga, kono keekaku no seekoo wa machigai-nai mono to omoi-masu.

As I've said before, I think that this plan will undoubtedly succeed.

#### 4. Functions like a conjunction.

English approximation: “but” in the sense of “despite doing (something)” or “although.”

- A) 僕は<sup>ぼく</sup>ベストをつくした<sup>が</sup>、だめだった。

Boku wa besuto o v. tsukushita ga, dame datta.

I did the best I could, but I failed.

- B) き<sup>き</sup>のうお電話<sup>でんわ</sup>しました<sup>が</sup>、お留守<sup>るす</sup>でした。

Kinoo v. odenwa-shi-mashita ga, orusu deshita.

I called yesterday, but (you/he/she) was/were not home.

- C) 僕は<sup>ぼく</sup>一晩<sup>ひとばん</sup>中<sup>じゅうかん</sup>考<sup>かん</sup>えた<sup>が</sup>、名案<sup>めいあん</sup>は浮<sup>う</sup>かばなかった。

Boku wa hitoban-juu v. kangaeta ga, mee-an wa ukaba-nakatta.

I pondered all night, but couldn't come up with any great ideas.

#### 5. In the patterns “... u ga ～うか” and “... mai ga ～まいか.”

English approximation: “no matter (something)” or “whether (you) do (something) or not, it doesn't matter...”

- A) 僕<sup>ぼく</sup>がどこへ行<sup>い</sup>こう<sup>が</sup>、ず<sup>と</sup>っ<sup>も</sup>と<sup>だ</sup>ち<sup>ち</sup>でいよう。

Boku ga doko e v. ikoo ga, zutto tomodachi de iyoo.

No matter where I go, let's stay friends.

- B) 走ろう<sup>はし</sup>が、走るまい<sup>はし</sup>が、間に合わないだろう。<sup>ま</sup>

v. Hashi-roo [ga], v. hashiru-mai [ga], mani-awa-nai daroo.

(You) won't be on time whether (you) run or not.

6. Indicates wishful thinking in presenting an imaginary, desirable situation that is the opposite of the current, actual situation. Similar to “noni のに.” (See p.167)

English approximation: “(if ...), can/would do..., (but ...)”

- A) 雪が<sup>ゆき</sup>降れば<sup>ふ</sup>いい<sup>い</sup>が<sup>か</sup>なあ。

Yuki ga fure ba <sup>adj. ii</sup> [ga] naa.

It would be good if it were to snow (i.e. I wish it would snow).

- B) 宝くじが<sup>たから</sup>当た<sup>あた</sup>たらうれしい<sup>い</sup>が<sup>か</sup>なあ。

Takarakuji ga atattara <sup>adj. ureshii</sup> [ga] naa.

I'd be happy if I were to win the lottery (i.e. I wish I could win the lottery).

7. At the end of the sentence, serves to soften a request or opinion. Takes a straightforward statement that would sound too direct and transforms it into a more indirect approach.

English approximation: somewhat akin to the English phrase “I’m wondering if I could...” or “(this is what I think), but...”

- A) 社長さん<sup>しゃちょう</sup>にお目<sup>め</sup>にかかりたいんです<sup>い</sup>が<sup>か</sup>。

Shachoo-san ni v. omeni-kakari-tai-n desu [ga].

I'd like to meet the president ...

(compare: “shachoo-san ni omeni-kakari-tai-n desu” by itself tends to sound too forward and impolite.)

- B) もう一日<sup>いちにちきゅうか</sup>休暇<sup>きゅうか</sup>をとりたいんです<sup>い</sup>が<sup>か</sup>。

Moo ichi-nichi kyuuka o v. tori-tai-n desu **ga**.

I'd like to take one more day of vacation ...

- C) わたしは、このままでいいと思うんです **ga**。

Watashi wa, kono-mama de ii to v. omou-n desu **ga**.

I think it would be fine to leave it the way it is ...

8. Placed at the end of a sentence; exclamatory. Modifies nouns, and is said scornfully and disapprovingly. Men's language. Not translatable.

- A) このうそつきめ **ga** !

Kono n. usotsuki-me **ga** !

You liar!

- B) このガキめ **ga** !

Kono n. gaki-me **ga** !

You little brat! ("Gaki" is slang for "little boy," but it often has negative implications.)

9. Expresses uncertainty or puzzlement.

English approximation: the nuance is "I'd thought (I'd done (something) but..."

- A) たしかにここに置いておいたんです **ga**。

Tashika ni koko ni oite-oita-n c. desu **ga**.

I had definitely put it here, but ... (i.e. "I thought I had put it here ...")

- B) 電話がかかってくるはずなんだ **ga**。どうしたんだろう。

Denwa ga kakatte kuru hazu na-n c. da **ga**. Dooshita-n daroo.

I'm supposed to get a phone call (i.e. he/she is supposed to call me)

.... I wonder what happened.

## GA-NA(GA-NAA) が-な(が-なあ) Combination particle

A combination of the particles “ga が” and “na(a) な(あ).” Expresses wishful thinking, which is rather unlikely to happen in reality.

English approximation: “I hope ..., though ....”

- A) 雨が降り出した。あしたのピクニックはいいお天気だとい  
がな(がなあ)。

Ame ga furi-dashita. Ashita no pikunikku wa ii otenki da to  
adj. ii ga na(ga naa).

It has started to rain. I hope it's going to be a nice day for the picnic tomorrow, though.

- B) きのも彼女も電話をかけてこなかった。今日のはかけてくると思  
がな(がなあ)。

Kinoo mo kanojo wa denwa o kakete konakatta. Kyoo wa kakete kuru to v. omou ga na(ga naa).

She didn't call again yesterday. I think she will call today, though.

## GATERA がてら

Indicates that while one action is being carried out, another related action is also carried out; much like “killing two birds with one stone.”

English approximation: “while doing ..., on the way, do ...”

- A) 子供を学校に送り、買い物に行こう。  
がてら

Kodomo o gakkoo ni v. okuri gatera, kaimono ni itte-koyoo.

While I'm out taking the kids to school, I'll go shopping (on the



way).

- B) お寺にお参りし<sup>てら</sup> **がてら**、叔父さんのうちに寄<sup>よ</sup>ってきた。

Otera ni <sup>v.</sup> omairi-shi **gatera**, ojisan no uchi ni yotte-kita.

While I was out worshipping at the temple, I went to visit my uncle (on the way).

## HODO ほど

1. After a quantity, indicates that the amount is an approximation. Interchangeable with the particle “kurai(gurai) くらい(ぐらい).” (See p.79)

English approximation: “about” “approximately”

- A) この仕事はあと一週間<sup>しごと いっしゅうかん</sup> **ほど** あれば出来<sup>でき</sup>上がります。

Kono shigoto wa ato <sup>n.</sup> is-shuukan **hodo** are ba dekiagari-masu.

This job will be done in about a week.

- B) あと一カ月<sup>いっかげつ</sup> **ほど** で夏休<sup>なつやす</sup>みになる。

Ato <sup>n.</sup> ik-ka-getsu **hodo** de natsu-yasumi ni naru.

It'll be summer vacation in about a month.

2. Takes a specific situation and evaluates its extent.

English approximation: “to the extent that ...”

- A) 彼は、彼女にふられて、みているのが<sup>かれ かのじょ</sup>気の毒<sup>どく</sup>な **ほど** しょげている。

Kare wa, kanojo ni furarete, mite-iru no ga <sup>adj.</sup> kinodoku na **hodo** shogete-iru.

She broke up with him, and he's depressed to the extent that just seeing him makes you feel bad (for him).

- B) わたしはコンクールに優勝<sup>ゆうしょう</sup>して、涙<sup>なみだ</sup>がでる **ほど** うれしかった。

Watashi wa konkuru ni yuushoo-shite, namida ga deru  
**hodo** ureshikatta.

Winning the competition, I was so happy I cried.

3. Followed by a negation, establishes a standard for comparison.

English approximation: “(not) as much/little as ...”

- A) 今年の梅雨<sup>つゆ</sup>は、いつも **ほど** 雨<sup>あめ</sup>が多<sup>おほ</sup>くない。

Kotoshi no tsuyu wa, n. itsumo **hodo** ame ga ooku-nai.

During this year's rainy season, there hasn't been as much rain as usual.

- B) 夏休み<sup>なつやすみ</sup> **ほど** 待ち遠<sup>まちどお</sup>しいものはない。

n. Natsu-yasumi **hodo** machi-dooshii mono wa nai.

There's nothing that (I) look forward to more than summer vacation.

4. Often in the patterns “... suru hodo ～するほど” and “... ba ... hodo ～ば～ほど,” shows that as one thing increases, the other increases as well.

English approximation: “the more ..., the more ....”

- A) なんでも、練習<sup>れんしゅう</sup>すればする **ほど** 上手<sup>じょうず</sup>になる。

Na-n demo, renshuu sure ba suru **hodo** joozu ni naru.

With everything, the more (you) practice, the better (you) will get.

- B) 骨<sup>こつ</sup>とう品<sup>ひん</sup>は、古<sup>ふる</sup>ければ古<sup>ふる</sup>い **ほど** 価値<sup>かち</sup>がある。

Kottoohin wa, furukere ba adj. furui **hodo** kachi ga aru.

As for antiques, the older it is, the more value it has.

## HOKA ほか

Followed by a negative, it serves to exclude all possibilities other than the one mentioned.

English approximation: The implication is “nothing except for ...”; the meaning is similar to “only.” Interchangeable with “shika しか.” (See p.182)

- A) あの<sup>ひとたち</sup>人達は、もうそこまでいってしまっていては、離婚<sup>りこん</sup>する ほか<sup>し</sup>仕<sup>かた</sup>方がない。

Ano hito-tachi wa, moo soko made itte-shimatte ite wa,  
v. rikon-suru hoka shikata ga nai.

For those people, since they've already gone that far, there's nothing left to do but to get a divorce.

- B) こんなひどい<sup>あめ</sup>雨では、今日の<sup>きょう</sup>試合<sup>しあい</sup>は中止<sup>ちゅうし</sup>する ほか ないね。

Kon-na-ni hidoi ame de wa, kyoo no shiai wa v. chuushi-suru  
hoka nai ne.

Since it's raining so heavily, we can do nothing but cancel today's match.

## I い

Used mostly in men's language. Not translatable.

1. At the end of a sentence, serves to emphasize it.

- A) そのおもちゃ、僕の<sup>ぼく</sup>だ い。

Sono omocha, boku no c. da i.

That toy is mine!

- B) わしも<sup>とし</sup>をとったわ<sup>い</sup>。

Washi mo toshi o totta p. wa <sup>i</sup>.

(Oh,) I've grown old (sigh)!

- C) いかは食べたか<sup>い</sup>?

Ika wa tabeta p. ka <sup>i</sup>?

Did you eat the squid?

2. Reinforces the interrogative.

- A) <sup>こんばん</sup>今晚マージャンやらないか<sup>い</sup>?

Konban maajan yara-nai p. ka <sup>i</sup>?

Why don't we play mahjong tonight?

- B) <sup>いま</sup>今すぐ来られないか<sup>い</sup>?

Ima sugu korare-nai p. ka <sup>i</sup>?

Can't you come right now?

## KA か

1. Expresses uncertainty of the topic it marks.

English approximation: "if" "whether"

- A) <sup>にほん</sup>日本に行くのは、いつになる<sup>か</sup> <sup>まったく</sup>全くわからない。

Nihon ni iku no wa, itsu ni v. naru <sup>ka</sup> mattaku wakara-nai.

I have no idea when I'll be going to Japan. (literally: As for going to Japan, when it will be, I have no idea.)

- B) この<sup>かわ</sup>河は、<sup>み</sup>見ただけでは、<sup>うみ</sup>海なんだ<sup>か</sup> <sup>かわ</sup>河なんだ<sup>か</sup> <sup>わ</sup>わからないくらい<sup>おお</sup>大きいね。

Kono kawa wa, mita dake de wa, umi nan c. da ka kawa nan  
c. da ka wakara-nai kurai ookii ne.

This river is so big, you can't tell if it's an ocean or a river just by looking (at it). (literally: As for this river, just by looking (at it), whether it's an ocean or a river, one can't tell—that's the extent of its size, isn't it?)

2. Expresses a conjecture with an implied sense of doubt.

English approximation: “perhaps because of ...”

- A) もうこんな<sup>じかん</sup>時間か。外が<sup>そと あか</sup>明るいせい か <sup>き</sup>気が付かなかった。

Moo kon-na jikan ka. Soto ga akarui n. see ka ki ga tsukanakatta.

It's so late already. Maybe it's because it's light outside, I hadn't noticed.

- B) ゆうべは<sup>の</sup>飲みすぎたの か、今朝は<sup>け さ あたま</sup>頭が痛い。

Yuube wa nomi-sugita p. no ka, kesa wa atama ga itai.

Perhaps I had too much to drink last night; this morning I have a headache.

3. In the pattern “... ka ... ka 〜か〜か,” lists a number of choices.

English approximation: “... or ...”

- A) 右の<sup>みぎ</sup> か 左の<sup>ひだり</sup> か、早く<sup>はや</sup>決めてよ。

Migi n. no ka hidari n. no ka, hayaku kimete yo.

The one on the right or the one on the left? Make up your mind quickly!

- B) 行くの か 行かないの か、どっちなの？

Iku p. no ka ika-nai p. no ka, docchi na no?

Are you going or not going, which is it?

4. In the pattern "... ka ... ~か~," gives an approximate number.

English approximation: "(number) or (number)"

- A) 二度<sup>にど</sup> か 三度<sup>さんど</sup> 君<sup>きみ</sup>のうちに電話<sup>でんわ</sup>したけど、留守<sup>るす</sup>だった。

n. Nido ka sando kimi no uchi ni denwa-shita kedo, rusu datta.

I called you at home two or three times, but no one answered.

- B) わたし<sup>わたし</sup>達は三日<sup>みっか</sup> か 四日<sup>よっか</sup> 旅行<sup>りょこう</sup>に出かけます。

Watashi-tachi wa n. mikka ka yokka ryokoo ni deake-masu.

We're going on a trip for three or four days.

- C) そのキャンデー、一つ<sup>ひとつ</sup> か 二つ<sup>ふた</sup> わたしにもちょうだい。

Sono kyandee, n. hitotsu ka futatsu watashi ni mo choodai.

Give me one or two of those candies, too.

5. Placed at the end of a sentence.

- 1) Makes the sentence into an interrogative or a rhetorical question. Not translatable.

- A) き<sup>き</sup>のうはどうして来<sup>こ</sup>なかったのです か ?

Kinoo wa dooshite konakatta no c. desu ka ?

Why didn't you come yesterday?

- B) 戦争<sup>せんそう</sup>を避<sup>さ</sup>けるのは不可能<sup>ふかのう</sup>なのだろう か ?

Sensoo o sakeru no wa fukanoo na no c. daroo ka ?

Is it impossible to avoid war?

- C) どちら様<sup>さま</sup>でいらっしゃいます か ?

Dochira-sama de v. irasshai-masu ka ?

May I ask who this is?

- 2) Indicates a confirmation. Not translatable.

A) わかった か。もう二度とするんじゃないよ。

v. Wakatta ka. Moo nido to suru-n ja nai yo.

Do you understand? Don't ever do this again.

B) <sup>ほんとう</sup>本当にあした来てくれます か ?

Hontoo ni ashita v. kite-kure-masu ka ?

Are you really going to come (on my behalf) tomorrow?

3) Rhetorical question. Not translatable.

A) どうしてそんなことが信じられるだろう か。

Dooshite son-na koto ga shinji-rareru c. daroo ka.

How can (I) believe something like that?

B) こんなことになるとは、だれが想像しただろう か。

Kon-na koto ni naru to wa, dare ga soozoo-shita c. daroo ka.

Who would have imagined that this would happen? (literally: As for this happening, who would have imagined?)

C) こんな夜中に人が訪ねてくることがあろう か。

Kon-na yonaka ni hito ga tazunete kuru koto ga v. aroo ka.

Is it possible that someone has come to visit at such a late hour?

4) Expresses a rebuttal or objection to a previous sentence. Not translatable.

A) そんなことってあるんでしょう か。

Son-na koto-tte aru-n c. deshoo ka.

Can something like that really happen?

B) <sup>ほんとう</sup>本当に大丈夫でしょう か。

Hontoo ni daijoubu c. deshoo ka.

Is it really going to be all right?

5) Adds a critical, scolding tone. Not translatable.

A) こんな時間<sup>じかん</sup>まで遊<sup>あそ</sup>んでくる人<sup>ひと</sup>がありますか<sup>か</sup>。

Kon-na jikan made asonde-kuru hito ga v. ari-masu ka.

You're out playing so late! (literally: "Is there anyone who'd stay out playing until this hour? ")

B) あんなに頼<sup>たの</sup>んだのに、この手紙<sup>てがみ</sup>出<sup>で</sup>すのを忘<sup>わす</sup>れたのか<sup>か</sup>。

An-na ni tanonda no ni, kono tegami dasu no o wasureta p. no ka.

I asked you so many times, and still you forgot to mail this letter!

6) Often in the pattern "... de wa/ja nai ka 〜ではないか/じゃないか," asks a rhetorical question for emphasis.

English approximation: "wasn't it so that ..."

A) 明<sup>あか</sup>るうちに帰<sup>かえ</sup>っておいでといったではないか<sup>か</sup>。

Akarui uchi ni kaette oide to itta de wa v. nai ka.

Didn't I tell you to come home while it was still light outside?

B) さかだち、きのうはできたじゃないか<sup>か</sup>。

Sakadachi, kinoo wa dekita ja v. nai ka.

Weren't you able to do a handstand yesterday?

7) Makes a casual suggestion.

English approximation: "why don't we ..." "do you want to ..." "let's ..."

A) 帰<sup>かえ</sup>りに一杯<sup>いっぱい</sup>やろうか<sup>か</sup>。

Kaeri ni ippai v. yaroo ka.

Do you want to have a drink on our way home?

B) もう一度<sup>いちど</sup>確<sup>たし</sup>かめてみようじゃないか<sup>か</sup>。

Moo ichido tashikamete miyoo ja v. nai ka.

Why don't we make sure one more time?



- 8) Often in a “... tara doo ka 〜たらどうか” pattern, makes a roundabout, softened command.

English approximation: “why don't you do ...”

- A) そんなに行きたいのなら、行ってみたらどうか。

Son-na ni iki-tai no nara, itte-mitara adv. doo ka.

If you want to go that badly, why don't you go?

- B) ひとりで心配しているより、いろんな人に聞いてみたらどうか。

Hitori de shinpai-shite-iru yori, iron-na hito ni kiite-mitara adv. doo ka.

Instead of worrying all by yourself, why don't you ask lots of people (for advice)?

- 9) As a sort of self-utterance, often with a reminiscent or some emotional overtone. Not translatable.

- A) そうか。とうとう合格したか。よくやったな。

adv. Soo ka. Tootoo v. gookaku-shita ka. Yoku yatta na.

Really, (you) finally passed (the test). (You) did well.

- B) なあんだ、影か。幽霊かと思った。

Naan da, n. kage ka. Yuuree ka to omotta.

Oh, it's only a shadow. I thought it was a ghost.

## KA-I か-い Combination particle

A combination of the particles “ka か” and “i い.” Placed at the end of a sentence to indicate that it is an interrogative, or to express that it opposes the statement that was just previously made by another party.

Emphatic. Not translatable.

- A) そりゃ、うそじゃない **かい** ?

Sorya, uso ja <sub>v.</sub> **nai** **ka i** ?

Isn't that a lie?

- B) こんないい天気<sup>てんき</sup>に、雨<sup>あめ</sup>なんか降<sup>ふ</sup>るもん **かい**。

Kon-na ii tenki ni, ame nan ka furu <sub>n.</sub> **mon** **ka i** .

When it's this nice out, there's no way it's going to rain.

- C) 怪談<sup>かいだん</sup>? そんなもん信<sup>しん</sup>じる **かい**。

Kaidan? Son-na mon <sub>v.</sub> **shinjiru** **ka i** .

Ghost stories? I'd never believe in something like that!

## KA-NA(KA-NAA) か-な(か-なあ) Combination particle

A combination of the particles “ka か” and “na な” or “na(naa) な(なあ).”

1. Casually expresses doubt, with a very light exclamatory tone.

English approximation: “(I) wonder ...?”

- A) 大学入試<sup>だいがくにゅうし</sup>、今年<sup>ことし</sup>こそはうまくいく **かな(かなあ)**。

Daigaku nyuushi, kotoshi koso wa <sub>v.</sub> **umaku-iku**  
**ka na(ka naa)** .

I wonder if maybe college entrance examinations will finally go well this year?

- B) どうして一人<sup>ひとり</sup>で出<sup>で</sup>かけたの **かな(かなあ)**。

Dooshite hitori de dekaketa <sub>p.</sub> **no** **ka na(ka naa)** .

I wonder why (he/she) went out alone?

2. Used in making a suggestion to oneself.

English approximation: “(I) think/(I) will do ...”

A) コーヒーでもいれよう かな(かなあ)。

Koohii demo v. ireyoo ka na(ka naa) .

I think I'm going to make some coffee ...

B) そろそろ帰ろう かな。

Soro-soro v. kaeroo ka na .

I think I'm going to go home soon.

3. In the pattern “... nai kana 〜ないかな,” indicates wishful thinking.

English approximation: “I wish (it) would ...”

A) <sup>はや</sup>早く<sup>はる</sup>春にならない かな(かなあ)。

Hayaku haru ni v. nara-nai ka na(ka naa) .

I wish spring would come soon.

B) お父さん<sup>とう</sup>早く<sup>はや</sup>出<sup>しゅっちょう</sup>張<sup>かえ</sup>から帰ってこない かな(かなあ)。

Otoosan hayaku shucchoo kara kaette v. ko-nai  
ka na(ka naa) .

I wish Dad would come home soon from his business trip.

## KARA から

### FUNDAMENTALS OF “KARA から”

In general, you can understand the function of “kara から” by identifying the part of speech of the word immediately preceding it. When “kara から” is placed after a noun or a nominal it usually means “from,” whereas after an adjective or a verb and a copula, “kara から” usually indicates reason or

cause.

1. Placed after a noun or a nominal.

1) After a pronoun, interrogative pronoun, a person's name or social position, indicates that an action or a deed is directed from that person.

English approximation: "from"

A) わたしはその話を先生<sup>はなし せんせい</sup>から<sup>き</sup>聞きました。

Watashi wa sono hanashi o n. sensee

kara kiki-mashita.

I heard that story from my teacher.



B) 僕は彼女<sup>ぼく かのじょ</sup>から<sup>ら</sup>ラブレターをもらった。

Boku wa n. kanojo kara raburetaa o moratta.

I received a love letter from her.



C) その本<sup>ほん</sup>をだれ<sup>だれ</sup>から<sup>か</sup>借りましたか？

Sono hon o n. dare kara kari-mashita ka?

From whom did you borrow the book?

D) わたしは先生<sup>せんせい</sup>から<sup>ほ</sup>褒められてうれしかった。

Watashi wa n. sensee kara homerarete ureshikatta.

I was happy that my teacher gave me a compliment.

E) あなた<sup>あなた</sup>から<sup>はな</sup>どうぞお話しください。

n. Anata kara doozo ohanashi kudasai.

Please, if you could start talking first. (literally: (Starting) with you, please tell us your story.)

- F) わたしも早く親<sup>はや おや</sup>から<sup>どくりつ</sup>独立したいんです。

Watashi mo hayaku n. oya kara dokuritsu shi-tai-n desu.

I, too, would like to become independent from my parents soon.

- 2) Placed after a noun, showing a place/space, indicates that something starts/started at that place.

English approximation: “from” “through” “out of” “in”

- A) 彼はポケットから<sup>くるま かぎ と だ</sup>車の鍵を取り出した。

Kare wa n. poketto kara kuruma no kagi o tori-dashita.

He took his car keys out of his pocket.



- B) どろぼう まどから<sup>はい</sup>入ったらしい。

Doroboo wa n. mado kara haitta rashii.

It looks like the robber got into the house through the window.



- C) 木から<sup>お</sup>りんごが落ちてきた。

n. Ki kara ringo ga ochite kita.

An apple fell from the tree.



- D) 太陽は東から<sup>のぼ</sup>昇ります。

Taiyoo wa n. higashi kara nobori-masu.

The sun rises in the east.



- E) ホテルの屋上<sup>おくじょう</sup>から<sup>ふじさん</sup>富士山<sup>み</sup>が見えました。

Hoteru no n. okujoo kara Fujisan ga mie-mashita.

I saw Mt. Fuji from the roof top  
of the hotel.



- F) ステンドグラス<sup>ゆうひ</sup>から<sup>こ</sup>夕日<sup>ひ</sup>がさし込んでいる。

n. Sutendogurasu kara yuuhi ga sashi-konde-iru.

The rays of the setting sun are shining through  
the stained glass.



- G) わたしはその知識<sup>ちしき</sup>を本<sup>ほん</sup>から<sup>え</sup>得ました。

Watashi wa sono chishiki o n. hon kara  
e-mashita.

I obtained that knowledge from a book.



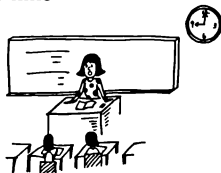
- 3) After a time word, indicates that something begins/began at that moment.

English approximation: "from" "at" "since"

- A) 日本語<sup>にほんご</sup>の授業<sup>じゅぎょう</sup>は、朝九時<sup>あさくじ</sup>から<sup>はじ</sup>始まります。

Nihon-go no jugyoo wa, asa n. ku-ji kara hajimari-masu.

The Japanese language class begins at nine  
o'clock in the morning.



- B) 来週<sup>らいしゅう</sup> から 地下鉄<sup>ちかてつ</sup>が値上げ<sup>ねあ</sup>になる。

n. Raishuu kara chikatetsu ga ne-age ni naru.

From next week, the subway fare will go up.

- C) わたしは、忙しくて<sup>いそが</sup>、きのうの夜<sup>よる</sup> から ずっと寝<sup>ね</sup>ていません。

Watashi wa, isogashikute, <sup>ph.</sup> kinoo no yoru kara zutto nete i-masen.

I've been so busy that I haven't slept at all since last night.

- D) セタは、昔<sup>むかし</sup> から 日本<sup>にほん</sup>に伝<sup>つた</sup>わっている行<sup>ぎょうじ</sup>事<sup>じ</sup>です。

Tanabata wa n. mukashi kara nihon ni tsutawatte-iru gyooji desu.

The Tanabata festival is a traditional event observed since olden times in Japan.

- E) わたしは、日本<sup>にほん</sup>に來<sup>き</sup>て から もう二年<sup>にねん</sup>になります。

Watashi wa, nihon ni g. kite kara moo ni-nen ni nari-masu.

Two years have already passed since I came to Japan.

- F) 祖父<sup>そふ</sup>が亡<sup>な</sup>くなって から 五年<sup>ごねん</sup>たちました。

Sofu ga g. nakunatte kara go-nen tachi-mashita.

It's been five years since my grandfather passed away.

- 4) In the pattern "... kara ... made ～から～まで," shows a range/span of space or time.

English approximation: "from/to" "between"

- A) この幼稚園<sup>ようちえん</sup>には、二歳<sup>にさい</sup> から 四歳<sup>よんさい</sup>までの子<sup>こ</sup>供<sup>ども</sup>達<sup>たち</sup>がいます。

Kono yoochien ni wa, n. ni-sai kara yon-sai made no kodomo-tachi ga i-masu.

There are children between the ages of two and four at this kindergarten.

- B) 三時<sup>さんじ</sup> から<sup>よじ</sup> 四時までの間<sup>あいだ</sup> に来て<sup>き</sup>ください。

n. San-ji kara yo-ji made no aida ni kite kudasai.

Please come over between three and four o'clock.

- C) わたしは、その記事<sup>きじ</sup>を隅<sup>すみ</sup>から<sup>すみ</sup>隅<sup>すみ</sup>まで読み<sup>よ</sup>ました。

Watashi wa, sono kiji o n. sumi kara sumi made yomi-mashita.

I've read the article from the beginning to the end. (literally: from one corner to the other)

- D) レストランといっても、ピン<sup>ピン</sup>から<sup>きり</sup>きりまであります。

Resutoran to itte mo, n. pin kara kiri made ari-masu.

When it comes to restaurants, there's a wide range of them.  
(literally: from the first to the last)

- E) 夕食<sup>ゆうしょく</sup>を食べて<sup>た</sup>から<sup>ね</sup>寝る<sup>ね</sup>までに<sup>よじかん</sup>四時間ある。

Yuushoku o g. tabete kara neru made ni yo-jikan aru.

After dinner, I'll have four hours before I go to bed.

- 5) In the pattern "... kara ... e 〜から〜へ," the particle "kara から" is placed between repeated words, to indicate that the same action occurs one after another in succession.

English approximation: "one after another"

- A) 花火<sup>はなび</sup>が、次<sup>つぎ</sup>から<sup>つぎ</sup>次へ<sup>う</sup>と打ち<sup>うち</sup>上げ<sup>あ</sup>られた。

Hanabi ga, n. tsugi kara tsugi e to uchi-  
agerareta.

Fireworks were shot up into the sky one after  
another. (literally: from next to the next)





- B) おおなみ つぎ から つぎ おし よ せてきた。  
大波が、次から次へと押し寄せてきた。

Oo-nami ga n. tsugi kara tsugi e to oshi-yosete kita.

One after another, great waves came rolling in.



- C) わたし 達は 飛行機で 島 から 島 へと 飛んだ。  
わたし達は飛行機で島から島へと飛んだ。

Watashi-tachi wa hikooki de n. shima kara shima e to tonda.

We flew by plane from one island to another.



- 6) Indicates the composition of something. Interchangeable with the particle “de で.”

English approximation: “from” “of” “out of”

- A) はもの こうてつ から つく 作られます。  
刃物は鋼鉄から作られます。

Hamono wa n. kootetsu kara tsukurare-masu.

Cutlery is made of steel.



- B) パンは 小麦粉 から つく 作ります。  
パンは小麦粉から作ります。

Pan wa n. komugi-ko kara tsukuri-masu.

(We) make bread out of flour.



- C) 本は紙<sup>ほん かみ</sup>から<sup>から</sup>できています。

Hon wa n. kami kara dekite i-masu.

Books are made of paper.

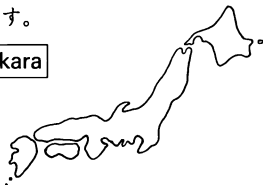


- D) 日本は四つの大きい島<sup>にほん よつ おお しま</sup>から<sup>から</sup>なっています。

Nihon wa yottsu no ookii n. shima kara

natte i-masu.

Japan consists of four big islands.



- E) この国の経済は、貿易による収入<sup>くに けいざい ぼうえき しゅうにゅう</sup>から<sup>から</sup>成り立っている。

Kono kuni no keezai wa, booeiki ni yoru n. shuunyuu kara

nari-tatte-iru.

The economy of this country is based on its trade income.

- 7) Placed after a noun, indicates an approximate amount/number.

English approximation: "as many as" "as much as" "no less than"

- A) 百台<sup>ひゃくだい</sup>から<sup>から</sup>の大型トラックが並んでいる。

n. Hyaku-dai kara no oogata torakku ga narande-iru.

More than one hundred big trucks are lined up.

- B) 千人<sup>せんにん</sup>から<sup>から</sup>の観光客が、毎日ここを訪れる。

n. Sen-nin kara no kankoo-kyaku ga, mainichi koko o otozure-

ru.

As many as one thousand tourists visit this place every day.

2. Placed after an abstract noun, an adjective or a verb.

- 1) Indicates a cause or a reason for an action/attitude that is described in the predicate clause. This inverted structure makes the sentence

emphatic.

English approximation: “as” “so” “since” “due to” “for” “because” “considering” “seeing”

- A) お魚が安かった から たくさん買いました。

Osakana ga adj. yasukatta kara takusan  
kai-mashita.

Because I found the fish inexpensive, I  
bought lots of them.



- B) 今日はいいお天気だ から、桜は満開になるだろう。

Kyoo wa ii otenki c. da kara, sakura wa mankai ni naru daroo.

Since the weather is very nice today, cherry  
blossoms will probably be in full bloom.



- C) わたしはブロッコリは嫌いだ から、絶対に食べない。

Watashi wa burokkori wa kirai c. da kara, zettai ni tabe-nai.

Because I don't like broccoli, I never eat it.

- D) 日本語が上手になりたい から、一生懸命勉強します。

Nihon-go ga joozu ni v. nari-tai kara, isshoo-kenmee  
benkyoo-shi-masu.

Since I want to be good at Japanese, I'll work hard.

- E) 君に友達が出来ないのは、うちにばかりいる から だよ。

Kimi ni tomodachi ga deki-nai no wa, uchi ni bakari v. iru kara  
da yo.

The reason why you can't make friends is that you stay home most  
of the time.

- F) <sup>ぼく の す</sup>僕が乗り過ごしたのは、<sup>きみ おし</sup>君が教えてくれなかった から だぞ。

Boku ga nori-sugoshita no wa, kimi ga oshiete-kure-nakatta  
kara da zo.

The reason why I missed my stop was that you didn't tell me  
(where to get off).

- G) <sup>かれ つま ふ わ</sup>彼は、妻との不和 から、<sup>べっきょ</sup>別居した。

Kare wa tsuma to no fuwa kara, bekkyo-shita.

Due to the fact that he didn't get along with his wife, they separat-  
ed.

- H) <sup>かれ こうこう せいせき</sup>彼は、高校の成績 から、<sup>しょうがくきん</sup>奨学金をもらうことになった。

Kare wa, kookoo no seeseki kara, shoogakukin o morau  
koto ni natta.

Because of his (excellent) grades in high school, he is to be granted  
a scholarship.

2) Placed after an abstract noun, indicates one's judgment/viewpoint.

English approximation: "from a viewpoint of" "judging from" "by"  
"according to"

- A) あなたの<sup>め</sup>眼 から <sup>み</sup>見れば、この<sup>しごと かんたん</sup>仕事は簡単でしょう。

Anata no me kara mire ba, kono shigoto wa kantan deshoo.

From your viewpoint, this task may seem to be easy.

- B) この<sup>てがみ ないよう</sup>手紙の内容 から <sup>はんだん</sup>判断すると、<sup>かれ かしやう しょうしん</sup>彼は課長に昇進するらしい。

Kono tegami no naiyoo kara handan-suru to, kare wa  
kachoo ni shooshin suru rashii.

Judging from the contents of this letter, it seems that he will be  
promoted to manager. (literally: section chief)

- C) 医学的見地<sup>いがくてきけんち</sup> から<sup>から</sup> すれば、彼の研究<sup>かれ けんきゅう</sup>はノーベル賞<sup>しょう</sup>にも値<sup>あた</sup>する。

Igaku-teki n. kenchi kara sure ba, kare no kenkyuu wa nooberu-shoo ni mo atai suru.

From a medical point of view, his research is worth the Nobel Prize.

- 3) Placed after an abstract noun of emotion, indicates that such an emotion results in the action/state described in the predicate clause.

English approximation: “from” “out of” “due to”

- A) わたしはうれしき<sup>うれしき</sup> から<sup>から</sup> 跳<sup>と</sup>び上<sup>あ</sup>がった。

Watashi wa n. ureshisa kara tobi-agatta.

I jumped for joy.

- B) 僕は、工藤君とちょっとした言い合<sup>いあ</sup>い<sup>い</sup>から<sup>から</sup> けんかしてしま<sup>あ</sup>った。

Boku wa, kudoo-kun to chotto shita n. ii-ai kara kenka-shite shimatta.

I ended up having a fight with Kudo over something that arose out of a minor argument.

- C) 彼は責任感<sup>せきにんかん</sup> から<sup>から</sup> 辞職<sup>じしょく</sup>した。

Kare wa n. sekinin-kan kara jishoku-shita.

He resigned from his office out of a sense of responsibility.

3. In the pattern “... kara to itte ～からといって,” introduces a restriction or a warning.

English approximation: “even though”

- A) お小遣<sup>こづか</sup>いをもら<sup>もら</sup>ったから<sup>から</sup> とい<sup>い</sup>って、使<sup>つか</sup>い過<sup>す</sup>ぎると、すぐな<sup>な</sup>くなるよ。

Okozukai o v. moratta kara to itte, tsukai-sugiru to, sugu

nakunaru yo.

Even though you've received an allowance, if you spend it too fast, it will soon be gone.

- B) 安い から といって、たくさん買<sup>か</sup>ってはけません。

adj. Yasui kara to itte, takusan katte wa ike-masen.

Even though they may be a bargain, don't buy too many at a time.

- C) 慣<sup>な</sup>れたところだ から といって、一人<sup>ひとり</sup>で歩<sup>ある</sup>くのは危<sup>き</sup>険<sup>けん</sup>です。

Nareta tokoro c. da kara to itte, hitori de aruku no wa kiken desu.

Even though you are familiar with the area, it is dangerous to walk around alone.

4. In the pattern "... kara ni wa 〜からには," expresses a determination or a resolution.

English approximation: "since" "now that"

- A) これだけ勉<sup>べん</sup>強<sup>きやう</sup>した から には、き<sup>ごう</sup>つと合<sup>あ</sup>格<sup>かく</sup>して見<sup>み</sup>せるぞ。

Kore dake v. benkyoo shita kara ni wa, kitto gookaku-shite miseru zo.

Now that I've studied this hard, I will pass the entrance exam without fail!

- B) 外国<sup>がいこく</sup>へ行<sup>い</sup>く から には、そこの文<sup>ぶん</sup>化<sup>か</sup>をよく知<sup>し</sup>らなければなら<sup>な</sup>い。

Gaikoku e v. iku kara ni wa, soko no bunka o yoku shira-nakere-ba-nara-nai.

Now that you are going to a foreign country, you must got to know its culture very well.

- C) この会<sup>かい</sup>社<sup>しゃ</sup>に入<sup>に</sup>社<sup>しや</sup>した から には、一<sup>いっ</sup>生<sup>しょう</sup>懸<sup>けん</sup>命<sup>めい</sup>頑<sup>がん</sup>張<sup>ば</sup>ろう。

Kono kaisha ni v. nyuusha-shita kara ni wa, isshoo-kenmee

ganbaroo.

Now that I've been accepted by this company, I will do my best.

5. In the pattern "... kara ni 〜からに."

English approximation: "just by doing ..."

A) 彼女は見る <sup>かのじょ み</sup> から <sup>やさし</sup> に <sup>ひと</sup> 優しい人ですね。

Kanojo wa <sub>v</sub>. miru kara ni yasashi-soo na hito desu ne.

Just by looking at her, you can tell that she's probably a very kind person.

B) それは聞く <sup>き</sup> から <sup>こわ</sup> に <sup>はなし</sup> 怖い話だ。

Sore wa <sub>v</sub>. kiku kara ni kowai hanashi da.

Just by listening to it, the story sends a chill up my spine.

## KARA-SHITE から-して Combination particle

A combination of the particles "kara から" and "shite して."

1. Cites one characteristic of something/someone in order to make an emphatic statement about the whole thing/person.

English approximation: "starting with ..."

A) あの男 <sup>おとこ</sup> の人 <sup>ひと</sup> は顔 <sup>かお</sup> つき からして ちょっと <sup>へん</sup> 変だ。

Ano otoko no hito wa <sub>n</sub>. kaotsuki kara shite chotto hen da.

Starting with his face, he is a little strange.

B) 彼女は持ち物 <sup>かのじょ も</sup> からして <sup>もの</sup> ぜいたくだ。

Kanojo wa <sub>n</sub>. mochimono kara shite zeetaku da.

Starting with her possessions, she is extravagant.

2. A more emphatic form of "kara から" used in the sense of "because/

since”; similar to “node ので.”

English approximation: “consequently”

- A) 今年の収支は赤字である からして、来年はなんとか黒字にしよう。

Kotoshi no shuushi wa akaji c. de-aru kara shite, rainen wa nantoka kuroji ni shiyoo.

Our balance sheet is in the red this year; consequently, let's try to somehow come out on top next year.

- B) そういううわさだ からして、あの二人は近々結婚するだろう。

Soo-yuu uwasa c. da kara shite, ano futari wa chikajika kekkon-suru daroo.

Since that sort of rumor is going around, consequently, it's likely that those two will get married soon.

## KASHIRA かしら

Found in women's language.

1. Following an interrogative pronoun, poses a question.

English approximation: “(I) wonder ...”

- A) だれ かしら、今頃戸をたたくのは。

n. Dare kashira, imagoro to o tataku no wa.

I wonder who is knocking on my door at this hour.

- B) 確かにここに置いたはずだけど、ないわ。どこ かしら。

Tashika ni koko ni oita hazu da kedo, nai wa. n. Doko kashira.

I thought I had definitely put it here, but it's not here. I wonder where it could be?



- C) <sup>おお</sup>大きな<sup>つつみ</sup>包ね。なに かしら。

Ookina tsutsumi ne. n. Nani kashira .

That's a big package. I wonder what it is?



2. Casually softens a question or a sense of doubt addressed to oneself or another party. Not translatable.

- A) この本<sup>ほん</sup>を買<sup>か</sup>ったの、いつだっ<sup>た</sup> かしら。

Kono hon o katta no, itsu c. datta kashira .

When was it that I bought this book?

- B) わたし、そんなこと言<sup>い</sup>った かしら。覚<sup>おぼ</sup>えていないけど。

Watashi, son-na koto v. itta kashira . Oboete-i-nai kedo.

Did I say something like that? I don't remember it.

3. Softens an interrogative sentence. Not translatable.

- A) 今度<sup>こんど</sup>はいつい<sup>ら</sup>っしゃいます かしら。

Kondo wa itsu v. irasshai-masu kashira .

When will (you) be coming by again?

- B) 今日店<sup>きょうみせ</sup>は開<sup>あ</sup>いている かしら。

Kyoo mise wa v. aite-iru kashira .

I wonder, is the store open today?

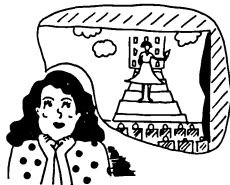
4. Makes a casual suggestion to oneself or another party.

English approximation: "should (I/we) do ..."

- A) 今晚映画<sup>こんばんえいが</sup>に行<sup>い</sup>こう かしら。

Konban eega ni v. ikoo kashira .

Should I go to the movies tonight?



B) ケーキを買って帰ろう かしら。

Keeki o katte v. kaeroo kashira .

Should I buy a cake on the way home?



5. Following a negation:

- 1) Indicates wishful thinking or softens a statement asking someone for a favor.

English approximation: "I wish ..." "could (you) do ..."

A) <sup>はや</sup>早く <sup>ごうかくつうち</sup>合格通知が来ない かしら。

Hayaku gookaku-tsuuchi ga v. ko-nai kashira .

I wish the acceptance letter would arrive soon.

B) <sup>いま</sup>今すぐ <sup>き</sup>来てくれない かしら。

Ima sugu v. kite kure-nai kashira .

Could you come right away?

- 2) Expresses concern over an uncertain or potentially negative situation.

English approximation: "I wonder ..."

A) <sup>いまだ</sup>今出かけても、<sup>じゅうじ</sup>十時の <sup>きしゃ</sup>汽車に間に <sup>あ</sup>合う かしら。

Ima dekake te mo, juu-ji no kisha ni v. mani-au kashira .

Even if you were to leave now, I wonder if you could make it in time to catch the ten o'clock train.

B) そのスーツケース、<sup>おも</sup>重すぎない かしら。

Sono suutsu-keesu, v. omo-sugi-nai kashira .

I wonder if that suitcase isn't too heavy.

## KE ケ

Colloquial. Usually placed at the end of the sentence after the copula “da だ,” which is the informal form of “desu です,” to form patterns such as “dakke だっけ” and “dattakke だったっけ.”

1. Used in reminiscing about a past event.

English approximation: “((I) remember)”

- A) 小さいとき、よく木登りをしたものの(もん)だっ<sup>け</sup>。

Chiisai toki, yoku ki-nobori o shita mono (mo-n) e. da-k<sup>ke</sup>.

When (I) was little, (I) used to climb trees all the time, (I remember).

- B) そういえば、そんな所へ行ったっ<sup>け</sup>ねえ。

Soo ie ba, son-na tokoro e v. itta-k<sup>ke</sup> nee.

That's right, we did go somewhere like that, (I remember) (didn't we).

2. In an interrogative, actively solicits an answer from the party addressed.

English approximation: “when is/was it ...?” “what is/was it ...?” etc.

- A) いつのことだったっ<sup>け</sup>、君と音楽会に行ったのは。

Itsu no koto e. datta-k<sup>ke</sup>, kimi to ongak-kai ni itta no wa.

When was it now, that I went with you to the concert?

- B) あの人のところの電話番号、何番だっ<sup>け</sup>。

Ano hito no tokoro no denwa-bangoo, nan-ban e. da-k<sup>ke</sup>.

That person's phone number, what is it now?

## KEREDOMO (KEREDO, KEDO, KEDOMO) けれども (けれど、けど、けども)

Colloquial forms: “keredo けれど,” “kedo けど,” and “kedomo けども.”

1. A conjunctive particle.

1) After one statement, functions as an adversative conjunction leading into the next clause/phrase.

English approximation: “even though” “but”

A) この料理はおいしい<sup>りょうり</sup> **けれども**、作るのに手間がかかる<sup>つく</sup>。

Kono ryoori wa <sup>adj.</sup> oishii **keredomo**, tsukuru no ni tema ga kakaru.

Even though this dish is delicious, it's a hassle to make.

B) ちょっと地味だ<sup>じみ</sup> **けれども**、今夜のパーティーにはこれ<sup>こんや</sup>を着て行こう。

Chotto jimi <sup>c.</sup> da **keredomo**, kon-ya no paatii ni wa kore o kite ikoo.

Even though it's a bit subdued, I'll wear this to the party tonight.

2) Following an apologetic remark, connects it to the main point that follows.

English approximation: “though” “but”

A) これ、ほんの少し<sup>すこ</sup>です **けれども**、召し上<sup>め</sup>ってください<sup>あが</sup>。

Kore, hon no sukoshi <sup>c.</sup> desu **keredomo**, meshi-agatte kudasai.

Though there's only a little bit here, please have it (to eat).

B) 突然<sup>とつぜん</sup>です **けれども**、会社<sup>かいしゃ</sup>を辞<sup>や</sup>めさせていただきます。

Totsuzen <sup>c.</sup> desu **keredomo**, kaisha o yamesasete itada-

kimasu.

I know it's sudden, but I wish to quit the company.

3) Simply connects two unrelated statements.

English approximation: (like a comma)

- A) 犬がほえている けれども、だれか外にいるんじゃない？

Inu ga v. hoete-iru keredomo, dare ka soto ni iru-n ja nai?

The dog's barking, isn't there someone out there?

- B) この地方は寒いと聞いた けれども、本当に毎日冷え込むね。

Kono chihoo wa samui to v. kiita keredomo, hontoo ni maini-chi hie-komu ne.

I had heard that it was cold in this region, and it's truly quite chilly every day.

2. At the end of a sentence or clause.

- 1) Expresses wishful thinking; a hope that the situation at hand will be reversed.

English approximation: "(if ...), but..."

- A) もう少し日本語がよくわかるといいのだ けれども。

Moo sukoshi Nihon-go ga yoku waku to ii no c. da keredomo.

It would be better if I could understand Japanese a little more, but ....

- B) もう少しお金があれば、あのステレオが買えるのだ けれども。

Moo sukoshi okane ga are ba, ano sutereo ga kaeru no c. da keredomo.

If I had a bit more money, I'd be able to buy that stereo, but ....

- 2) Often in the pattern “doose ... keredomo どうせ〜けれども,” gives the sentence an overtone of hopelessness, cynicism, or scorn. Not translatable.

A) 走<sup>はし</sup>ったってどうせ<sup>ま</sup>間に<sup>あ</sup>合わない<sup>けれども</sup>。

Hashitta-tte doose v. mani-awa-nai keredomo .

Even if (I) were to run, there's no way (I) would make it on time.

B) こんな<sup>やすもの</sup>安物、<sup>か</sup>買ってもどうせすぐ<sup>で</sup>こわれるだろう<sup>けれども</sup>。

Kon-na yasumono, katte mo doose sugu kowareru c. daroo  
keredomo .

This is so cheap, even if I were to buy it, it would surely break right away.

- 3) Used in making an indirect suggestion or statement.

English approximation: “(excuse me, but)”

A) 十<sup>じゅうじ</sup>時の<sup>きしや</sup>汽車でしたね。そろそろ<sup>で</sup>出かける<sup>じかん</sup>時間です<sup>けれども</sup>。

Juu-ji no kisha deshita ne. Soro-soro dekakeru jikan c. desu  
keredomo .

Your train is at ten, right? (Excuse me, but) I think it's about time to leave.

B) ぼつぼつ<sup>こうぎ</sup>講義が<sup>はじ</sup>始まります<sup>けれども</sup>。

Botsu-botsu koogi ga v. hajimari-masu keredomo .

(Excuse me, but) the lecture should be starting pretty soon.

3. A conjunction which is different from the usage of the above particle “keredomo けれども.” Placed after a complete sentence:

- 1) Introduces another statement that conflicts with it.

English approximation: “however”

- A) <sup>にほんご</sup>日本語は<sup>むずか</sup>しい。けれども、<sup>いっしょうけんめいべんきよう</sup>一生懸命勉強すれば、<sup>かなら</sup>必ずわかるようになる。

Nihon - go wa muzukashii. Keredomo, issahoo-kenmee benkyoo-sure ba, kanarazu waku yoo ni naru.

Japanese is difficult. However, if you study hard, you will definitely be able to understand it.

- B) <sup>ねこ</sup>猫は、<sup>たし</sup>確かに<sup>かわい</sup>可愛らしい<sup>どうぶつ</sup>動物です。けれども、<sup>わたし</sup>私はアレルギーですから、<sup>か</sup>飼えません。

Neko wa, tashika ni kawairashii doobutsu desu. Keredomo, watashi wa arerugii desu kara, kae-masen.

Cats are cute animals, to be sure. However, I'm allergic, so I can't keep one.

- 2) Expresses agreement with the first sentence, then offers another related alternative.

English approximation: "however" "yet"

- A) <sup>なつやす</sup>夏休みには、<sup>やま</sup>山に行くのもいい。けれども、<sup>うみ</sup>海もまたいいね。

Natsu-yasumi ni wa, yama ni iku no mo ii. Keredomo, umi mo mata ii ne.

It's nice to go to the mountains during summer break. However, it would be nice to go to the beach, too.

## KIRI きり

1. Establishes a limit for a topic.
- 1) In referring to quantity:

English approximation: “only” “just”

- A) 二人<sup>ふたり</sup> きり でどこかへ行<sup>い</sup>ってしまいたい。

n. Futari kiri de dokoka e itte-shimai-tai.

I want to go away somewhere, just the two of us.

- B) わたしはヨーロッパには、一度<sup>いちど</sup>行<sup>い</sup>った きり です。

Watashi wa yooroppa ni wa, ichido v. itta kiri desu.

I have been to Europe only once (so far).

- 2) In referring to a state or condition, shows that it has been unchanged.

English approximation: “continuously only doing ...”

- A) 年老<sup>としお</sup>いた父<sup>ちち</sup>は、寝<sup>ね</sup>た きり になった。

Toshi oita chichi wa, v. neta kiri ni natta.

My aged father became bed-ridden. (literally: My aged father has become confined to continuously lying down.)

- B) 座<sup>すわ</sup>りっ きり で仕事<sup>しごと</sup>を続<sup>つづ</sup>けたので、肩<sup>かた</sup>がこった。

v. Suwari-k kiri de shigoto o tsuzuketa node, kata ga kotta.

Since I have been working sitting down continuously, my shoulders have gotten tense.

- 3) Often followed later in the sentence by a negative, shows that there is a limit that has not yet been surpassed.

English approximation: “after doing ..., (not once done ...)”

- A) 彼<sup>かれ</sup>は一度<sup>いちど</sup>電話<sup>でんわ</sup>をかけてきた きり、行<sup>ゆく</sup>方<sup>え</sup>がわかりません。

Kare wa ichi-do denwa o kakete v. kita kiri, yukue ga wakari-masen.

He called just once, and after that, (I) don't know where he went.

- B) 彼女<sup>かのじょ</sup>とは、去年<sup>きょねん</sup>会<sup>あ</sup>った きり、手紙<sup>てがみ</sup>も出<sup>だ</sup>していない。



Kanojo to wa, kyonen v. atta kiri, tegami mo dashite i-nai.

As for her, after I saw her last year, I haven't even sent her (a single) letter.

2. In the pattern “marukkiri まるっきり,” followed by a negative or negative situation.

English approximation: “at all”

A) 僕は、お酒はまるっきり駄目だ。

Boku wa, osake wa marukkiri dame da.

I can't drink at all.

B) わたしは、まるっきり泳げないんです。

Watashi wa, marukkiri oyoge nai-n desu.

I can't swim at all.

## KOSOこそ

1. Emphasizes what is preceded.

English approximation: “(indeed)”

A) あの山こそ、たくさんの登山者が命を落とした山だ。

Ano n. yama koso, takusan no tozan-sha ga inochi o otoshita yama da.

That mountain is (indeed) one on which many mountain climbers have lost their lives.

B) 来年こそ日本へ行ってみよう。

n. Rainen koso nihon e itte mi yoo.

Next year, (finally, indeed), let's go to Japan.

2. Often in the "... kara koso 〜からこそ" or "... ba koso 〜ばこそ" pattern, emphasizes a reason for an action.

English approximation: "(precisely) because"

- A) こうなることがわかっていたから こそ、わたしは賛成<sup>さんせい</sup>しなかったのです。

Koo naru koto ga wakatte ita p. kara koso, watashi wa sansee shinakatta no desu.

It's precisely because I knew things were going to work out this way that I didn't agree (before).

- B) あなたのことを考えれば こそ、決断<sup>けつだん</sup>を思いとどまったのよ。

Anata no koto o kangaere p. ba koso, ketsudan o omoi-todomatta no yo.

It's precisely because I thought about you that I stopped short of making a decision.

3. In the pattern "koso sureこそすれ," shows that the statement that precedes it is true or acceptable, but another opinion or additional comments are to follow.

English approximation: "do (something), but ..."

- A) あの人は、ひとを褒め<sup>ほ</sup> こそすれ、けなしたことはない。

Ano hito wa, hito o home koso sure, kenashita koto wa nai.

That person does make encouraging remarks about others, but has never made pejorative ones.

4. In the pattern "sore koso それこそ," emphatic.

English approximation: "that (would ...) ..."

- A) テストの前<sup>まえ</sup>にインフルエンザにでもかかったら、それ こそ大変<sup>たいへん</sup>だ

よ。

Tesuto no mae ni infuruenza ni demo kakattara, sore koso taihen da yo.

If you were to catch the flu or something before your exam, that would be disastrous.

- B) そんなことを彼女に言おうものなら、それ こそ ただでは済まないよ。

Son-na koto o kanojo ni ioo mono nara, sore koso tada de wa suma-nai yo.

If you were to say something like that to her, that would get you into trouble.

## KOTO こと

Women's language (except No. 6).

1. Serves to soften the impact of an opinion that is expressed. Not translatable.

- A) そんなにいつまでもしょげているなんて、あなたらしくない こと よ。

Son-na ni itsu made mo shogete-iru nante, anata adj. rashiku-nai koto yo.

It's not like you to be so down for so long.

- B) これだけ言ってもまだわからないのなら、もう知らない こと よ。

Kore dake itte mo mada wakara-nai no nara, moo v. shira-nai koto yo.

If you still don't understand after all I've said, then I just give up.

2. Expresses a mild surprise or a positive impression. Not translatable.

A) おや、珍しい鳥がいる こと。

Oya, mezurashii tori ga v. iru koto.

Look, there's a rare bird!

B) まあ、すてきな絵だ こと ねえ。

Maa, suteki na e e. da koto nee.

My goodness, what a wonderful painting!

3. Placed at the end of a sentence, accompanies a casual question. Not translatable.

A) これからおじゃましてもいい こと ?

Kore kara ojama-shite mo adj. ii koto ?

Would it be all right to come over now?

B) 風邪はもうすっかりよくなった こと ?

Kaze wa moo sukkari v. yokunatta koto ?

Are you completely over your cold?

4. Makes a rhetorical question that is exclamatory.

English approximation: "isn't it ..."

A) <sup>しんこんりょこう</sup>新婚旅行はヨーロッパですって? すてきだ こと。

Shinkon-ryokoo wa yooroppa desu-tte? Suteki e. da koto.

I've heard that (your) honeymoon will be in Europe. Isn't that wonderful!

B) <sup>かのじょ</sup>彼女の会社、<sup>かいしゃ</sup>年休五週間ですって。うらやましい こと。

Kanojo no kaisha, nenkyuu go-shuukan desu-tte. adj. urayama-shii koto.

Her company has five weeks vacation per year, I hear. Isn't it enviable!

5. Expresses a casual suggestion for action, following a negative form of a verb.

English approximation: "how about ...?" "why don't we ...?"

- A) これから映画にでも行きません こと ?

Kore kara eega ni demo v. iki-masen koto ?

How about going to a movie now?

- B) 遅くなったから、タクシーでも拾わない こと ?

Osoku natta kara, takushii demo v. hirowa-nai koto ?

It's gotten late, how about catching a taxi?

6. Transforms a statement into a strict command. Not translatable.

- A) 期日に遅れずレポートを提出する こと。

Kijitsu ni okurezu repooto o v. teeshutsu-suru koto .

Hand in the report without missing the deadline.

- B) 借った金は必ず返す こと。

Karita kane wa kanarazu v. kaesu koto .

Make sure (you) pay back the money (you) borrow.

## KURAI (GURAI) くらい(ぐらい)

1. Indicates that a given quantity is approximate.

English approximation: "about" "approximately"

- A) もう一週間 くらい で花が咲くでしょう。

Moo n. is-shuukan kurai de hana ga saku deshoo.

The flowers will probably bloom in about a week.

- B) 水をグラスに半分<sup>はんぶん</sup> くらい ください。

Mizu o gurasu ni n. hanbun gurai kudasai.

Please give me about half a glass of water.

2. Belittles something, in showing that it is simple or elementary.

English approximation: (something like)

- A) 簡単な料理<sup>かんたん りょうり</sup> くらい わたしだって出来るわ。

Kantan na n. ryoori kurai watashi datte dekiru wa.

Even I can cook (something like) a simple meal.

- B) 洗濯<sup>せんたく</sup> くらい 自分でしなさい。

n. Sentaku kurai jibun de shinasai.

Do (something like) your laundry yourself.

3. In citing one situation, indicates its extent.

English approximation: “to the extent that ...”

- A) 空一面真っ赤<sup>そらいちめん ま か</sup>になる くらい の、見事な夕焼け<sup>みごと ゆうや</sup>でした。

Sora ichimen makka ni v. naru kurai no, migotona yuuyake deshita.

The sunset was splendid, to the extent that the whole sky turned crimson.

- B) 主人はこんなに遅くまで働<sup>おそ</sup>いている くらい だから、よほど仕事<sup>しごと</sup>が忙<sup>いそ</sup>しいらしい。

Shujin wa kon-na ni osoku made v. hataraitte-iru kurai dakara, yohodo shigoto ga isogashii rashii.

Since it's to the extent that my husband is working this late, he must be quite busy at work.

4. Following a noun, a nominal, or a pronoun, establishes it as a basis for comparison. Not translatable.

- A) 地震<sup>じしん</sup> くらい 怖い<sup>こわ</sup>ものはない。

n. Jishin kurai kowai mono wa nai.

There's nothing more scary than an earthquake.

- B) お父さん<sup>とう</sup> くらい 背<sup>せ</sup>が高<sup>たか</sup>かったらいいのになあ。

n. Otoosan kurai se ga taka-kattara ii no ni naa.

I wish I were as tall as my father.

5. Indicates that what precedes it is something undesirable or unlikely.

English approximation: "rather than doing ..."

- A) そんなまずいものを食べる<sup>た</sup> くらい なら、何も<sup>なに</sup>食べない<sup>た</sup>ほうがましだ。

Son-na mazui mono o v. taberu kurai nara, nani mo tabe-nai  
hoo ga mashi da.

Rather than eating something that gross, I prefer not to eat anything at all.

- B) 期日<sup>きじつ</sup>に遅れる<sup>おく</sup> くらい なら、徹夜<sup>てつや</sup>をして完成<sup>かんせい</sup>させたほうがしました。

Kijitsu ni v. okureru kurai nara, tetsuya o shite kansee-saseta  
hoo ga mashi da.

Rather than being late for the deadline, (I) prefer to finish it by staying up all night.

## KUSE-NI くせ-に Combination particle

A combination of the noun "kuse くせ (habit)" and the particle "ni に."

1. As a conjunctive particle, indicating that the actual situation is the reverse of the “norm” that is given in the preceding clause. Implies a criticism of that “norm.”

English approximation: “even though” “but”

- A) <sup>かれ だいがくせい</sup>彼は大学生の くせに、<sup>ははおや せんたく</sup>まだ母親に洗濯してもらっているんだって。

Kare wa daigakusee <sub>p.</sub> no kuse ni, mada hahaoya ni sentaku shite-moratte-iru-n datte.

Even though he's a college student, he still has his mother do his laundry.

- B) <sup>ねぼう</sup>いつも寝坊する くせに、<sup>きょう</sup>今日はずいぶん<sup>はや</sup>早く<sup>お</sup>起きたね。

Itsumo <sub>v.</sub> neboo-suru kuse ni, kyoo wa zuibun hayaku okita ne.

(You) usually get up late, but you got up so early today.

2. At the end of a sentence or phrase, expresses a slight resentment.

English approximation: Not readily translatable, the implication is “(you) did ..., remember?” said in a slightly resentful tone of voice.

- A) ミルクまた<sup>のこ</sup>残したの。<sup>こども とき</sup>子供の時はあんなに<sup>す</sup>好きだった くせに。

Miruku mata nokoshita no. Kodomo no toki wa an-na ni suki <sub>c.</sub> datta kuse ni.

You didn't finish your milk again? You liked it so much when you were a child.

- B) やめなさい、そんなにたくさん<sup>た</sup>食べるのは。この間も<sup>あいだ</sup>おなかをこわした くせに。

Yamenasai, son-na ni takusan taberu no wa. Kono aida mo



onaka o v. kowashita kuse ni.

Stop eating so much. You got an upset stomach the other day.

## MADE まで

### FUNDAMENTALS OF “MADE まで”

Generally, this particle establishes a temporal or spatial limit. Its most common meaning is “until,” or “up to a certain point.” Make sure you distinguish between this particle and the particle “made ni までに,” which means “by.”

1. Indicates a limit or destination. Often in the pattern “... kara ... made ~から～まで.”

1) Temporal limits.

English approximation: “to” “till” “until”

A) わたしは九時から五時 まで 仕事をします。

Watashi wa ku-ji kara n. go-ji made  
shigoto o shi-masu.

I work from nine to five.

B) 彼女は朝から晩 まで スケートの練習をした。

Kanojo wa asa kara n. ban made sukeeto no renshuu o shita.

She practiced skating from morning till night.

C) 次のバス まで 三十分もある。

Tsugi no n. basu made sanjup-pun mo aru.

We have to wait for another thirty minutes  
until the next bus.



- D) 父は百歳<sup>ちち ひゃくさい</sup>まで<sup>い</sup>生きた。

Chichi wa n. hyaku-sai made ikita.

My father lived to be a hundred years old.



- E) 僕は九歳<sup>ぼく きゅうさい</sup>まで<sup>そだ</sup>ローマで育った。

Boku wa n. kyuu-sai made rooma de sodatta.

I was raised in Rome until I was nine years old.

- F) ストライキが解決<sup>かいけつ</sup>するまで<sup>でんしゃ うご</sup>電車は動かない。

Sutoraiki ga v. kaiketsu-suru made densha wa ugoka-nai.

There will be no train service until the strike is over.

- G) 今<sup>いま</sup>まで<sup>なに</sup>何をしていたの？

n. ima made nani o shite ita no?

What have you been doing until now?

## 2) Spatial limits.

English approximation: “to” “as far as”

- A) 私は、うちから学校<sup>わたし がっこう</sup>まで<sup>じ でんしゃ かよ</sup>自転車<sup>じ</sup>で通っています。

Watashi wa, uchi kara n. gakkoo made jitensha de kayotte i-masu.

I commute from my house to school by bicycle.



- B) この汽車<sup>きしや</sup>は、青森<sup>あおもり</sup>まで<sup>い</sup>行きます。

Kono kisha wa, n. aomori made iki-masu.

This train will go to Aomori.

- C) 中間テストの範囲は一課から四課までです。

Chuukan-tesuto no han-i wa ik-ka kara n. yon-ka made desu.

The mid term exam will cover lessons one to four.

- D) どこまでいらっしゃいますか？

n. Doko made irasshaimasu ka?

Where are you going? (literally: To which place are you going?)

- E) 奈良までの切符を二枚ください。

n. Nara made no kippu o ni-mai kudasai.

Two tickets to Nara, please.



### 3) Limits of quantity, range, or scope.

English approximation: “up to” “within”

- A) 結婚式の費用は百万円までにしておこう。

Kekkon-shiki no hiyoo wa n. hyaku-man en made ni shite-okoo.

Let's keep the budget for our wedding within one million yen.

- B) ミスサクラ・コンテストの参加者を募集します。年齢は二十五歳までです。

Misu sakura kontesuto no sanku-sha o boshuu shi-masu.

Nenree wa n. nijuu-go sai made desu.

We are looking for contestants for the Miss Sakura pageant. You must be under twenty-five years old. (literally: As for the age (limit), it's up to twenty-five.)

- C) 本の貸し出しは一回三冊までです。

Hon no kashi-dashi wa ik-kai n. san-satsu made desu.

You may borrow up to three books at a time.

2. Shows the extent to which a situation or action can/has already reach(ed).

English approximation: “until” “to” “as far as” “to the extent of”

- A) <sup>こうずい みず ゆか うえ</sup>洪水で水が床の上 まで <sup>き</sup>来た。

Koozui de mizu ga ph. yuka no ue made kita.

The water from the flood reached (as far as) above floor level.

- B) <sup>はん さい ご ひとつぶ</sup>ご飯は最後の一粒 まで <sup>た</sup>食べなさい。

Gohan wa ph. saigo no hito-tsubu made tabenasai.

Eat even the last grain of rice in your bowl.

- C) <sup>しょうがくきん</sup>奨学金がもらえるようになる まで <sup>がんば</sup>頑張ろう。

cl. Shoogakukin ga moraeru yoo ni naru made ganbaroo.

I'll work hard until I qualify for a scholarship.

- D) <sup>もくてち み</sup>目的地が見つからなくて、わたしは足が棒のようになる まで <sup>さが</sup>探してある歩いた。

Mokuteki-chi ga mitsukara-nakute, watashi wa cl. ashi ga boo no yoo ni naru made sagashite aruita.

Unable to find my destination, I walked in search of it until I felt as if my legs were about to fall off.

3. Indicates that a situation has reached the extent that even an extreme example is now applicable.

English approximation: “even”

- A) <sup>ともだち</sup>友達に まで <sup>みはな</sup>見放されるようじゃ、おしまいだ。

Tomodachi p. ni made mihana-sareru yoo ja, oshimai da.

If even your friends desert you, that's the end.

- B) 坊主憎けりや袈裟けさまでにく憎い。(Proverb)

Boozu nikukerya <sub>n.</sub> kesa made nikui.

When (you) hate the monk, (you) even hate his surplice.

4. Indicates that an action is/was done by chance.

English approximation: “just” “merely”

- A) 今朝早起したのは、たまたま小鳥の鳴き声で目が覚めたまでだよ。

Kesa hayaoki shita no wa, tamatama kotori no nakigoe de me  
ga <sub>v.</sub> sameta made da yo.

I got up early this morning merely because I happened to have been  
woken up by the singing of birds.

- B) わたしが会社で出世できたのは、運がよかったまでのことです。

Watashi ga kaisha de shusse dekita no wa, un ga <sub>adj.</sub> yokatta  
made no koto desu.

It is just luck that I was able to climb up the corporate ladder.

- C) 今度はいっちらして下さるかと思って…。ちょっとお電話した  
までよ。

Kondo wa itsu irashite kudasaru ka to omotte .... Chotto  
<sub>v.</sub> odenwa-shita made yo.

I was wondering when you'd be coming over again ... I just called  
(for that), that's all.

- D) そんなにおっしゃらないでください。わたしはただあた前まえの事をし  
たまでです。

Son-na ni osshara-nai de kudasai. Watashi wa tada atarimae no

koto o v. shita made desu.

Please don't thank me so much. I just did what I should have done.

## MADE-MO まで-も Combination particle

A combination of the particles “made まで” and “mo も.”

1. Followed by a negation later in the sentence or clause, indicates that a situation or action preceding it is not necessary, and that it is the obvious or norm.

English approximation: “it's not necessary to ...”

- A) いまさら<sup>もう あ</sup>申し上げる までも ありませんが、私は来月<sup>わたくし らいげつ</sup>定年<sup>ていねん</sup>退職<sup>たいしよく</sup>いたします。

Imasara v. mooshi-ageru made mo ari-masen ga, watakushi wa raigetsu teenen-taishoku itashi-masu.

(I know that) it's not necessary to say it at this point (i.e. because everyone knows about it by now), but I will be retiring next month.

- B) 手紙<sup>てがみ</sup>に書く<sup>か</sup> までも ないことですから、電話<sup>でんわ</sup>でお伝え<sup>つた</sup>いたします。

Tegami ni v. kaku made mo nai koto desu kara, denwa de otsutae itashi-masu.

Since it's not necessary to write a letter, I'll (just) tell you over the phone.

2. As a conjunction, shows that although an extreme situation may not be true or possible, a lesser one is desirable or necessary.

English approximation: “even though (it's not to the extent that) ...”

- A) はっきりと覚えていない<sup>おぼ</sup> までも、少し<sup>すこ</sup>は悪い<sup>おも</sup>出せる<sup>だ</sup>でしょう？

Hakkiri to v. oboete-i-nai made mo, sukoshi wa omoi-daseru deshoo?

Even though you might not remember it very clearly, can't you remember just a little bit of it?

B) <sup>にゅういん</sup>入院しない までも、<sup>じゅうぶん きゅうよう ひつよう</sup>充分な休養が必要です。

v. Nyuuin-shi-nai made mo, juubun na kyuuyoo ga hitsuyoo desu.

Even though it's not necessary for (you) to be hospitalized, (you) need plenty of rest.

## MADE-NI まで-に Combination particle

A combination of the particles “made まで” and “ni に.”

1. Indicates that a situation or action is not to be taken as more than it is; has a belittling function, often in a gesture of humbling oneself.

English approximation: “just for/to ...”

A) わたし<sup>たち</sup>達、今日<sup>きょう</sup>お宅<sup>たく</sup>の隣<sup>となり</sup>に越<sup>こ</sup>してまいりましたので、ごあいさつ までに <sup>うかが</sup>お伺いしました。

Watashi-tachi, kyoo otaku no tonari ni koshite mairi-mashita node, n. goaisatsu made ni oukagai-shi-mashita.

Since we have moved in next door to you today, we're here just to introduce ourselves.

B) <sup>ごけっこん</sup>御結婚おめでとうございます。ほんのお祝<sup>いわい</sup>のしるし までに ささやかな<sup>しな おく</sup>品をお送りしました。

Gokekkon omedetoo gozaimasu. Hon no oiwai no n. shirushi

**made ni** sasayaka na shina o ookuri-shi-mashita.

Congratulations on your marriage. We have sent you this small token to express our congratulations.

2. Shows to what extent something has reached.

English approximation: “(up to)”

- A) 今期の利益は百億円**までに**達した。

Konki no riei wa n. hyaku-oku en **made ni** tasshita.

The profits this term reached (up to) ten billion yen.

- B) 彼女の名前は、世界の隅々**までに**知れわたった。

Kanojo no namae wa, sekai no n. sumi-zumi **made ni** shire-watatta.

Her name became known throughout the world. (i.e. Her fame reached (up to) the point where her name was known throughout the world.)

3. Sets a time limit.

English approximation: “before”

- A) 飛行機が出る**までに**は、まだ一時間ぐらいある。

Hikooki ga v. deru **made ni** wa, mada ichi-jikan gurai aru.

There's still about an hour before the plane leaves.

- B) この絵をかき上げる**までに**は、あと一カ月は必要です。

Kono e o v. kaki-ageru **made ni** wa, ato ikka-getsu wa hitsuyoo desu.

I need at least a month before I can finish this painting.



## MO も

### FUNDAMENTALS OF “MO も”

When this particle follows a noun, a nominal, or a particle, it usually indicates a similar quality between two things, which come before and after it. When “mo も” is preceded by an adjective or a verb, it indicates that more than one action occurs. Note that “mo も” is usually not used after the particles “wa は” and “ga が” or before the particle “o を,” since it replaces these particles. For example:

これ  は  バラです。

Kore  wa  bara desu.

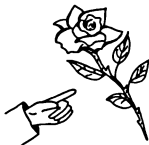
This is a rose



あれ  ~~は~~  も  バラです。

Are  ~~ha~~  mo  bara desu.

That is a rose, too.



みずの  
水野さん  が  来  ました。

Mizuno-san  ga  ki-mashita.

Ms. Mizuno has come.

ささき  
佐々木さん  ~~が~~  も  来  ました。

Sasaki-san  ~~ga~~  mo  ki-mashita.

Ms. Sasaki also came.

かのじょ  
彼女はリンゴ  を  食  べました。

Kanojo wa ringo  o  tabe-mashita.

She ate an apple.

かのじょ  
彼女はみかん  も  ~~を~~  食  べました。

Kanojo wa mikan  mo  ~~o~~  tabe-mashita.

She also ate an orange.

Furthermore, below are the differences in usage of particles with similar functions, “to と” and “ya や,” and “mo も.”

A) Simple listing of nouns.

リンゴ  と みかん  と バナナ

ringo  to mikan  to banana

apples, oranges and bananas.



B) Simple listing of nouns.

リンゴ  や みかん  や バナナ

ringo  ya mikan  ya banana

apples, oranges, bananas and the like.

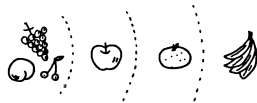


C) Additive. “also” “on top of”

リンゴ  も みかん  も バナナ  も

ringo  mo mikan  mo banana  mo

also apples, oranges and bananas.



1. Indicates that two subjects are the same or the same kind.

English approximation: “also” “too” “(not) ..., either”

A) あなたは<sup>がくせい</sup>学生です。わたし  <sup>がくせい</sup>学生です。

Anata wa gakusee desu. n. Watashi  gakusee desu.

You are a student. I’m a student, too.

B) これは<sup>すいか</sup>すいかで、あれ  <sup>すいか</sup>すいかです。

Kore wa suika de, n. are  suika desu.

This is a watermelon, and that is a watermelon, too.



- C) わたしは肉を食べました。わたしは魚<sup>さかな</sup>も<sup>た</sup>食べました。

Watashi wa niku o tabe-mashita. Watashi wa n. sakana mo tabe-mashita.

I ate meat. I ate fish, too.



- D) わたしはコーヒーを飲みません。わたしはコーラ<sup>の</sup>も<sup>の</sup>飲みません。

Watashi wa koohii o nomi-masen. Watashi wa n. koora mo nomi-masen.

I don't drink coffee. I don't drink soda, either.

- E) 僕はピクニックに行きませんでした。彼女<sup>かのじょ</sup>も<sup>の</sup>ピクニックに行きませんでした。

Boku wa pikunikku ni iki-masen deshita. n. Kanojo mo pikunikku ni iki-masen deshita.

I didn't go on the picnic. She didn't go on the picnic, either.

2. In the pattern "... mo ... mo ～も～も," lists additively two or more things in a similar category.

English approximation: "too" "also" "both" "as well as" "either ... or"

- A) あなた<sup>おな</sup>も<sup>がっこう</sup>わたし<sup>がくせい</sup>も<sup>の</sup>、同じ学校の学生です。

n. Anata mo n. watashi mo onaji gakkoo no gakusee desu.

Both you and I are students at the same school.

- B) わたしはワイン<sup>の</sup>も<sup>の</sup>ビール<sup>の</sup>も<sup>の</sup>飲みます。

Watashi wa n. wain mo n. biiru mo nomi-masu.

I drink both wine and beer.

- C) その白<sup>しろ</sup>いの<sup>も</sup>青<sup>あお</sup>いの<sup>も</sup>一つずつください。

Sono shiroi <sub>n.</sub> no mo aoi <sub>n.</sub> no mo hitotsu zutsu kudasai.

I want to have one each of that white one and that blue one.

- D) あの子はお父さんに も お母さんに も 死なれた。

Ano ko wa otoosan <sub>p.</sub> ni mo okaasan <sub>p.</sub> ni mo shinareta.

That child has lost his father as well as his mother.

- E) 僕は勉強するの も 働くの も 嫌いだ。

Boku wa benkyoo-suru <sub>n.</sub> no mo hataraku <sub>n.</sub> no mo kirai da.

I don't like to study or to work.

- F) 彼女は美しく も あるし優しく も ある。

Kanojo wa <sub>adj.</sub> utsukushiku mo arushi <sub>adj.</sub> yasashiku mo aru.

She is beautiful as well as kind.

3. In the pattern "... mo ... mo ～も～も," often in the forms "... de mo ～でも" or "... te mo ～ても," indicates that (1) there is barely any difference between the things/actions, and that (2) another action is done regardless of the given two conditions/actions.

English approximation: "doesn't make much difference" "doesn't matter"

"regardless of"

- A) 献金は百円で も 二百円で も 結構です。

Kenkin wa hyaku en <sub>p.</sub> de mo ni-hyaku en <sub>p.</sub> de mo kekkoo desu.

Any amount of contribution would be appreciated; it doesn't matter if it's one hundred or two hundred yen.

- B) 日本語で書いて も 英語で書いて も 構いません。

Nihon-go de <sub>v.</sub> kaite mo eego de <sub>v.</sub> kaite mo kamai-masen.

It doesn't matter whether you write in Japanese or in English.

4. Indicates an addition to something already present.

English approximation: “in addition” “as well as”

- A) お父さん、僕<sup>ぼく</sup>も<sup>えいが</sup>映画<sup>つ</sup>に連れて行ってよ。

Otoosan, n. boku mo eega ni tsurete-itte yo.

Dad, could you take me to the movie, too?

- B) お母さん、このケーキ<sup>かあ</sup>も<sup>た</sup>食べていい？

Okaasan, kono n. keeki mo tabete ii?

Mom, can I eat this cake, too?

5. Emphasizes quantity, distance or frequency.

English approximation: “as many/much as” “no fewer/less than” “as long a time as” “as far (a distance) as”

- A) わたしはもう十年<sup>じゅうねん</sup>も<sup>にほん</sup>日本<sup>かえ</sup>に帰っていません。

Watashi wa moo n. juu-nen mo nihon ni kaette i-masen.

I haven't gone back to Japan for (as long a time as) ten years.

- B) 彼は八人<sup>かれ はちにん</sup>も<sup>きょうだい</sup>兄弟<sup>だ</sup>がある。

Kare wa n. hachi-nin mo kyoodai ga aru.

He has eight brothers!

- C) あの犬は君の背丈<sup>いぬ きみ せたい</sup>ほど<sup>も</sup>ある。

Ano inu wa kimi no setake n. hodo mo aru.

That dog is as tall as you.

- D) このつばは十万円<sup>じゅうまんえん</sup>も<sup>も</sup>するんだって。

Kono tsubo wa n. juu-man en mo suru-n datte.

They say that this vase costs as much as one hundred thousand yen.

6. Indicates that a quantity/number is approximate.

English approximation: “around” “about”

- A) この仕事はもう三日  あれば出来るでしょう。

Kono shigoto wa moo n. mik-ka  are ba dekiru deshoo.

This work should be done in about three more days.

- B) 三百万円  あればいい車が買えますよ。

n. San-byaku-man en  are ba ii kuruma ga kae-masu yo.

If you have around three million yen, you can buy a nice car.

7. Used in a negative sentence, emphasizes the lack of something. If it follows an interrogative pronoun, or nouns such as once, one day, etc., it indicates total negation of its existence.

English approximation: “not any” “no ...” “nothing”

- A) だれ  居ませんか？

n. Dare  i-masen ka?

Is there no one (there)?

- B) 今日は店はどこ  閉まっている。

Kyoo wa mise wa n. doko  shimatte-iru.

No stores are open today. (literally: Today, stores everywhere are closed.)

- D) わたしは一度  スキーをしたことはありません。

Watashi wa n. ichi-do  sukii o shita koto ga ari-masen.

I've never skied. (literally: I have never skied even once.)

- E) 大したごちそう  ございませんが、どうぞ召し上ってください。

Taishita n. gochisoo  gozaimasen ga, doozo meshi-agatte kudasai.

Even though there's nothing special, please go ahead and eat.

8. Gives an additional, unexpected situation or condition.

English approximation: “even”

- A) 彼はテニスの選手<sup>せんしゆ</sup> **も** <sup>かれ</sup>していたらしい。

Kare wa tenisu no <sup>n.</sup> senshu **mo** shite ita rashii.

I've heard that he was even a competitive tennis player once.  
(implying that he has other impressive qualities.)

- B) 熱<sup>ねつ</sup>が高いのに、妹<sup>いもうと</sup>は苦<sup>くる</sup>しいと **も** <sup>い</sup>言わないで、じっと寝<sup>ね</sup>ていました。

Netsu ga takai noni, imooto wa kurushii <sup>p.</sup> to **mo** iwa-nai de,  
jitto nete i-mashita.

Though she had a high fever, my sister was patiently lying in bed  
without even complaining.

9. Colloquial expression. In the forms “koo mo こうも,” “soo mo そうも,”  
“aa mo ああも” (meaning “kon-na ni こんなに” “son-na ni そんなに” “an-na ni あんなに”). Indicates the extent of a state/action.

English approximation: “this/that many” “this/that much”

- A) そう **も** <sup>な</sup>泣かれては、わたしも困<sup>こま</sup>るよ。

<sup>adv.</sup> Soo **mo** nakarete wa, watashi mo komaru yo.

You cry that much, then I'm at a loss

- B) 外国<sup>がいこく</sup>にいと、ああ **も** <sup>にほんしょく</sup>日本食<sup>こい</sup>が恋しくなるものだろうか。

Gaikoku ni iru to, <sup>adv.</sup> aa **mo** nihon-shoku ga koishiku naru mono  
daroo ka.

When one is in a foreign country, does one crave for Japanese food  
that much, I wonder.

## MONO もの

1. Placed at the end of a sentence:
- 1) Gives a reason, which precedes it. Often followed by “ne ね” or “na な,” which adds a slight exclamatory sense.

English approximation: “because”

- A) お嬢さんのピアノのお上手なこと！ 奥様もピアニストでいらっしゃる  
います もの ね。

Ojoosan no piano no ojoozu na koto! Okusama mo pianisuto  
de v. irasshai-masu mono ne.

How well your daughter plays the piano! It's because your wife is  
also a pianist.

- B) この浜辺懐かしいね。新婚旅行のときに来たところだ もの ね。

Kono hamabe natsukashii ne. Shinkon-ryokoo no toki ni kita  
tokoro c. da mono ne.

This beach brings back memories, doesn't it? It's because we came  
here on our honeymoon.

- 2) Following a certain given reason, expresses dissatisfaction, or desire.  
Colloquial, casual usage.

English approximation: “because”

- A) ねえ、お母さん、あのおもちゃ買ってよ。僕どうしても欲しいんだ  
もの。

Nee, okaasan, ano omocha katte yo. Boku dooshitemo hoshii-  
n c. da mono.

Mommy, could you buy me that toy... because I really really want it.



- B) <sup>こんばん き</sup> 今晚来てくださいますか？ わたしどうしてもお会いたいです  
もの。

Konban kite kudasai-masen ka? Watashi dooshitemo oai-shi-tai-n c. desu mono.

Could you come over tonight? Because I really want to see you.

2. As a conjunctive particle, follows a clause to transform it into a reason for something.

English approximation: “since” “..., so” or merely a comma.

- A) わたし<sup>せいじん</sup>成人になったんだもの、<sup>すこし</sup>少しぐらい<sup>さけの</sup>お酒飲んでもいいでしょう？

Watashi seejin ni natta-n c. da mono, sukoshi gurai osake nonde mo ii deshoo?

I've now of age, it's all right for me to have a little something to drink, isn't it?

- B) <sup>むすこ</sup>息子は<sup>えいご</sup>英語がまだよくわかりませんもの、<sup>ひとり</sup>一人で<sup>かいもの</sup>買物に行くのは<sup>む</sup>無理ですわ。

Musuko wa eego ga mada yoku v. wakari-masen mono, hitori de kaimono ni iku no wa muri desu wa.

Since my son doesn't understand English very well yet, it's not possible for him to go shopping by himself.

## MONO-DE(MON-DE) もの-で(もん-で) Combination particle

A combination of the noun “mono もの” and the copula “de で.” Indicates that the preceding clause is the reason for the action in the following

clause. In colloquial usage, it often takes the form “mon de もんで.”

English approximation: “because” or simply comma.

- A) あんまりうれしかった **もんで**、ほかのこと全部<sup>ぜんぶ</sup>忘れちゃった。

Anmari <sup>adj.</sup> ureshikatta **mon de**, hoka no koto zenbu wasure-chatta.

I was so happy, I just forgot about everything else!

- B) そのニュースを今<sup>いま</sup>聞いた **もので**、びっくりしてお電話<sup>でんわ</sup>をおかけしているところです。

Sono nyuusu o ima <sup>v.</sup> kiita **mono de**, bikkuri-shite odenwa o okake-shite-iru tokoro desu.

Because I just heard the news, I was stunned and I’m calling you now.

## MONOKA(MONKA) ものか(もんか)

Placed at the end of a sentence, makes an exclamatory, emphatic negation. Often takes the pattern of “mono desu ka ものですか。” In colloquial usage, it takes the forms “monka もんか” or “mon desu ka もんですか。” Not translatable.

- A) 僕の気持ち<sup>ぼく きもち</sup>が君<sup>きみ</sup>にわかってたまる **ものか**。

Boku no kimochi ga kimi ni wakatte <sup>v.</sup> tamaru **monoka**.

How could you ever know how I’m feeling!

- B) 彼の<sup>かれ</sup>ほうが悪い<sup>わる</sup>んですもの。わたし絶対<sup>ぜったい</sup>に謝<sup>あやま</sup>る **もんですか**。

Kare no hoo ga warui-n desu mono. Watashi zettai ni <sup>v.</sup> ayamaru **mon desu ka**.

He's the one who's at fault. I'll never apologize (to him)!

## MONONARA(MON-NARA) ものなら(もん-なら)

“Mon-nara もんなら” in colloquial expression.

1. Following a clause stating a conjecture or a will, indicates that the result of such actions may be undesirable.

English approximation: “should there be ...”

- A) タバコの吸殻を捨ててはいけないよ。火事<sup>かじ</sup>にでもなろう ものなら<sup>ない</sup>  
<sup>へん</sup>変だから。

Tabako no suigara o sutete wa ike-nai yo. Kaji ni demo v. naroo  
mononara taihen da kara.

Don't throw your cigarette butts around. Should there be a fire, it would be disastrous.

- B) 早く寝<sup>ね</sup>なさいよ。あしたの朝<sup>あさ</sup>、寝坊<sup>ねぼう</sup>しよう ものなら、遠足<sup>えんそく</sup>にいけなくなるよ。

Hayaku nenasai yo. Ashita no asa, neboo v. shiyoo  
mononara, ensoku ni ike-naku naru yo.

Go to bed early. Should you oversleep tomorrow morning, you won't be able to go on your school trip.

2. Proposes a hypothetical situation, with an implication that the speaker does not care even if such a situation arise. Has a critical, resentful tone.

English approximation: “if ... then”

- A) あなたがどんなに貧乏<sup>びんぼう</sup>になってもいい ものなら、何も<sup>なに</sup>も言<sup>い</sup>いませんよ。

Anata ga don-na ni binboo ni natte mo adj. ii mononara, nani

mo ii-masen yo.

If it's all right with you no matter how poor you become, then I won't say anything.

- B) そんなのでいい ものなら、どこにでも売っていますよ。

Son-na no de adj. ii mononara, doko ni demo utte i-masu yo.

If something like that is all right, then they should have it in any store.

3. After a possibility, dares the party addressed to perform it. A rather antagonistic tone (though possibly playfully so).

English approximation: "if (you think) you can ..."

- A) このうなぎ、つかめる ものなら、つかんでごらん。

Kono unagi, v. tsukameru mononara, tsukande goran.

If (you think) you can grab this eel, go right ahead and try grabbing (it).

- B) 飛べる ものなら 飛んでごらんよ。

v. Toberu mononara tonde goran yo.

If (you think) you can fly, go ahead and try flying.

## MONONO ものの

Establishes a situation, then shows that another situation has arisen that conflicts with it.

English approximation: "even though" "although"

- A) いつもより早くうちを出た ものの、バスがなかなか来なくて、遅刻してしまった。

Itsumo yori hayaku uchi o v. deta monono, basu ga naka-naka ko-naku te, chikoku-shite shimatta.

Although I had left my house earlier than usual, the bus didn't come for quite a while, and I was late.

- B) <sup>くるま</sup>車は<sup>か</sup>買ったものの、まだ<sup>こわ</sup>恐くてハイウェイは<sup>はし</sup>走れない。

Kuru<sup>ma</sup> wa v. katta monono, mada kowaku te haiuee wa hashire-nai.

Even though (I) have bought a car, I can't drive on the highway because I'm still afraid.

- C) <sup>ま</sup>間に<sup>あ</sup>合ったからいいようなものの、うちを<sup>で</sup>出るのが、もう<sup>すこ</sup>少し<sup>おそ</sup>遅かったら、<sup>ひこうき</sup>飛行機に<sup>の</sup>乗り<sup>おく</sup>遅れるところだったよ。

Maniatta kara ii adj. yoon monono, uchi o deru no ga moo sukoshi osokattara, hikooki ni nori-okureru tokoro datta yo.

Though it's all right now because we made it on time, if we had left the house a little bit later, we would've missed our plane.

- D) <sup>やす</sup>安いからとはいいうものの、たくさん<sup>か</sup>買うとかえって<sup>そん</sup>損をすることがある。

Yasui kara to wa v. yuu monono, takusan kau to kaette son o suru koto ga aru.

Even though it's cheap, there are times when buying too much of it can make you lose out in the end.

## MONO-O もの-を

1. Expresses dissatisfaction over the current condition, implying that

there was an alternative which would have produced better results.

English approximation: “although”

- A) <sup>はや やす</sup>早く休めばよかった ものを、<sup>むり はたら</sup>無理をして働いたので、<sup>びょうき</sup>病気になってしまった。

Hayaku yasume ba <sup>adj.</sup>yokatta mono-o, muri o shite hataraita node, byooki ni natte shimatta.

Although I would have been fine if I had taken a rest earlier, because I pushed myself unreasonably to work, I became ill.

2. An exclamatory particle. Placed at the end of a sentence, indicates dissatisfaction or regret.

English approximation: “if only ...”

- A) <sup>あめ</sup>こんなに雨でずぶぬれになって！ <sup>で まえ てん き よほう き</sup>出かける前に天気予報を聞いてくればよかった ものを。

Kon-na ni ame de zubunure ni natte! Dekakeru mae ni tenki-yohoo o kiite kure ba <sup>adj.</sup>yokatta mono-o.

You got rained on and are soaking wet! If only you had listened to the weather forecast before you left, you wouldn't have (gotten so wet).

- B) <sup>そと ゆうしょく</sup>外で夕食すませたの？ <sup>ま</sup>待っていたのに。 <sup>ひとこと でんわ</sup>一言電話してくれればいい ものを。

Soto de yuushoku sumasete kita no? Matte ita noni. Hitokoto denwa shite kurereba <sup>adj. ii</sup> mono-o.

You ate dinner out? I was waiting for you. If only you had called me to tell me.

## NA(NAA) な(なあ)

“Na な” and “naa なあ” are used in almost the same way, but “naa なあ” has an even more emotional tone.

1. As an exclamatory particle, expresses emotion. Found in men’s language. Not translatable.

- A) 少し<sup>すこ</sup>会<sup>あ</sup>わないうちに大<sup>おお</sup>きくなった な(なあ)。

Sukoshi awa-nai uchi ni ookiku v. natta na(naa).

You’ve grown so much during the little time I haven’t seen you!

- B) 野菜<sup>やさい</sup>の値<sup>ね</sup>段<sup>だん</sup>が随<sup>ずい</sup>分<sup>ぶん</sup>上<sup>あ</sup>がった な(なあ)。

Yasai no nedan ga zuibun v. agatta na(naa).

How the price of vegetables has increased!

- C) ビール<sup>きん</sup>三<sup>さん</sup>ダースか、ずいぶんた<sup>の</sup>くさん飲<sup>の</sup>んだ な(なあ)。

Biiru san-daasu ka, zuibun takusan v. nonda na(naa).

Three dozen beers--you drank a lot!

2. Places a casual emphasis on a decision, suggestion or opinion. Not translatable.

- A) あしたも試験<sup>しけん</sup>だ。いやだ な(なあ)。

Ashita mo shiken da. Iya e. da na(naa).

I have an exam again tomorrow. What a pain!

- B) 僕<sup>ぼく</sup>は、そのうわさは本<sup>ほん</sup>当<sup>とう</sup>だと思<sup>おも</sup>う な。

Boku wa sono uwasa wa hontoo da to v. omou na.

I think that rumor is true.

3. Elicits a response from the party addressed, in agreement with the statement made. Usually seen in men’s language.

English approximation: "..., right?"

- A) お借りした本は、確かにお返ししました<sup>な</sup>。

Okari-shita hon wa, tashika ni v. okaeshi-shi-mashita <sup>na</sup>.

I definitely returned the book that I borrowed, right?

- B) 去年の春、京都でお目にかかりました<sup>な</sup>。

Kyonen no haru, kyooto de v. ome-ni-kakari-mashita <sup>na</sup>.

We met in Kyoto last spring, right?

4. Expresses a casual remark of wishful thinking.

English approximation: "I wish ..."

- A) 毎日忙しすぎる。少しのんびりしたい<sup>なあ</sup>。

Mainichi isogashi-sugiru. Sukoshi v. nonbirishi-tai <sup>naa</sup>.

I'm too busy every day. I wish I could relax a little bit.

- B) 南十字星が見えるといい<sup>な(なあ)</sup>。

Minami-juuji-see ga mieru to adj. ii <sup>na(naa)</sup>.

I hope I'll be able to see the Southern Cross.

5. Following phrases such as "... (te) kudasai ~ (て) ください" and "... nasai ~ なさい," asks the party addressed for a favor. Found in women's language. Not translatable.

- A) あした必ずお電話ください<sup>な</sup>。

Ashita kanarazu odenwa v. kudasai <sup>na</sup>.

Please be sure to give me a call tomorrow.

- B) もう十二時すぎですよ。早くおやすみなさい<sup>な</sup>。

Moo juuni-ji sugi desu yo. Hayaku v. oyasumi-nasai <sup>na</sup>.

It's past twelve already. You should go to bed soon.

6. Placed at the end of a phrase, sets a tone where the speaker is lecturing



to the addressee. Found in men's language. Not translatable.

- A) あの<sup>ないしょ</sup>な、このことは内緒だよ。

interj. Ano na, kono koto wa naisho da yo.

Listen, this is a secret, (ok)?

- B) ところで<sup>な</sup>、いいニュースがあるんだよ。

conj. Tokorode na, ii nyuusu ga aru-n da yo.

By the way, I have some good news.

7. Placed at the end of a sentence, transforms it into a negative imperative. Strongly forbids an action.

English approximation: "don't ..."

- A) いよいよマラソン大会の日だね。最後<sup>さいご</sup>までくじける<sup>な</sup>。

Iyo-iyo marason-taikai no hi da ne. Saigo made v. kujikeru na.

The big day of the marathon is finally here. Don't give up until the end!

- B) きのうの雪<sup>ゆき</sup>が氷<sup>こおり</sup>になったから危<sup>あぶ</sup>ないよ。転ぶ<sup>ころ</sup><sup>な</sup>。

Kinoo no yuki ga koori ni natta kara abunai yo. v. Korobu na.

Yesterday's snow has turned into ice, so it's dangerous. Don't fall.

8. In colloquial usage, indicates a command. Not translatable.

- A) さあ、早<sup>はや</sup>く見<sup>み</sup>せ<sup>な</sup>。

Saa, hayaku v. mise na.

Come on, show it (to me) already!

- B) とっとと<sup>ある</sup>歩き<sup>な</sup>。

Totto to v. aruki na.

Walk quickly!

## NADO (NANKA) など(なんか)

Colloquial form “nanka なんか.”

1. Used in listing examples from a category. Often in the pattern “... ya ... nado ～や～など”.

English approximation: “such as ... (and ... )”

- A) <sup>しょうがっこう</sup>小<sup>ちゅうがっこう</sup>学校や中<sup>など</sup>学校でインフルエンサがはやっています。

ph. Shoo-gakkoo ya chuu-gakkoo nado de infuruenza ga hayatte-imasu.

The flu is going around in (places such as) elementary schools and junior high schools.

- B) わたしは<sup>いそが</sup>忙しくて、<sup>せんたく</sup>洗濯や<sup>そうじ</sup>掃除<sup>など</sup>は<sup>あとまわ</sup>つい後回しにしていま  
す。

Watashi wa isogashiku te, ph. sentaku ya sooji nado wa tsui  
ato-mawashi ni shite shimai-masu.

I'm so busy, I tend to end up putting off things like laundry and house cleaning.

2. Belittles the preceding nominal or noun.

English approximation: “something (like) ...”

- A) あの人の話<sup>ひと はなし</sup><sup>など</sup><sup>しんよう</sup>信用できるもんですか。

Ano hito no n. hanashi nado shinyoo dekiru mo-n desu ka.

How could you trust something that person has said!

- B) だれがねたみ<sup>など</sup>するものですか。

Dare ga n. netami nado suru mono desu ka.

Who would ever be (something like) jealous!

- C) 勉強が忙しくて、買い物<sup>かもの</sup> **なんか** 行けないよ。

Benkyoo ga isogashiku te, n. kaimono **nanka** ike nai yo.

I'm so busy with my studies, I couldn't do something like go shopping.

- D) 暗くて、新聞<sup>しんぶん</sup> **なんか** 読めないわ。

Kuraku te, n. shinbun **nanka** yome-nai wa.

It's too dark, I can't read something like the newspaper.

3. Makes a sentence more indirect and vague by referring to a category rather than focusing on the specific thing mentioned.

English approximation: "like" "say"

- A) あの絵<sup>え</sup> **など**、なかなかよくかけているね。

Ano n. e **nado**, naka-naka yoku kakete-iru ne.

That painting, say, is done pretty well.

- B) 北海道<sup>ほっかいどう</sup> **など** はもう雪<sup>ゆき</sup>だってさ。

n. Hokkaidoo **nado** wa moo yuki datte sa.

They say it's already snowing in places like Hokkaido.

- C) この代数<sup>だいすう</sup>の問題<sup>もんだい</sup> **なんか**、簡単<sup>かんたん</sup>と<sup>と</sup>に解けるよ。

Kono daisuu no n. mondai **nanka**, kantan ni tokeru yo.

I can easily solve algebra problems like this.

- D) あそこの店<sup>みせ</sup> **なんか**、いいドレスがありそうよ。

Asoko no n. mise **nanka**, ii doresu ga ari soo yo.

I think there will be nice dresses in a store like that one.

4. Indicates that the statement preceding it is an approximation of a statement made previously on another occasion.

English approximation: "something like ..."

- A) 息子<sup>むすこ</sup>からの手紙<sup>てがみ</sup>に、日本<sup>にほん</sup>食<sup>しょく</sup>が恋<sup>こい</sup>しい **など**と書<sup>か</sup>いてあったわ。

Musuko kara no tegami ni, cl. nihon-shoku ga koishii **nado** to kaite atta wa.

In the letter from my son, (he) has written something like he missed Japanese food.

- B) もう決<sup>けつ</sup>して離<sup>はな</sup>れない **など**と言<sup>い</sup>っていたのに、半<sup>はん</sup>年<sup>とし</sup>したら別<sup>わか</sup>れてしま  
ったよ、あのカッパル。

cl. Moo kesshite hanare-nai **nado** to itte-ita noni, hantoshi shitara wakarete shimatta yo, ano kappuru.

Even though they had said something like they would never part, that couple broke up after half a year.

## NAGARA ながら

1. Indicates that the action described by the verb it follows is being carried out at the same time another action is taking place.

English approximation: “while doing ..., (also doing ...)”

- A) 彼はポテトチップス<sup>かれ</sup>を食<sup>た</sup>べ **ながら** テレビ<sup>み</sup>を見ている。

Kare wa poteto-chippusu o v. tabe **nagara** terebi o mite-iru.

He is eating potato chips while watching T.V.

- B) 僕は音楽<sup>ぼく おんがく</sup>を聞<sup>き</sup>き **ながら** ドライブ<sup>き</sup>をした。

Boku wa ongaku o v. kiki **nagara** doraibu o shita.

I was listening to music while I drove.

2. Shows that the second phrase describes an unexpected characteristic, considering the norm of the situation which is given in the first phrase.

English approximation: “even though”

- A) 彼は大会社の社長 ながら、いつも腰の低い人だ。  
かれ だいがいしゃ しゃちょう

Kare wa dai-gaisha no n. shachoo nagara, itsumo koshi no hikui hito da.

Even though he is the president of a large company, he's always humble.

- B) 彼女はあんなに色々苦勞し ながら、それを苦にしていない。  
かのじょ いろいろくろう

Kanojo wa an-na ni iro-iro v. kuroo-shi nagara, sore o ku ni shite-inai.

Even though she's been through a lot of hardships, she's optimistic.

## NAGARA-MO ながら-も Combination particle

A combination of the particles “nagara ながら” and “mo も.”

- i. Like “nagara ながら” 1. above, but more emphatic.

English approximation: “even while doing ...”

- A) わたしは、勉強し ながらも、あの事件のことが頭から離れない。  
わたしは べんきょう

Watashi wa v. benkyoo-shi nagara mo, ano jiken no koto ga atama kara hanare-nai.

Even while I'm studying, I can't stop thinking about that incident.

- B) 彼女は、病の床に伏し ながらも、本を書き続けた。  
かのじょ やまい ところ

Kanojo wa, yamai no toko ni v. fushi nagara mo, hon o kaki-tsuzuketa.

Even while she was bedridden and sick, she continued to write her book.

2. See “nagara ながら” 2. above.

English approximation: “even though”

- A) この料理は、おいしくない **ながらも** 苦心の作なんだよ。

Kono ryoori wa, adj. oishiku-nai **nagara mo** kushin no saku  
na-n da yo.

Even though this dish isn't very good, I did slave over it, you know.

- B) あの子は、小さい **ながらも**、両親の気持ちがよくわかってい  
る。

Ano ko wa, adj. chiisai **nagara mo**, ryooshin no kimochi ga yoku  
wakatte-iru.

Even though that child is young, she understands her parents'  
feelings quite well.

## NANTE なんて

Colloquial expression. Has a belittling affect on the preceding statement.

English approximation: “... or something”

- A) 来週は必ずお邪魔します **なんて** 言っていたけど、あの大家さん、  
本当に来てくれるかしら。

cl. Raishuu wa kanarazu ojama-shi-masu **nante** itte-ita kedo,  
ano daiku-san, hontoo ni kite kureru kashira.

He said, “I will definitely come next week,” or something, but I  
wonder if that carpenter is really going to come?

- B) 試験で悪い点をとったぐらいで、この世も終わりだ **なんて** 考えるな  
よ。

Shiken de warui ten o totta gurai de, cl. kono yo mo owari da

nañte kangaeru na yo.

Just because you got a bad grade on an exam, don't think that it's the end of the world or something.

## NARI なり

1. Shows that the minute an action is completed, a change or another action occurs.

English approximation: “as soon as”

- A) かれ 彼は、しゅくだい 宿題を済ませる なり あそ 遊びに行ってしまった。

Kare wa, shukudai o v. sumaseru nari asobi ni itte shimatta.

He went out to play as soon as he was finished with his homework.

- B) ぼく 僕は、まいばんあたま 毎晩頭を枕につける なり ねむ 眠ってしまう。

Boku wa, maiban atama o makura ni v. tsukeru nari nemutte shimau.

Every night, I fall asleep as soon as my head hits the pillow.

2. In the pattern “... ta nari へたなり,” shows that a state or condition is continued while another action is taking place.

English approximation: “while doing ...” “and”

- A) かれ 彼は、くつ 靴を履いた なり たたみ 畳に上がってしまった。

Kare wa, kutsu o v. haita nari, tatami ni agatte shimatta.

He stepped up onto the tatami mat with his shoes on. (literally: while keeping his shoes on)

- B) かのじょ 彼女は、とざん アルプス登山に出かけた なり で、ついに戻らなかった。

Kanojo wa, arupusu tozan ni v. dekaketa nari, tsui ni modora nakatta.

She had gone to climb the Alps, and in the end, she didn't return.  
(i.e. the state of her having gone to the Alps continued and did not change.)

3. Casually mentions an example.

English approximation: "a ... or something"

- A) たまには温泉へ なり 行ってみましょうよ。

Tama ni wa onsen p. e nari itte-mi-mashoo yo.

Why don't we go to a hot spring or something once in a while?

- B) そのことならお医者さんに なり 聞いてみたほうがいいよ。

Sono koto nara, oisha-san p. ni nari kiite mita hoo ga ii yo.

I think it's better to ask a doctor or someone about that.

4. In the pattern "... nari ... nari 〜なり〜なり."

English approximation: "whether or not"

- A) 行く なり 行かない なり、早く決めなさい。

v. Iku nari v. ika-nai nari, hayaku kime nasai.

Whether you're going to go or not, decide quickly.

- B) 風邪を引いたときは、ジュース なり 水 なり たくさん飲むことです。

Kaze o hiita toki wa, n. juusu nari n. mizu nari takusan nomu koto desu.

When you have a cold, whether it's juice or water, drink plenty (of it).

- C) 町から遠いところに住むのだから、大 なり 小 なり の不便はあるだ



ろう。

Machi kara tooi tokoro ni sumu no dakara, n. dai nari n. shoo  
nari no fuben wa aru daroo.

Since (we) are going to live far away from town, there will probably be inconveniences, whether they be major or minor.

## N-DE ん-で Combination particle

A combination of the negative form “(mase)n (ませ)ん” of the form “masu masu” and the particle “de で.” A colloquial, polite expression.

### 1. In a negation.

English approximation: “not having done ...”

- A) <sup>びょうき</sup>ご病気と<sup>うかが</sup>伺いながら<sup>みま</sup>お見舞いにも<sup>あ</sup>上がりませ<sup>んで</sup>、<sup>しつれい</sup>失礼いたしました。

Gobyooki to ukagai nagara omimai ni mo v. agari-mase n de,  
shitsuree itashi-mashita.

Please excuse me for not having paid a visit even though I had heard you were ill.

- B) <sup>でんわ</sup>お電話をいただきながらすぐにお<sup>へんじ</sup>返事もしませ<sup>んで</sup>、<sup>もう</sup>申し<sup>わけ</sup>訳ありませんでした。

Odenwa o itadaki nagara sugu ni ohenji mo v. shi-mase n de,  
mooshiwake-arimasen deshita.

I'm sorry for not having returned your call immediately.

### 2. Similar to the function in 1. above, but with an implied apology.

English approximation: “(I’m sorry that I) did not do ..., but ...”

- A) せっかくいらしてくださいましたのに、お茶も差し上げませ<sup>ちや き あげ</sup> んで。

Sekkaku irashite kudasai-mashita no ni, ocha mo sashi-age-mase n de.

Even though you had come (out of your way) for a visit, I didn't even offer you tea ...

- B) わざわざお出<sup>い</sup>てくださいましたのに、主人は出張<sup>しゅじん しゅっちやうちやう</sup>中<sup>め</sup>でお目<sup>め</sup>にかかれませ<sup>め</sup> んで。

Waza-waza oide kudasai-mashita no ni, shujin wa shuccho-chuu de ome ni kakare-mase n de.

Despite the fact that you came all this way (from afar), my husband is on a business trip and you didn't get to meet him ...

## NE(NEE) ね(ねえ)

“Ne ね” and “nee ねえ” are used in almost the same way, but “nee ねえ” implies even more emotion.

1. Expresses a casual exclamation. Not translatable.

- A) まあ、バイオリンが上手<sup>じょうず</sup>に弾<sup>ひ</sup>けるの ね(ねえ)。

Maa, baiorin ga joozu ni hikeru p. no ne(nee).

My goodness, how well you play the violin!

- B) 立派<sup>りっぱ</sup>なお宅<sup>たく</sup>にお住<sup>す</sup>まいでいらっしやいます ね(ねえ)。

Rippa otaku ni osumai de v. irasshai-masu ne(nee).

What a nice house you live in!

2. Makes a casual gesture of confirmation.

English approximation: “..., right?”

- A) <sup>いま</sup>今わたしが<sup>い</sup>言ったこと、よくわからなかったみたい<sup>ね</sup>。

Ima watashi ga itta koto, yoku wakara-nakatta <sub>n.</sub> mitai <sup>ne</sup>.

You don't seem to have understood what I said just now, right?

- B) これはやはり<sup>ほんもの</sup>本物ではないようです<sup>ね</sup>。

Kore wa yahari honmono de wa nai yoo <sub>c.</sub> desu <sup>ne</sup>.

It indeed seems like this is not authentic, right?

3. Expresses a desire to elicit an agreement from the party addressed.

English approximation: "..., okay?"

- A) わかったから、もう泣<sup>な</sup>かないで<sup>ね</sup>。

Wakatta kara, moo <sub>v.</sub> naka-nai de <sup>ne</sup>.

I understand, so please don't cry anymore, okay?

- B) <sup>ゆる</sup>許してください<sup>ね</sup>。もう二度とご心配<sup>しんぱい</sup>をおかけしませんから。

<sub>cl.</sub> Yurushite kudasai <sup>ne</sup>. Moo nido to goshinpai o okake shi-masen kara.

Please forgive me, (all right)? I'll never make you worry again.

4. Often following a phrase with an interrogative pronoun, softens the posed question. Not translatable.

- A) アメリカに<sup>りょこう</sup>旅行したのは、いつだったっけ<sup>ね(ねえ)</sup>。

Amerika ni ryokoo-shita no wa, <sub>cl.</sub> itsu datta-kke <sup>ne(nee)</sup>.

When was it that we went on a trip to the U.S.?

- B) <sup>きみ</sup>君の<sup>こきょう</sup>故郷はどこか<sup>ね</sup>。

Kimi no kokyoo wa <sub>ph.</sub> doko ka <sup>ne</sup> ?

Where are you originally from?

5. Placed at the end of a phrase, as a meaningless particle used just to set a rhythm. Not translatable.

- A) 五合目<sup>ごごうめ</sup>まで車<sup>くるま</sup>で行<sup>い</sup>って、それから ね(ねえ)、その先<sup>さき</sup>は歩<sup>ある</sup>いて頂<sup>ちやうじやう</sup>上<sup>う</sup>まで登<sup>のぼ</sup>ったよ。

Gogoo-me made kuruma de itte, <sup>conj.</sup> sore kara ne(nee), sono saki wa aruite choojoo made nobotta yo.

We drove to the half way point, and then after that, we walked all the way up to the peak of the mountain.

- B) あたし ね(ねえ)、今日<sup>きょう</sup>かけっこで一<sup>いっとう</sup>等<sup>とう</sup>になったのよ。  
<sup>n.</sup> Atashi ne(nee), kyoo kakekko de it-too ni natta no yo.

I came in first in a running race today.

6. Same as 5, but in the set phrases “anone あのね” and “da ne/desu ne だね/ですね.”

English approximation: various translations, depending on the circumstances.

- A) あの ね(ねえ)、今晚<sup>こんばんは</sup>僕<sup>ぼく</sup>のほうからまた電<sup>でん</sup>話<sup>わ</sup>するよ。  
<sup>interj.</sup> Ano ne(nee), konban boku no hoo kara mata denwa-suru yo.

Listen, I'll call you again this evening.

- B) そうだ ね(ねえ)、もう一<sup>いちねんまえ</sup>年前<sup>ねん</sup>になるんだ、卒<sup>そつ</sup>業<sup>ぎやう</sup>したのは。  
<sup>cl.</sup> Soo da ne(nee), moo ichi-nen mae ni naru-n da, sotsugyoo-shita no wa.

Yeah, you're right, it's been a year already since I graduated.

## NI に

### FUNDAMENTALS OF “NI に”

Precedes verbs which indicate the existence of people or things in a certain place, or which show direction, movement or action. In the latter case, it is interchangeable with the particle “e へ” (see p. 30).

1. After a noun or a nominal.

1) Placed after a noun or a nominal, it shows that the noun/nominal is the place in which the subject of the sentence exists.

English approximation: “at” “in” “on”

Some of the verbs that often follow “ni に” are:

aru ある (to be, to be present, to exist)—used for inanimate objects.

iru いる (to be, to be present, to exist)—used for animate things.

kurasu <sup>く</sup>暮らす (to live, to get along)

nezasu <sup>ね</sup>根ざす (to stem from)

nokoru <sup>のこ</sup>残る (to remain, to stay behind)

ochitsuku <sup>おち</sup> <sup>つ</sup>落ち着く (to settle down)

sumu <sup>す</sup>住む (to live)

tomaru <sup>と</sup>泊まる (to stay over)

tsutomeru <sup>つと</sup>勤める (to work at)

ukabu <sup>う</sup>浮かぶ (to float)

yokotawaru <sup>よこ</sup>横たわる (to lie down)

A) つくえ <sup>うえ</sup>机の上 <sup>に</sup> <sup>ほん</sup>本があります。

Tsukue no n. ue ni hon ga ari-masu.

There is a book on the desk.



- B) わたし<sup>たち</sup>達は東京<sup>とうきょう</sup>駅<sup>えき</sup>の近<sup>ちか</sup>く<sup>に</sup>住<sup>す</sup>んでいます。

Watashi-tachi wa tookyoo-eki no

n. chikaku ni sunde-imasu.

We live in a place near Tokyo Station.

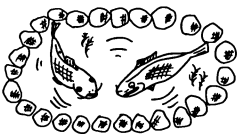


- C) 見てごらん、この池<sup>いけ</sup>に<sup>に</sup>コイがたくさんいるよ。

Mite goran, kono n. ike ni koi ga

takusan iru yo.

Look, there are many carp in this pond.



- D) おおむかし、火星<sup>かせい</sup>に<sup>に</sup>水<sup>みず</sup>があったそうだと。

Oo-mukashi, n. kasee ni mizu ga atta soo da.

They say that a long time ago, there was water on Mars.

- E) あなたはどこ<sup>どこ</sup>に<sup>に</sup>お勤めですか？

Anata wa n. doko ni otsutome desu ka?

Where do you work? (literally: Which place are you working at?)

- F) みち<sup>みち</sup>に<sup>に</sup>ゆき<sup>ゆき</sup>がたくさん<sup>のこ</sup>残<sup>のこ</sup>っています。

n. Michi ni yuki ga takusan nokotte-imaşu.

There is a lot of snow left on the street.



- G) あそこ<sup>あそこ</sup>に<sup>に</sup>立<sup>た</sup>っている男<sup>おとこ</sup>の人は<sup>ひと</sup>今川<sup>いまがわ</sup>さんです。

n. Asoko ni tatte-iru otoko no hito

wa imagawa-san desu.

The man standing over there (literally:

at that place) is Mr. Imagawa.



- H) あの壁<sup>かべ</sup>に<sup>に</sup>かかっている絵<sup>え</sup>はきれいですね。

Ano n. kabe ni kakatte-iru e wa kiree desu ne.

The painting hanging on that wall is beautiful.

- 2) After a noun, indicates the direction or the destination of an action.

English approximation: "to" "in" "on" "into"

- A) 僕は父<sup>とう</sup>さん<sup>に</sup>手紙<sup>てがみ</sup>を書<sup>か</sup>いた。

Boku wa n. otoosan ni tegami o kaita.

I wrote a letter to my father.



- B) わたしは来月<sup>らいげつ</sup>イギリス<sup>に</sup>行<sup>い</sup>きます。

Watashi wa raigetsu n. igirisu ni iki-masu.

I am going to England next month.

- C) 僕<sup>ぼく</sup>がうち<sup>に</sup>帰<sup>かえ</sup>ったとき、妹<sup>いもうと</sup>も学校<sup>がっこう</sup>から帰<sup>かえ</sup>ってきた。

Boku ga n. uchi ni kaetta toki, imooto mo gakkoo kara kaette-kita.

When I got home, my sister was also coming home from school.



- D) 父<sup>ちち</sup>は会社<sup>かいしゃ</sup>に<sup>に</sup>出<sup>で</sup>かけました。

Chichi wa n. kaisha ni dekake-mashita.

My father has left for his office.

- E) 景色<sup>けしき</sup>のいい所<sup>ところ</sup>に<sup>に</sup>旅行<sup>りょこう</sup>したいね。

Keshiki no ii n. tokoro ni ryokoo-shi-tai ne.

Don't you want to travel to a place with nice scenery?

- F) 太陽は西<sup>にし</sup>に<sup>しず</sup>沈みます。

Taiyoo wa n.nishi ni shizumi-masu.

The sun sets in the west.



- G) さあ、飛行機<sup>ひこうき</sup>に<sup>の</sup>乗る時間ですよ。

Saa, n.hikooki ni noru jikan desu yo.

It's time to get on the plane now.



- 3) After an abstract condition or state, indicates that the action prescribed by a related verb is proceeding toward it.

English approximation: "to" or not translatable.

- A) 来月スキー<sup>らいげつ</sup>に<sup>い</sup>行きませんか？

Raigetsu n.sukii ni iki-masen ka?

Would you like to go skiing next month?



- B) 彼らは恋<sup>かれ</sup>に<sup>こい</sup>おちた。

Karera wa n.koi ni ochita.

They fell in love.



- C) 森田氏は政界<sup>もりた し せいがい</sup>に<sup>はい</sup>入った。

Morita-shi wa n.seekai ni haitta.

Mr. Morita joined the political circle.

- D) あなたはもう投票<sup>とうひょう</sup>に<sup>い</sup>行きましたか？

Anata wa moo n.toohyoo ni iki-mashita ka?



Have you already gone to vote?

- E) わたしは午後会議<sup>ごごかいぎ</sup>に<sup>で</sup>出ます。

Watashi wa gogo n. kaigi ni de-masu.

I'm going to attend a meeting this afternoon.

- 4) In the pattern "... ni naru (nari-masu) 〜になる (なります)" or "... ni kawaru (kawari-masu) 〜に変わる (変わります)," indicates a change in condition/state.

English approximation: "(turn) into"

- A) 信号が青<sup>しんごう あお</sup>に<sup>に</sup>なりました。さあ、渡<sup>わた</sup>りましょう。

Shingoo ga n. ao ni nari-mashita. Saa, watari-mashoo.

The traffic light has turned green. Let's cross the street.

- B) もう秋<sup>あき</sup>に<sup>に</sup>なりましたね。

Moo n. aki ni nari-mashita ne.

It's become autumn, hasn't it?

- C) わたしの祖母は九十歳<sup>そ ば きゅうじゅうさい</sup>に<sup>に</sup>なりました。

Watashi no sobo wa n. kyuujus-sai ni nari-mashita.

My grandmother has turned ninety.

- D) 山上君はカメラマン<sup>やまがみくん</sup>に<sup>に</sup>なった。

Yamagami-kun wa n. kameraman ni natta.

Yamagami became a photographer.

- E) 前は薬屋<sup>まえ くすりや</sup>だったあの店<sup>みせ</sup>はメガネ屋<sup>や</sup>に<sup>に</sup>変わった。

Mae wa kusuri-ya datta ano mise wa n. megane-ya ni kawatta.

That store which used to be a pharmacy is now an optician's.

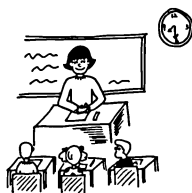
- 5) Indicates the time that an action takes/took place.

English approximation: "on" "in" "at"

- A) 学校は毎朝八時半<sup>がっこう まいあさはち はん</sup>に<sup>はじ</sup>始まります。

Gakkoo wa mainichi n. hachi-ji han ni hajimari-masu.

School starts at eight thirty every morning.



- B) わたしは夕方七時<sup>ゆうがたしち じ</sup>に<sup>かえ</sup>帰ります。

Watashi wa yuugata n. shichi-ji ni kaeri-masu.

I'll be going home/coming home at seven in the evening.

- C) わたしは休憩時間<sup>きゅうけい じかん</sup>に<sup>の</sup>コーヒーを飲みました。

Watashi wa n. kyuukee-jikan ni

koohii o nomi-mashita.

I had coffee during the break.



- D) 僕は来週の金曜日にコンサート<sup>ぼく らいしゅう きんよう び</sup>に<sup>い</sup>行きます。

Boku wa raishuu no kin-yoobi ni n. konsaato ni iki-masu.

I'm going to a concert next Friday.

- E) わたしの母は二十歳の時<sup>はは はたち とし</sup>に<sup>けっこん</sup>結婚した。

Watashi no haha wa hatachi no n. toki ni kekkon-shita.

My mother got married at age twenty.



- F) <sup>いなづま ひか</sup>稲妻が光ると同時<sup>どうじ</sup>に<sup>らいめい</sup>雷鳴がとどろきました。

Inazuma ga hikaru to <sub>n.</sub> dooji ni raimee ga todoroki-mashita.

Lightening flashed, and at the same time, there was a roll of thunder.



- 6) Indicates a rate, proportion, frequency or interval of time or space.

English approximation: "at" "to" "in" "for" "per"

- A) わたしは、朝と晩、一日<sup>あさ ばん いちにち</sup>に<sup>にかい は み</sup>二回歯を磨きます。

Watashi wa, asa to ban, <sub>n.</sub> ichi-nichi ni ni-kai ha o migaki-masu.

I brush my teeth twice a day in the morning and in the evening.



- B) <sup>やまのて せん でんしゃ ごふん</sup>山手線の電車は五分おき<sup>き</sup>に<sup>き</sup>来ます。

Yamanote-sen no densha wa <sub>n.</sub> go-fun oki ni ki-masu.

Yamanote line trains come every five minutes.

- C) この写真<sup>しゃしん</sup>のサイズは、縦<sup>たてはっ</sup>八センチに<sup>よこじゅうさん</sup>横一三センチです。

Kono shashin no saizu wa, tate <sub>n.</sub> has-senchi ni yoko juusan-senchi desu.

The size of this photograph is eight centimeters by thirteen centimeters.

- D) テスト用紙は一人<sup>ようし ひとり</sup>に<sup>いちまい</sup>一枚ずつです。

Tesuto-yooshi wa n. hitori ni ichi-mai zutsu desu.

The exam should be one page per person.

- E) 一度<sup>いちど</sup>に<sup>ぜんぶ</sup>全部食べないで、少し<sup>すこ</sup>ずつ<sup>あ</sup>お上がりなさい。

n. ichi-do ni zenbu tabe-nai de, sukoshi zutsu oagari nasai.

Don't eat it all at one time; eat it a little bit at a time.

- F) 千円<sup>せんえん</sup>に<sup>ごじゅうえん</sup>ついて五十円の手数料<sup>てすうりょう</sup>がかかります。

n. Sen en ni tsuite go-juu en no tesuuryoo ga kakari-masu.

There is a fifty yen handling fee per every one thousand yen.

- 7) Shows that someone is involved in or influenced by an action or a condition.

English approximation: "from" "with"

- A) わたしたちは、今エレクトロニクスの研究<sup>いま けんきゅう</sup>に<sup>と</sup>取り組んでいます。

Watashi-tachi wa, ima erekutoronikusu no n. kenkyuu ni tori-kunde-imasu.

We are now working on a research in electronics.

- B) 彼は空手のけいこ<sup>かれ からて</sup>に<sup>むちゅう</sup>夢中です。

Kare wa karate no n. keeko ni muchuu desu.

He's obsessed with karate practice.

- C) わたしは寒さ<sup>さむ</sup>に<sup>ふる</sup>震えた。

Watashi wa n. samusa ni furueta.

I shivered from the cold.

- D) 僕は高熱<sup>ぼく こうねつ</sup>に<sup>くる</sup>苦しんだ。

Boku wa n. koonetsu ni kurushinda.

I suffered from a high fever.

- 8) Shows the intention or purpose of the action.

English approximation: “as a token of” “as” “for” “by way of”

- A) 僕、おじいちゃんからお年玉<sup>としだま</sup>に<sup>に</sup>二千円<sup>にせんえん</sup>もらったよ。

Boku, ojii-chan kara n. otoshidama ni ni-sen en moratta yo.

I was given two thousand yen by grandpa as a New Year's gift.

- B) わたし<sup>たち</sup>達は、ハネムーン<sup>はなむうん</sup>に<sup>に</sup>ハワイへ<sup>い</sup>行きました。

Watashi-tachi wa, n. hanemuun ni hawai e iki-mashita.

We went to Hawaii for our honeymoon.

- C) いろいろお世話<sup>せわ</sup>になりました。つまらないものですが、どうぞお礼<sup>う</sup>に<sup>に</sup>これをお受け取りください。

Iro-iro osewa ni nari-mashita. Tsumaranai mono desu ga, doozo n. oree ni kore o ouketori kudasai.

Thank you for everything. This isn't much, but please accept this as a token of my appreciation.

- 9) Placed after a noun, lists a number of things. Interchangeable with the particle “toと,” but “ni に” implies an additive sense.

English approximation: “and” “with”

- A) わたしはフライドチキン<sup>ふらいどちきん</sup>に<sup>に</sup>ハンバーガーがいいわ。

Watashi wa n. furaidochikin ni hanbaagaa ga ii wa.

I want some fried chicken and a hamburger.

- B) 村祭り<sup>むらまつ</sup>は、子供<sup>こども</sup>に<sup>に</sup>若い人<sup>わかひと</sup>に<sup>に</sup>お年寄<sup>としよ</sup>りと、総出<sup>そうで</sup>でにぎわった。

Mura-matsuri wa, n. kodomo ni wakai n. hito ni otoshiyori to, soode de nigiwatta.

Everyone from the village gathered and enjoyed the festival, (including) children, youngsters and the elders.

- C) 今日のパーティー、スカート に ブラウスでいいかしら。

Kyoo no paatii, n. sukaato ni burausu de ii kashira.

For today's party, do you think a blouse and a skirt are appropriate?

- 10) Shows the speaker's respect toward the party addressed. Not translatable.

- A) ご主人様 に もお元気でいらっしゃると思います。

n. Goshujin-sama ni mo ogenki de irassharu koto to omoimasu.

I hope your husband, too, is well.

- B) 首相 に は、来月アメリカを訪問されるそうです。

n. Shushoo ni wa, raigetsu amerika o hoomon-sareru soo desu.

The Prime Minister is supposed to make a visit to the U.S. next month.

- 11) Shows that something is/was done by/through a measure described by the preceding noun. Often in the patterns "... ni yotte ~によって (... ni yori ~により / ... ni yore ba ~によれば / ... ni yora-nai de ~によらないで)."

English approximation: "by" "at" "according to" "from" "due to"

- A) 聞くところ に よれば、新しいハイウェイがこの町を通るそうだ。

Kiku n. tokoro ni yore ba, atarashii haiuee ga kono machi o tooru soo da.

According to what I've heard, a new highway is supposed to be built through this town.

- B) 不注意 に より、友達から借りた本を汚してしまった。

n. Fuchuui ni yori, tomodachi kara karita hon o yogoshite shimatta.

Due to (my) carelessness, I've soiled the book I borrowed from my friend.

- C) 最近の研究 に よれば、銀河の中心にはブラックホールがあるということだ。

Saikin no n. kenkyuu ni yore ba, ginga no chuushin ni wa burakku-hooru ga aru to yuu koto da.

According to recent studies, there is a black hole in the very center of our Milky Way.

- 12) Placed between two nouns, creates a pair.

English approximation: "and" "in addition"

- A) 新郎 に 新婦

n. shinroo ni n. shinpu

A bridegroom and a bride

- B) 鬼 に 金棒

n. oni ni n. kanaboo (proverb)

A demon and a metal club. (i.e. the metal club gives the demon, already a strong being, additional strength.)



2. Placed after a verb.

- 1) Indicates the purpose of an action. Most frequently used before the verbs "iku 行く (to go)" and "kuru 来る (to come)," and related verbs such as "mukau 向かう (to head for)," "shuppatsu-suru 出発する (to

depart),” “kaeru 帰る (to return)” and “modoru 戻る (to come back).”

English approximation: “to do ...” “in order to do ...”

- A) わたしはすし屋へおすしを食べ<sup>た</sup>に<sup>い</sup>行きます。

Watashi wa sushi-ya e osushi o

v. tabe ni iki-masu.

I go to a restaurant to eat sushi.



- B) わたしは友達を迎え<sup>ともだち わか</sup>に<sup>くうこう い</sup>空港へ行きました。

Watashi wa tomodachi o v. mukae ni kuukoo e iki-mashita.

I went to the airport to pick up my friend.



- C) 宿題<sup>しゅくだい わす</sup>を忘れたので、うちへ(宿題<sup>しゅくだい</sup>)を取り<sup>と</sup>に<sup>もど</sup>戻った。

Shukudai o wasureta node, uchi e (shukudai o) v. tori ni modotta.

As I had forgotten to take my homework with me, I went back home to get it.

- D) 俊男<sup>とし お</sup>、お友達<sup>ともだち あそ</sup>が遊び<sup>あそ</sup>に<sup>き</sup>来ましたよ。

Toshio, otomodachi ga v. asobi ni ki-mashita yo.

Toshio, your friends are here to play with you.





- 2) In a pattern where the same verb is repeated with “ni に” in between, intensifies the degree of the action.

English approximation: “... and ...”

- A) 今日<sup>きょう</sup>は待ち<sup>まち</sup>に<sup>に</sup>待<sup>まち</sup>った遠足<sup>えんそく</sup>の日<sup>ひ</sup>です。

Kyoo wa n. machi ni matta ensoku no hi desu.

Today is the day of school trip that I've been really looking forward to.

- B) その知らせ<sup>し</sup>を聞<sup>き</sup>いて、彼女<sup>かのじょ</sup>は泣<sup>な</sup>き<sup>に</sup>泣<sup>な</sup>いた。

Sono shirase o kiite, kanojo wa v. naki ni naita.

Hearing the news, she just cried and cried.

- 3) When the verb is in passive form, “reru れる” or “rareru られる,” the particle “ni に” is placed after the agent of the action.

English approximation: “by”

- A) わたしはすり<sup>さいふ</sup>に<sup>に</sup>財布<sup>さいふ</sup>をすられた。

Watashi wa n. suri ni saifu o su-rareta.

I was robbed of my wallet by a pickpocket.



- B) 僕は父<sup>ちち</sup>に<sup>に</sup>しかられた。

Boku wa n. chichi ni shika-rareta.

I was scolded by my father.



- D) わたしは車<sup>くるま</sup>に<sup>どろ</sup>泥をはねられた。

Watashi wa n. kuruma [ni] doro o  
hane-rareta.

I was splashed with mud by a car.



3. Makes the preceding noun an indirect object. It is placed after the indirect object and before the direct object.

English approximation: “to”

- A) (わたしに) あなたの写真を見せてください。

(n. Watashi [ni] ) anata no shashin o misete kudasai.

Please show me your picture.

- B) 妹<sup>いもうと</sup>はわたしに<sup>たんじょうび</sup>誕生日のプレゼントをくれました。

Imooto wa n. watashi [ni] tanjoobi no purezento o kure-  
mashita.

My sister gave me a birthday present.

- C) わたしは彼女<sup>かのじょ</sup>に<sup>ご</sup>フランス語<sup>おし</sup>を教えた。

Watashi wa n. kanojo [ni] furansu-go o oshieta.

I taught her French.

4. In relation to the verb form:

In a sentence where the verb follows the pattern “... te morau (... te morai-masu) ～てもらう(～てもらいます),” the particle “ni に” identifies the preceding noun as the agent or the source of an action which was requested by the speaker.

English approximation: (receive favor from ... by request)

- A) わたしは梅田先生<sup>うめだせんせい</sup>に<sup>に</sup>ピアノ<sup>おし</sup>を教えてもらいました。

Watashi wa n. umeda-sensee <sup>agent</sup> ni piano o oshiete-morai-mashita.

I received piano lessons from Mrs. Umeda.

- B) わたしは母<sup>はは</sup>に<sup>に</sup>サンドイッチ<sup>つく</sup>を作ってもらった。

Watashi wa n. haha <sup>agent</sup> ni sandoicchi o tsukutte-moratta.

My mother made sandwiches for me  
(at my request).



- C) 友達<sup>ともだち</sup>に<sup>に</sup>引っ越し<sup>ひっこし</sup>の手伝い<sup>てつだい</sup>に来てもらった。

n. Tomodachi <sup>agent</sup> ni hikkoshi no tetsudai ni kite-moratta.

My friends came over to help me move  
(at my request).



5. Placed after mimesis, creates an adverb that modifies the verb in the predicate. Not translatable.

- A) 雨がひどくて、びしょびしょ<sup>あめ</sup>に<sup>に</sup>濡<sup>ぬ</sup>れてしまった。

Ame ga hidoku te, m. bisho-bisho ni nurete shimatta.

As it was raining hard, I got thoroughly soaked.

- B) このパン、からから<sup>かわ</sup>に<sup>に</sup>乾<sup>かわ</sup>いているね。

Kono pan, m. kara-kara ni kawaite-iru ne.

This bread is dried stiff.

6. In the pattern "... ni wa ... keredo(ga) 〜には〜けれど(が)," placed after an adjective or a verb. Used in admitting something with a certain degree of reservation.

English approximation: "it is certain that ..., but"

- A) あのレストランの料理は、おいしい<sup>うようり</sup>に<sup>に</sup>はおいしいけれど、ちょっと<sup>たか</sup>高いね。

Ano resutoran no ryoori wa, <sup>adj.</sup> oishii **ni** wa oishii keredo, chotto takai ne.

The food at that restaurant is good, all right, but it's a bit expensive, don't you think.

- B) 返事、する<sup>へんじ</sup>に<sup>に</sup>はするけど、もう少し<sup>すこ</sup>待<sup>ま</sup>ってね。

Henji, <sup>v.</sup> suru **ni** wa surukedo, moo sukoshi matte ne?

I'll give you the answer, certainly, but could you wait a little longer?

7. After a short introductory remark before the main sentence, makes the verb into a present participle ("ing") form.

English approximation: "...-ing"

- A) 今思<sup>いまおも</sup>うに<sup>に</sup>、わたしはあの時<sup>とき</sup>は少し<sup>すこ</sup>努力<sup>どりよく</sup>が足り<sup>たり</sup>なかった。

Ima <sup>v.</sup> omou **ni**, watashi wa ano toki wa sukoshi doryoku ga tari-nakatta.

Thinking back on it now, I didn't make enough of an effort at that time.

- B) 考<sup>かんが</sup>えてみるに<sup>に</sup>、これ以上<sup>いじょう</sup>の要<sup>よう</sup>求<sup>きゅう</sup>は無<sup>む</sup>理<sup>り</sup>だろう。

Kangaete <sup>v.</sup> miru **ni**, kore ijoo no yookyuu wa muri daroo.

In thinking about it, I don't think it's possible to make any further demands.

8. In the patterns "... deshoo ni ~でしょうに," "... de aroo ni ~であろうに," "... daroo ni ~だろうに," "... deshita deshoo ni ~でしたでしょうに," "... datta deshoo ni ~だったでしょうに," "... datta roo ni ~だったろうに."

Expresses one's sympathy or regret. Often placed at the end of a sentence.

English approximation: "I suppose ..." "I regret ..." "I sympathize ..."

- A) <sup>こいびと</sup>恋人もいるだろう に、<sup>わか いのち うしな</sup>若い命を失うとは。

Koibito mo iru c. daroo ni, wakai inochi o ushinau to wa.

He must have a sweetheart, what a pity that he lost his life so young.

- B) <sup>てんき</sup>ひどいお天気だったでしょう に。よく<sup>かえ</sup>帰れたこと。

Hidoi otenki datta c. deshoo ni. Yoku kaereta koto.

The weather must have been terrible. It's a wonder you managed to come home.

- C) <sup>やす はたら</sup>そんなに休まず働いて、<sup>つか</sup>さぞ疲れただろう に。

Son-na ni yasumazu hataraitte, sazo tsukareta c. daroo ni.

You have been working so hard without a break, how tired you must be.

- D) <sup>てんすう</sup>こんな点数しかとれなかったか。もっと<sup>べんきょう</sup>勉強しておけばよかっただろう に。

Kon-na tensuu shika tore-nakatta ka. Motto benkyoo shite okeba yokatta c. daroo ni.

You only managed to get a low grade. You should have worked harder.

## NI-MO にも Combination particle

A combination of the particles “ni に” and “mo も.”

1. Indicates that there is something additional or surpassing the norm.

English approximation: “even” “also”

- A) 彼女は、昼休み にも 仕事をしている。  
かのじょ ひるやす しごと

Kanojo wa, n. hiru-yasumi ni mo shigoto o shite-iru.

She is doing work even during her lunch break.

- B) わたしは、アフリカ にも 行ったことがあります。  
わたし ありふりか いった

Watashi wa, n. afurika ni mo itta koto ga ari-masu.

I have also been to Africa.

- C) そのお菓子、僕 にも ちょうだい。  
その おかし ぼく ちょうだい

Sono okashi, n. boku ni mo choodai.

Please (can you) give me some of those candies, too?

2. In an honorific usage, follows the subject. Not translatable.

- A) 先生 にも お元気のことと思います。  
せんせい げんき おも

n. Sensee ni mo ogenki no koto to omoi-masu.

I presume that you (sir) are fine.

- B) お宅の皆様 にも お変わりはありませんか？  
たく みなさま おわり

Otaku no n. minasama ni mo okawari wa gozaimasen ka?

How is your family? (literally: There are no changes concerning your family?)

3. In the pattern “(verb) ni mo にも (verb) zu/nai ず/ない,” where one verb is repeated twice and followed by a negation, indicates that the action described by the verb is impossible or difficult to carry out.

English approximation: “cannot do ... even if (I) were to try”

- A) <sup>あわ</sup>慌てて、<sup>きもの</sup>着物を<sup>ま</sup>着たまま<sup>みず</sup>水に<sup>と</sup>飛び込んでしまい、<sup>こ</sup>泳ぐ<sup>およ</sup>にも<sup>およ</sup>泳げませんでした。

Awatete kimono o kita mama mizu ni tobikonde shimai,  
v. oyogu **ni mo** oyoge-masen deshita.

I jumped into the water in my clothes in a panic, and I couldn't swim even if I tried.

- B) こんなに<sup>へや</sup>部屋を<sup>ち</sup>散らかして、<sup>ある</sup>歩く<sup>ある</sup>にも<sup>ある</sup>歩けないじゃないの。

Kon-na ni heya o chirakashite, v. aruku **ni mo** aruke-nai ja nai no.

Your room is such a mess, I couldn't walk in even if I were to try.

## NI-MO-KAKAWARA-ZU に-も-かかわら-ず

Combination particle

A combination of “ni に, mo も, zu ず” and the verb “kakawaru かかわる (to relate).”

1. Shows that an actual situation is the opposite of what is expected.

English approximation: “even though”

- A) <sup>ま</sup>間に<sup>あ</sup>合うように<sup>えき</sup>駅に<sup>つ</sup>着いた<sup>えき</sup>にも<sup>えき</sup>かかわらず、<sup>でんしや</sup>電車はもう<sup>で</sup>出てしまった後<sup>あと</sup>だった。

Maniau yoo ni eki ni v. tsuita **ni mo kakawarazu**, densha wa moo dete shimatta ato datta.

Even though I had gotten to the station so that I would be on time, it was after the train had already left.

- B) <sup>きよう</sup>今日は<sup>は</sup>晴れている<sup>は</sup>にも<sup>は</sup>かかわらず、<sup>そら</sup>スモッグで<sup>はいいろ</sup>空は灰色です。

Kyoo wa , harete-iru ni mo kakawara zu , sumoggu de sora wa haiiro desu.

Even though it's a clear day today, the sky is gray because of smog.

2. A shortened form of “sore ni mo kakawara zu それにもかかわらず.” Placed at the beginning of a sentence as a conjunction, showing that despite the previous sentence, an unexpected situation exists/existed.

English approximation: “despite that fact,”

- A) <sup>かれ</sup>彼が<sup>べんきよう</sup>勉強しているのを見たことがない。にもかかわらず、<sup>せいせき</sup>成績はいつもトップだ。

Kare ga benkyoo-shite-iru no o mita koto ga nai.

Ni mo kakawara zu , seesekei wa itsumo toppu da.

I've never seen him study. Despite that fact, his grades are always at the top (of the class).

- B) <sup>きよう</sup>今日は<sup>あつ</sup>ひどい暑さだ。にもかかわらず、<sup>おふ</sup>あのおばあさんは冬の<sup>こ</sup>コートを着ている。

Kyoo wa hidoi atsusa da. Ni mo kakawara zu , ano obaasan wa fuyu no koto o kite-iru.

It's extremely hot today. Despite that fact, that old lady is wearing a winter coat.

## NI-OI-TE に-おい-て Combination particle

A combination of the particles “ni に” and “oite おいて,” the gerund of the verb “oku おく (to place).”

1. Marks the place or time in which an action takes place.



English approximation: "in"

- A) <sup>せんきゅうひゃくきゅうじゅうにねん</sup>一九九二年のオリンピックはバルセロナ において <sup>おこな</sup>行われます。

Sen kyuu-hyaku kyuu-juu-ni nen no orinpikku wa n. baruserona  
ni oite okonaware-masu.

The 1992 Olympics will be held in Barcelona.

- B) <sup>じゅうはっせい</sup>十八世紀 において <sup>かつやく</sup>活躍した <sup>さつぎょうか</sup>作曲家にモーツァルトがいます。

n. Juuhas-seeki ni oite katsuyaku-shita sakkyoku-ka ni moo-  
tsaruto ga i-masu.

Mozart is among the composers who were active in the eighteenth century.

2. Indicates the field of activity.

English approximation: "concerning" "in the field of "

- A) <sup>かれ</sup>彼は、<sup>あいだ</sup>アメリカにいる間に、<sup>けいざいがく</sup>経済学 において <sup>すぐ</sup>優れた <sup>けんきゅう</sup>研究をした。

Kare wa, amerika ni iru aida ni, n. keezaigaku ni oite sugureta  
kenkyuu o shita.

When he was in the U.S., he conducted some outstanding research in the field of economics.

- B) <sup>かいが</sup>絵画 において も、<sup>おんがく</sup>音楽 において も、<sup>かのじょ</sup>彼女より <sup>さいのう</sup>才能に <sup>めぐ</sup>恵まれた <sup>ひと</sup>人はあまりいない。

n. Kaiga ni oite mo, n. ongaku ni oite mo, kanojo yori sainoo  
ni megumareta hito wa amari i-nai.

In the fields of both art and music, there aren't too many others who are more talented than she.

## NI-SHITE に-して Combination particle

A combination of the particles “ni に” and “shite して,” the gerund of the verb “suru する (to do).” Indicates a time, a place or a condition.

English approximation: “while” “at”

- A) <sup>かれ りょうこうちゅう</sup>彼は旅行中 に-して、<sup>やまい なお</sup>病に倒れた。

Kare wa n. ryokoo-chuu ni shite, yamai ni taoreta.

While he was on a trip, he was stricken with an illness.

- B) あのピアニストは<sup>ひゃくさい</sup>百歳 に-して、<sup>らいげつ</sup>来月またリサイタルをするそうです。

Ano pianisuto wa n. hyaku-sai ni shite, raigetsu mata risaitaru o suru soo desu.

That pianist, at age one hundred, will be holding another recital next month, I hear.

## NI-SHITE-MO に-しても Combination particle

A combination of the particle “ni に,” “shite して,” the gerund of the verb “suru する (to do),” and the particle “mo も.” Gives a hypothetical situation as a condition for the clause that follows.

English approximation: “(even) if (you) were to do ...”

- A) <sup>こども</sup>子供をしかる に-しても、<sup>じぶん かんじょう</sup>自分の感情だけでしかってはいけない。

Kodomo o v. shikaru ni shite mo, jibun no kanjoo dake de shikatte wa ike-nai.

If you were to scold a child, you should not scold her/him just based

on your emotions.

- B) <sup>いま</sup>今まで<sup>じゅうぶんれんしゅう</sup>充分練習した<sup>おも</sup>と思っている にしても、<sup>しあい</sup>試合の<sup>ひ</sup>日<sup>れんしゅう</sup>まで練習を  
<sup>なま</sup>怠けてはいけない。

Ima made juubun renshuu-shita to v. omotte-iru ni shite mo,  
shiai no hi made renshuu o namakete wa ike-nai.

Even if you think that (you) have practiced enough by now, (you)  
must not skip any practices until the day of the match.

## NI-SHITE-WA に-して-は Combination particle

A combination of the particle “ni に,” “shite して,” the gerund of the verb  
“suru する (to do),” and the particle “wa は.”

Shows that a result has surpassed what is usually expected from an  
individual or a category.

English approximation: “for”

- A) 君<sup>きみ</sup> にしては <sup>うた</sup>まあよく歌えたよ。

For you, you sang pretty well. (i.e. That’s pretty good, considering  
your usual performance.)

- B) 冬<sup>ふゆ</sup> にしては、<sup>に</sup>この二三日<sup>さんにちわりあい</sup>割合に<sup>あたた</sup>暖かいね。

n. Fuyu ni shite wa, kono ni-san-nichi wariai ni atatakai ne.

For winter, these past two or three days have been relatively warm,  
haven’t they?

## NITE にて

Equivalent to “de で.” (See p. 17.)

1. Placed after a noun of location, indicates it is where an action takes/took place. Often in the patterns “kore nite これにて” and “koko nite ここにて,” used in more formal speech.

English approximation: “at” “with” “in”

- A) <sup>つぎ</sup> 次の <sup>ぶつりがっかい</sup> 物理学会は、<sup>ひろしま</sup> 広島 <sup>にて</sup> <sup>かいさい</sup> 開催されます。

Tsugi no butsuri-gakkai wa, n. hiroshima nite kaisai sare-masu.

The next physics conference will be held in Hiroshima.

- B) <sup>きょう</sup> 今日の <sup>えんそく</sup> 遠足はここ <sup>にて</sup> <sup>かいさん</sup> 解散します。

Kyoo no ensoku wa n. koko nite kaisan shi-masu.

Today's school trip will be dismissed at this point.

- C) <sup>こんがっ</sup> 今学期はこれ <sup>にて</sup> おしまいになります。

Kon-gakki wa n. kore nite oshimai ni shi-masu.

With this, I conclude this semester.

2. Indicates a reason or motive for an action or occurrence.

English approximation: “due to ...” “owing to ...”

- A) <sup>きのう</sup> きのうは、<sup>かぜ</sup> 風邪 <sup>にて</sup> <sup>けっせき</sup> 欠席いたしました。

Kinoo wa n. kaze nite kesseki itashi-mashita.

I was absent yesterday due to a cold.

- B) <sup>わたくし</sup> 私の <sup>ふちゅうい</sup> 不注意 <sup>にて</sup> <sup>もう</sup> 申しわけありませんでした。

Watakushi no n. fuchuu nite mooshiwake-arimasen deshita.

I'm sorry, it was due to my carelessness.

## NO(N) の(ん)

### FUNDAMENTALS OF “NO の”

“No の” basically transforms a noun into a possessive. It functions like the “ ’s” in English. Placed between two nouns, the first noun together with the particle “no の” modifies the second. For example:

お父さん の ほん 本

otoosan no hon

my father 's book

お父さん の ほん 本

otoosan no hon

the book of my father

In Japanese, personal pronouns such as “watashi わたし,” “anata あなた,” “kanojo かのじょ 彼女,” etc. do not have cases, as in English. Particles must be attached in order to indicate the case of a personal pronoun. Examples with “no の” are: “watashi no わたしの (my),” “anata no あなたの (your),” “kanojo no かのじょ の (her),” etc., which are the genitive (possessive) case.

The particle “no の” is also used as an indefinite pronoun that is not followed by another noun. Compare:

わたし の ほん 本

watashi no hon

my book

わたし の

watashi no

mine

やす 安いリング

yasui ringo

an inexpensive apple

やすい の

yasui no

(an) inexpensive one

わたしが買った本

watashi ga katta hon

the book I bought

わたしが買ったの

watashi ga katta no

the one I bought

The following is an example of an exaggerated phrase with eight “no の” used to indicate the location of a book :

あそこ の 本棚 の 上 の 棚 の 右 の 方 の 大きい字引

asoko no hondana no ue no tana no migi no hoo no ookii jibiki

over there book shelves up shelf right toward big dictionary

の 隣 の 本

no tonari no hon

next book



The book next to the big dictionary on the right side of the upper shelf of the book shelves over there.

As you can see, all of the preceding words modify the last word, “hon 本.” In translating this phrase into English, you must begin with “hon 本” and proceed backwards all the way to “asoko あそこ.”

1. Placed between two nouns.

1) Indicates the possessive.

English approximation: “of” “belonging to” “with”

Examples:

きれいな眼 の 人

a person with beautiful eyes

kiree na me no hito

だいがく<sup>だいがく</sup>の<sup>きょうじゅ</sup>教授

daigaku [no] kyooju

a college professor (literally: a professor of a college)

ぎんこう<sup>ぎんこう</sup>の<sup>とうどり</sup>頭取

ginkoo [no] toodori

president of the bank

クラス<sup>クラス</sup>の<sup>い いん</sup>委員

kurasu [no] iin

a class representative

なみ<sup>なみ</sup>の<sup>おと</sup>音

nami [no] oto

the sound of waves

ちち<sup>ちち</sup>の<sup>くつ</sup>靴

chichi [no] kutsu

my father's shoes

せかい<sup>せかい</sup>の<sup>へい わ</sup>平和

sekai [no] heewa

world peace (literally: peace of the world)

A) これはあなた<sup>あなた</sup>の<sup>ほん</sup>本です。

Kore wa n. anata [no] hon desu.

This is your book.

B) わたし<sup>わたし</sup>の<sup>かばん</sup>の<sup>ちず</sup>中に地図があります。

n. Watashi [no] kaban [no] naka ni chizu ga ari-masu.

There is a map in my briefcase.

2) Indicates the relative location/direction of the first noun.

English approximation: "of"

テーブル<sup>テーブル</sup>の<sup>うえ</sup>上

teeburu [no] ue

on the table



つくえ<sup>した</sup>  
机<sup>の</sup>下

tsukue **no** shita

under the desk



がっこう<sup>となり</sup>  
学校<sup>の</sup>隣

gakkoo **no** tonari

next to the school

ゆうびんきょく<sup>まえ</sup>  
郵便局<sup>の</sup>前

yuubinkyoku **no** mae

in front of the post office

デパート<sup>よこ</sup>  
の横

depaato **no** yoko

to the side of the department store

わたし<sup>うしろ</sup>  
の後ろ

watashi **no** ushiro

behind me

あの<sup>おお</sup>大きいビル<sup>むか</sup>  
の向こう

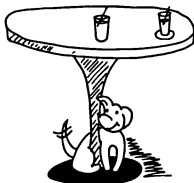
ano ookii biru **no** mukoo

beyond that big building

A) テーブル<sup>した</sup>  
の<sup>いぬ</sup>下に犬がいます。

n. Teeburu **no** shita ni inu ga i-masu.

There is a dog under the table.



B) 流し<sup>なか</sup>  
の<sup>こきり</sup>中にゴキブリがいるよ！

n. Nagashi **no** naka ni gokiburi ga iru yo!

There are cockroaches in the sink!



3) Placed between two nouns, indicates the material the latter is made of.

English approximation: “(made of)”

もめん  シャツ

a cotton shirt

momen  shatsu



けがわ  コート

a fur coat

kegawa  kooto



き  はし

a wooden bridge

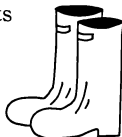
ki  hashi



ゴム  ブーツ

a pair of rubber boots

gomu  buutsu



A) わたしはきのう <sup>かわ</sup>  <sup>てぶくろ</sup> <sup>か</sup> 手袋を買いました。

Watashi wa kinoo n. kawa  tebukuro

o kai-mashita.

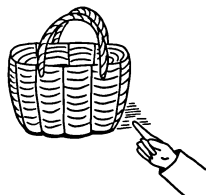
I bought a pair of leather gloves yesterday.



B) その <sup>たけ</sup>  かごはいくらですか？

Sono n. take  kago wa ikura desu ka?

How much is that bamboo basket?



- C) あのブロンズの<sup>ぞう</sup>像はだれの<sup>さく</sup>作ですか？

Ano n. buronzu [no] zoo wa dare no saku desu ka?

Whose work is that bronze statue?



- 4) Shows that the second noun is the product of the first personal noun.

English approximation: “of” “created by”

- A) これは川端康成<sup>かわばたやすなり</sup>の<sup>しょうせつ</sup>小説です。

Kore wa n. kawabata yasunari [no] shoosetsu desu.

This is a novel written by Kawabata Yasunari.

- B) この曲はマーラー<sup>まーらー</sup>の<sup>こうきょうきょくいちばん</sup>交響曲一番です。

Kono kyoku wa n. maaraa [no] kookyookyoku ichi-ban desu.

This is Mahler's First Symphony.

- 5) Indicates the relationship between the two nouns.

English approximation: “of” “by” “with” “between” “to”

- A) あの人はわたし<sup>ひと</sup>の<sup>おじ</sup>叔父です。

Ano hito wa n. watashi [no] oji desu.

That person is my uncle.

- B) 彼女は社長<sup>かのじょ</sup>の<sup>しやちやう</sup>秘書です。

Kanojo wa n. shachoo [no] hisho desu.

She is secretary to the president.

- C) あの人はわたしの<sup>いのち</sup>命<sup>おんじん</sup>の<sup>おんじん</sup>恩人です。

Ano hito wa watashi no n. inochi [no] onjin desu.

He saved my life. (literally: That person is the one who saved my

life.)

- 6) Establishes that the second noun is in the category of the first noun.

English approximation: “of” “on” “about” “at”

- A) 松岡先生は理科<sup>まつおかせんせい</sup>  <sup>りか</sup>  <sup>せんせい</sup> 先生です。

Matsuoka-sensee wa n. rika  sensee desu.

Mr. Matsuoka is a science teacher.

- B) これは日本語<sup>にほんご</sup>  <sup>きょうかしよ</sup> 教科書です。

Kore wa n. nihongo  kyookasho desu.

This is a Japanese language textbook.

- C) 万有引力<sup>ばんゆういんりよく</sup>  <sup>ほうそく</sup> 法則は、ニュートンによって発見<sup>はっけん</sup>された。

n. Banyuu-inryoku  hoosoku wa nyuuton ni yotte hakken-sareta.

The law of gravity was discovered by Isaac Newton.

- 7) Shows that the first noun is an attribute of the second noun.

English approximation: “that which is”

Examples:

親友<sup>しんゆう</sup>  次郎君<sup>じろうくん</sup> my best friend Jiro (literally: Jiro who  
shinyuu  jiroo-kun is my best friend)

九十歳<sup>きゅうじゅうさい</sup>  おばあさん an old woman of age ninety  
kyuujus-sai  obaasan

弁護士<sup>べんごし</sup>  清水先生<sup>しみずせんせい</sup> Mr. Shimizu, the attorney  
bengoshi  shimizu-sensee

おんがく ☐ でんどう  
音楽 ☐ 殿堂

the great music hall

ongaku ☐ dendoo

ピンク ☐ はな  
pinku ☐ hana

a pink flower (literally: the flower  
which is pink)

バラ ☐ はな  
bara ☐ hana

a rose (literally: the flower which is a  
rose)

- A) わたし こうちょう ☐ ばんどう もう  
私は、校長 ☐ 坂東と申します。

Watashi wa, n. koochoo ☐ bandoo to mooshi-masu.

I am Bando, the principal of this school.

- B) ピアニスト ☐ さとう しょうかい  
ピアノ ☐ 佐藤さんをご紹介します。

n. Pianisuto ☐ satoo-san o goshookai itashi-masu.

Let me introduce Ms. Sato, the pianist.

- 8) Where the first noun is a place name.

English approximation: “at” “in” “on” “over” “from” “of”

- A) ニューヨーク ☐ ふゆ さむい  
ニューヨーク ☐ 冬は寒いでしょうねえ。

n. Nyuuyooku ☐ fuyu wa samui deshoo nee.

Winter in New York must be very cold.

- B) あたみ ☐ かいがん  
熱海 ☐ 海岸はきれいですよ。

n. Atami ☐ kaigan wa kiree desu yo.

The coastline of Atami is beautiful.

- C) きょうと ☐ いとこ てがみ き  
京都 ☐ 従兄から手紙が来た。

n. Kyooto ☐ itoko kara tegami ga kita.

I received a letter from my cousin in Kyoto.

- 9) The first noun describes the state in which the second noun exists or has entered.

English approximation: “in”

- A) あのおじいさんはこうこつ ☐ <sup>ひと</sup>人になったそうだ。

Ano ojiisan wa n. kookotsu ☐ hito ni natta soo da.

They say that the old man has become senile.

- B) <sup>かのじょ</sup>彼女は <sup>はく い</sup>白衣 ☐ <sup>てん し</sup>天使です。

Kanojo wa n. hakui (byakue) ☐ tenshi desu.

She is an angel in a white uniform (a nurse).

- C) わたしは <sup>にほんご</sup>日本語 ☐ <sup>てがみ</sup>手紙 <sup>よ</sup>が読めます。

Watashi wa n. nihongo ☐ tegami ga yome-masu.

I can read a letter written in Japanese.

2. Accompanies some names of colors in order to transform them into adjectives.

English approximation: (the color of)

- A) あれは <sup>みどり</sup>緑 (色) ☐ <sup>くるま</sup>車です。

Are wa n. midori (iro) ☐ kuruma desu.

That is a green car.

- B) この <sup>むらさき</sup>紫 (色) ☐ <sup>はな</sup>花 <sup>なん</sup>は何といいますか？

Kono n. murasaki (iro) ☐ hana wa nan to ii-masu ka?

What is the name of this purple flower?

- C) <sup>きょう</sup>今日はこの <sup>ぐれー</sup>グレー ☐ <sup>こーと</sup>コート <sup>き</sup>を <sup>い</sup>着て行こう。

Kyoo wa kono n. guree ☐ kooto o kite ikoo.

I'll go out with this gray coat on today.

Names of colors ending in “i い” such as “shiro-i <sup>しろ</sup>白い,” and “aka-i <sup>あか</sup>赤い”

may drop the “い” and replace it with “no の,” i.e. “shiro no 白の” and “aka no 赤の.”

3. Placed after a noun, an adjective or a verb, functions as an indefinite pronoun.

English approximation: “one” “the one”

- A) お父さん の は、どこにあるのかな？

n. Otoosan no wa, doko ni aru no ka na?

Where is Dad's? (literally: Where is the one which belongs to Dad?)

- B) こっち の は甘いけど、そっち の は辛いよ。

n. Kocchi no wa amai kedo, n. socchi no wa karai yo.

The one over here is sweet, but the one over there is salty.

- C) わたし の はもう食べてしまったよ。

n. Watashi no wa moo tabete shimatta yo.

I've already finished eating mine.

- D) お刺身は新しい の がおいしい。

Osashimi wa adj. atarashii no ga oishii.

As for pieces of sashimi, fresh ones are good.

- E) その隅で泣いている の はだれ？

Soko no sumi de v. naite-iru no wa dare?

Who is the one crying in the corner over there?

- F) 僕、まだ寝る の はいやだよ。テレビ見たいから。

Boku, mada v. neru no wa iya da yo. Terebi mi-tai kara.

I don't want to go to bed yet. 'Cause I want to watch TV.

4. Placed after a noun indicating time.

English approximation: “of” “from”

- A) これは十年前<sup>じゅうねんまえ</sup>の<sup>しんぶん</sup>新聞だよ。

Kore wa n. juu-nen mae no shinbun da yo.

This is a newspaper from ten years ago.

- B) これから二十分<sup>にじゅうぶん</sup>の<sup>きゅうけい</sup>休憩があります。

Kore kara n. nijup-pun no kyuukee ga ari-masu.

We'll have a twenty-minute intermission now.

- C) 昔<sup>むかし</sup>の<sup>ひとたち</sup>人達はどんな生活<sup>せいかつ</sup>をしていたのだろう。

n. Mukashi no hito-tachi wa don-na seekatsu o shite-ita no daroo.

I wonder what kind of lives people lead in ancient times.

5. Used instead of the particle “ga が,” it marks the subject of the verb following it. Not translatable.

- A) 今日は風<sup>きょう かげ</sup>の<sup>ふ せむい ひ</sup>吹く寒い日ですね。

Kyoo wa n. kaze no fuku samui hi desu ne.

Today is a cold windy day, isn't it?

- B) 雨<sup>あめ</sup>の<sup>ふ</sup>降る日はうちの中<sup>なか</sup>で遊び<sup>あそ</sup>みましょう。

n. Ame no furu hi wa uchi no naka de asobi-mashoo.

On a rainy day, let's play inside the house.

- C) これは南部さん<sup>なんぶ</sup>の<sup>さく せき</sup>作曲した曲です。

Kore wa n. nanbu-san no sakkyoku-shita kyoku desu.

This is a piece composed by Ms. Nanbu.

6. In the patterns “... no yoo na ~のような” and “... no yoo ni ~のように,” makes an adjectival phrase or an adverbial phrase, respectively.

English approximation: “as” “such as” “like”

- A) 花<sup>はな</sup>に例<sup>たと</sup>えれば、彼女<sup>かのじょ</sup>は白百合<sup>しらゆり</sup>の<sup>ひと</sup>ような人です。

Hana ni tatoere ba, kanojo wa n. shira-yuri [no] yoo na hito desu.

If I were to describe her as a flower, she would be a white lily.

- B) 君<sup>きみ</sup>どうかしたの? 病人<sup>びょうにん</sup>の<sup>の</sup>ような青い顔<sup>あおのかお</sup>をして。

Kimi doo ka shita no? n. Byoo-nin [no] yoo na aoi kao o shite.

Is something wrong? You look pale like you are sick.

- C) この砂<sup>すな</sup>は砂糖<sup>きとう</sup>の<sup>の</sup>ように白<sup>しろ</sup>いね。

Kono suna wa n. satoo [no] yoo ni shiroi ne.

This sand looks white like sugar.

- D) 僕は鳥<sup>とり</sup>の<sup>の</sup>ように空<sup>そら</sup>を飛<sup>と</sup>んでみたい。

Boku wa n. tori [no] yoo ni sora o tonde mi-tai.

I want to fly in the sky like a bird.

7. Following a verb, gives it a nominal meaning of “a matter” or “a fact.”

The main verb of the sentence usually describes one of the five senses or emotion.

English approximation: “a fact” “a matter”

- A) 飛行機<sup>ひこうき</sup>が飛<sup>と</sup>んでいるの<sup>の</sup>が見<sup>み</sup>えます。

cl. Hikooki ga tonde-iru [no] ga mie-masu.

I can see an airplane flying in the sky.

- B) 犬<sup>いぬ</sup>のほえるの<sup>の</sup>が聞<sup>き</sup>こえる。

cl. Inu no hoeru [no] ga kikoeru.

I can hear a dog barking.



- C) 君<sup>きみ</sup>とよく遊<sup>あそ</sup>んだの<sup>の</sup>を思<sup>おも</sup>い出<sup>だ</sup>すね。

cl. Kimi to yoku asonda [no] o omoidasu ne.



I remember we used to play together all the time.

D) わたしはパスポートをなくした<sup>の</sup>に気が付いた。

cl. Watashi wa pasupooto o nakushita <sup>no</sup> ni ki-ga-tsuita.

I realized that I had lost my passport.

8. Placed at the end of a sentence.

1) Following a verb, makes a softened command. Often accompanied by

“yo よ” after it. Found in women’s language.

English approximation: “..., all right?”

A) さあ、これからお風呂に入る<sup>の(よ)</sup>。

Saa, kore kara ofuro ni v. hairu <sup>no (yo)</sup>.

You’re going to take a bath now.

B) 風邪だからおとなしく寝ている<sup>の(よ)</sup>。

Kaze dakara otonashiku v. nete-iru <sup>no (yo)</sup>.

You have a cold, so stay in bed.

2) Emphasizes the action or the state described.

English approximation: “the fact is that ...” “to tell the truth”

A) わたし、みよちゃんとけんかしちゃった<sup>の</sup>。

Watashi, miyo-chan to v. kenka-shi-chatta <sup>no</sup>.

(The fact is that) I had a quarrel with Miyo.

B) 友達が漫画の本を貸してくれた<sup>の</sup>。

Tomodachi ga manga no hon o v. kashite-kureta <sup>no</sup>.

(The fact is that) my friend lent me a comic book.

C) 僕がおなかすいたから、もう食べちゃった<sup>の</sup>。

Boku onaka ga suite kara, moo v. tabe-chatta <sup>no</sup>.

(To tell the truth) I’ve already eaten because I was hungry.

- 3) Transforms a sentence into an interrogative (with a rising intonation).

Informal version of “... no desu ka? ~のですか?” Not translatable.

- A) この手紙、君が書いたの？

Kono tegami kimi ga v. kaita no?

Was it you who wrote this letter?

- B) あした来ないの？

Ashita v. ko-nai no?

You are not coming tomorrow?

- C) この本もう読んじゃったの？

Kono hon moo v. yon-jatta no?

You've read this book already?

- 4) For casual emphasis. Used often by elderly men. Sometimes pronounced “noo のう.” Not translatable.

- A) おう、誠か、よく来たの。

Oo, makoto ka, yoku v. kita no.

Oh, it's you, Makoto, good of you to come.

- B) ありがたいことじゃ。今年は米が豊作で。

Arigatai koto ja. Kotoshi wa kome ga hoosaku e. de no.

Thank God. We have a good rice harvest this year.

9. In the pattern “... no ... no ~の~,” connects two contrasting actions/conditions.

English approximation: “(or)”

- A) 行くの行かないのと迷っていないで、早くどっちかに決めたら？

v. iku no v. ika-nai no to mayotte-inai de, hayaku docchi ka ni kimetara?

Instead of being indecisive whether or not to go, why don't you just decide whichever quickly?

- B) 寒い<sup>さむい</sup>の<sup>あつ</sup>暑い<sup>い</sup>の<sup>まいあさ</sup>と言ってないで、ジョギングは毎朝しなさい。  
 adj. Samui [no] adj. atsui [no] to itte-nai de, jogingu wa maiasa shinasai.

Don't complain about the weather being (too) hot or cold. You must go jogging every morning.

# 10. The contraction of "... no tokoro ~のところ." Colloquial expression.

English approximation: "of"

Examples:

僕<sup>ぼく</sup>の<sup>の</sup>うち      僕<sup>ぼく</sup>ん<sup>ん</sup>ち      my place

boku [no] uchi      boku- [n] chi

あなた<sup>あなた</sup>の<sup>の</sup>ところ      あんた<sup>あんた</sup>ん<sup>ん</sup>とこ      your place

anata [no] tokoro      anta- [n] toko

かのじょ<sup>かのじょ</sup>彼女<sup>彼女</sup>の<sup>の</sup>ところ      かのじょ<sup>かのじょ</sup>彼女<sup>彼女</sup>ん<sup>ん</sup>とこ      her place

kanojo [no] tokoro      kanojo- [n] toko

- A) お父<sup>とう</sup>さん、この算数<sup>さんすう</sup>の問題<sup>もんだい</sup> 難しく<sup>むずか</sup>くて、ここ<sup>ここ</sup>ん<sup>ん</sup>ところがわからないよ。

Otoosan, kono sansuu no mondai muzukashiku te, n. koko- [n] tokoro ga wakara-nai yo.

Dad, this math problem is hard, and I don't understand this part here.

- B) あ、僕<sup>ぼく</sup>砂浜<sup>すなはま</sup>ん<sup>ん</sup>とこ (ところ) に帽子<sup>ぼうし</sup>忘れてきちゃった。

A, boku n. sunahama- [n] toko (tokoro) ni booshi wasurete ki-chatta.

Oops, I forgot my hat on the beach (literally: at the place on the beach).

## NO-DA(N-DA) の-だ(ん-だ) Combination particle

A combination of the particle “no の” and the copula “da だ.” Colloquial form: “n da んだ.” Informal form of “no desu のです.” Past form “no datta のだった” is used mostly in written language with a slight exclamatory tone.

1. Emphasizes an explanation, or a cause of events/actions. Not translatable.

- A) あの大雪<sup>おおゆき</sup>で、わたしたちは歩くことさえ出来<sup>ある</sup>なかったのだ<sup>で き</sup>。

Ano ooyuki de, watashi-tachi wa aruku koto sae v. deki-nakatta  
no da .

It was impossible to even walk in such heavy snow.

- B) 長年外国<sup>ながねんがいこく</sup>に暮<sup>く</sup>らしていると、ますます日本食<sup>にほんしょく</sup>が恋<sup>こい</sup>しくなるのだ。

Naganen gaikoku ni kurashite-iru to, masu-masu nihon-shoku ga v. koishiku-naru no da .

The longer you live in a foreign country, the more you crave for Japanese food.

2. Expresses desire or will. Not translatable.

- A) 僕は今度こそ弁論大会<sup>べんろんたいかい</sup>で優勝<sup>ゆうしょう</sup>するのだ。

Boku wa kondo koso benron-taikai de v. yuushoo-suru no da .

This time I've got to win at the speech contest.

- B) この美術展<sup>びじゅつてん</sup>は見逃<sup>みのが</sup>せない。どんな事<sup>こと</sup>があっても絶対<sup>ぜったい</sup>に行くんだ。

Kono bijutsu-ten wa minogase-nai. Don-na koto ga atte mo zettai ni v. iku- **n da**.

I can't miss seeing this art exhibition. No matter what, I'm definitely going to go.

3. At the end of a sentence, as an exclamatory particle. Not translatable.

A) <sup>べんきょう</sup>勉強しないで<sup>あそ</sup>遊んでばかりいたから、<sup>い</sup>行きたい<sup>がっこう</sup>学校に<sup>はい</sup>入れなかった **のだ**。

Benkyoo-shi-nai de asonde bakari ita kara, iki-tai gakkoo ni v. haire-nakatta **no da**.

It's because you didn't study and fooled around all the time, you couldn't get into the school of your choice.

B) <sup>かれ</sup>彼は<sup>いそが</sup>忙しいのに、<sup>なが</sup>長い<sup>てがみ</sup>手紙をくれた **んだ**。すぐに<sup>へんじ</sup>返事を出さなくては。

Kare wa isogashii no ni nagai tegami o v. kureta- **n da**. Sugu ni henji o dasa-nakute wa.

Even though he is busy, he wrote me a long letter. I have to write back right away.

## NO-DAROO(N-DAROO) の-だろう(ん-だろう)

Combination particle

A combination of the particle “no の” and the copula “daroo だろう.”

Colloquial form: “n daroo nderou.” Suggests a reason or a cause, though it is uncertain.

English approximation: “is/are probably ..” “(I) wonder ...”

- A) <sup>いまわれわれ</sup>今我々にとって一番<sup>いちばん</sup>必要<sup>ひつよう</sup>なのは、公害<sup>こうがい</sup>問題<sup>もんだい</sup>の解決<sup>かいけつ</sup>な<sup>の</sup>の<sup>だ</sup>ら<sup>う</sup>。

Ima ware-ware ni totte ichiban hitsuyoo na no wa, koogai-mondai no kaiketsu na no daroo.

The most important thing right now is probably to solve the problem of pollution.

- B) どうした<sup>ん</sup>だ<sup>らう</sup>、もう三十<sup>さんじゅう</sup>分<sup>ぶん</sup>にもなるのに、彼女<sup>かのじょ</sup>はまだ<sup>もど</sup>戻<sup>もど</sup>ってこない。

Doo v. shita- n daroo, moo sanjup-pun ni mo naru no ni, kanojo wa mada modotte ko-nai.

I wonder what happened to her? It's already been half an hour, she hasn't come back yet.

## NODE(N-DE) ので (んで)

Colloquial form: “n de んで”

Note: “node ので” vs. “kara から.” While both are translated into English as “since/because,” “node ので” is employed more often in describing a reason or a cause that is objective, or already present and beyond the control of the speaker. “Kara から” is used to express the speaker's will, command, conjecture, or question. Compare:

- A) <sup>きょう</sup>今日は<sup>あなた</sup>暖<sup>あたた</sup>かい<sup>ので</sup>、<sup>さくら</sup>桜も<sup>まんかい</sup>満開になるでしょう。

Kyoo wa adj. atatakai node, sakura mo mankai ni naru deshoo.

Since it is warm today, the cherry blossoms will likely be in full bloom.

- B) <sup>くるま</sup>車<sup>か</sup>を買<sup>か</sup>いたい<sup>から</sup>、<sup>ちよきん</sup>貯金<sup>ちよきん</sup>をしています。

Kuruma o v. kai-tai kara chokin o shite-imasu.

Because I want to buy a car, I am saving up.

This distinction is sometimes very thin, and “kara から” and “node ので” can on occasion be used interchangeably.

1. Indicates a reason or a cause.

English approximation: “since” “because”

- A) <sup>あか</sup>赤ちゃんが<sup>う</sup>生まれたので(んで)、<sup>およろこ</sup>みんなで大喜びしています。

Akachan ga v. umareta node(n de), min-na de oo-yorokobi shite-imasu.

Everyone is very happy, because the baby was born.

- B) その料理は、<sup>りょうり</sup>思ったより<sup>おも</sup>おいしくなかったので(んで)、<sup>ひとくち</sup>一口しか<sup>た</sup>食べませんでした。

Sono ryoori wa, omotta yori <sup>adj.</sup>oishiku-nakatta node(n de), hito-kuchi shika tabe-masen deshita.

Since that dish wasn't as good as I thought it would be, I didn't eat more than a bite.

2. In the patterns “to yuu node <sup>い</sup>と言うので” and “a(n)mari ... node あ(ん)まり〜ので.”

English approximation: “because (someone) said ... ” “since it was so ...”

- A) <sup>かれ</sup>彼が<sup>びじゅつかん</sup>美術館に<sup>い</sup>行きたいと言うので(んで)、<sup>あんない</sup>案内してあげました。

Kare ga bijutsukan ni iki-tai to v. yuu node(n de), an-nai-shite age-mashita.

Because he said he wanted to go to a museum, I took him around.

- B) あんまり<sup>さむ</sup>寒いので(んで)、ストーブをつけました。

Anmari <sup>adj.</sup>samui node (n de), sutoobu o tsuke-mashita.

Since it was so cold, I turned on the heater.

3. Placed at the end of a sentence, preceded by a reason for an action described in the first part of the sentence.

English approximation: (because)

- A) 彼のアパートへ行ったの、どうしても来てもらいたいと言う  
[ので(んで)]。

Kare no apaato e itta no, dooshitemo kite morai-tai to v. yuu  
[node (n de)] .

I went to his apartment, (because) he said he really wanted me to come over.

- B) もう寝るよ、あしたの朝が早い [ので(んで)]。

Moo neru yo, ashita no asa ga adj. hayai [node (n de)] .

I'm going to go to sleep now, (because) I have to get up early tomorrow morning.

## NO-DE の-で Combination particle

A combination of the particles “no の” and “de で.”

English approximation: “by/from the fact that ...”

- A) 彼女が いい先生であることは、学生達に評判がいい [ので] わかる。

Kanojo ga ii sensee de aru koto wa, gakusee-tachi ni hyooban  
ga adj. ii [no de] waku.

That she is a good teacher can be gathered from the fact that students say good things about her.

- B) この町の空気がよくないことは、スモッグの日が多い [ので] わかる。



Kono machi no kuuki ga yoku-nai koto wa, sumoggu no hi ga  
adj. ooi no de wakaru.

That this town's air isn't very clean is obvious by the fact that  
there are many days with smog.

## NO-DE ARU の-である Combination particle

A combination of the particle “no の” and the copula “de aru である.”  
Emphatically expresses a reason or a cause. Mainly used in written lan-  
guage. (See p. 164 “no desu のです.”)

English approximation: (because)

- A) <sup>もの</sup>物が<sup>お</sup>落ちるのは、<sup>ちきゅう</sup>地球に<sup>いんりょく</sup>引力があるからな のである。

Mono ga ochiru no wa, chikyuu ni inryoku ga aru kara c. na  
no de aru .

The reason why things fall is because the earth has gravity.

- B) <sup>むかし</sup>昔、<sup>きょうりゅう</sup>恐竜が<sup>す</sup>住んでいたのがわかったのは、<sup>かせき</sup>化石が<sup>はっけん</sup>発見されたからな  
のである。

Mukashi, kyooryuu ga sunde-ita no ga wakatta no wa, kaseki  
ga hakken sareta kara c. na no de aru .

The reason why we know that there were dinosaurs long ago is  
because fossils were discovered.

## NO-DESHOO(N-DESHOO) の-でしょう(ん-でしょう)

Combination particle

A combination of the particle “no の” and the copula “deshoo でしょう.”

Colloquial form: “n deshoo ndereshoo.”

English approximation: “perhaps it’s because ...”

- A) 今日はお盆だから、店が開いていないの(ん)でしょうか?

Kyoo wa obon da kara, mise ga v. aite i-nai no deshoo ka?

Perhaps it’s because today is the day of the Obon ceremony that stores are not open?

- B) あなたは、わたしに会いたくて来たの(ん)でしょう?

Anata wa, watashi ni ai-taku te v. kita n deshoo?

Perhaps it’s because you wanted to see me that you came over, isn’t it?

## NO-DESU(N-DESU) の-です(ん-です) Combination particle

A combination of the particle “no の” and the copula “desu です.”

Formal form of “no da のだ.” Colloquial form: “n desu nderesu.”

1. Emphasizes a statement. Not translatable.

- A) 子供達を守るの(ん)は、わたしたち大人の責任な(ん)です。

Kodomo-tachi o mamoru no wa, watashi-tachi otona no  
sekinin c. na no(n) desu.

It is our responsibility as adults to protect (our) children.

- B) ゆうべお酒を飲みすぎたせいか頭が痛い(ん)です。

Yuube osake o nomi-sugita see ka atama ga adj. itai no(n) desu.

Perhaps because I had too much to drink last night, my head hurts.

2. Emphasizes a question. Not translatable.

- A) あなたは、いつになったら貸したお金を返してくれるの(ん)ですか？

Anata wa, itsu ni nattara kashita okane o v. kaeshite-kureru  
no(n) desu ka?

When are you going to pay me back the money you owe?

- B) だいじ 大事なつぼをこわしてしまって、どうしてくれるんですか。

Daiji na tsubo o kowashite shimatte, doo v. shite-kureru-  
n desu ka.

(You) broke a treasured vase, what are you going to do about it?

3. In the past tense form “no deshita のでした,” gives a description as an explanation for an action.

English approximation: “(it so happened that …)”

- A) 感動的なスピーチに、聴衆は心から拍手を送ったのでした。

Kandoo-teki na supiichi ni, cl. chooshuu wa kokoro kara haku-  
shu o okutta no deshita.

After the moving speech, (it so happened that) the audience gave their wholehearted applause.

- B) かわいそうに、しゅじん 主人が死んだことも知らずに、そのいぬ 犬はまいにちえき 駅まで迎えに行っていたのでした。

Kawaisoo ni, shujin ga shinda koto mo shirazu ni, cl. sono inu  
wa mainichi eki made mukae ni itte-ita no deshita.

Not knowing that its master had died, (it so happened that) that poor dog went to the station to meet him every day.

## NOMI のみ

Mainly used in written language; in colloquial speech, “dake だけ” or “bakari ばかり” are usually used instead.

1. Excludes other possibilities and establishes a limit.

English approximation: “only”

- A) この村<sup>むら</sup>のみ<sup>のみ</sup>が、水害<sup>すいがい</sup>に遭<sup>あ</sup>わなかった。

n. Kono mura **nomi** ga, suigai ni awa-nakatta.

Only this village escaped the damages from the flood.

- B) 一度<sup>いちど</sup>や二度<sup>にど</sup>のテスト<sup>の</sup>のみ<sup>のみ</sup>で、学生<sup>がくせい</sup>を評価<sup>ひょうか</sup>してはいけない。

Ichido ya ni-do no n. tesuto **nomi** de, gakusee o hyooka-shite wa ike-nai.

(You) must not judge students based only on one or two exams.

2. In the pattern “nomi narazu のみならず.”

English approximation: “not only ...”

- A) この水族館<sup>すいぞくかん</sup>には、深海魚<sup>しんかいぎょ</sup>のみ<sup>のみ</sup>ならず、熱帯魚<sup>ねったいぎょ</sup>もいる。

Kono suizokkan ni wa, n. shinkai-gyo **nomi** narazu, nettai-gyo mo iru.

In this aquarium, there are not only deep-sea fish but also tropical fish.

- B) 彼女<sup>かのじょ</sup>は教授<sup>きょうじゅ</sup>としてのみ<sup>のみ</sup>ならず、作家<sup>さっか</sup>としても活躍<sup>かつやく</sup>している。

Kanojo wa ph. kyooju to shite **nomi** narazu, sakka to shite mo katsuyaku-shite-iru.

She is active not only as a professor but also as a writer.

3. Placed at or near the end of a sentence for emphasis. The implication

is that there is only one alternative which is not exactly desirable but unchangeable.

English approximation: “only”

- A) どうか父が生きて帰って来るようにとただ祈る のみ。

Dooka chichi ga ikite kaette kuru yoo ni to tada v. inoru nomi.

(I) can only pray that (my) father will come back alive.

- B) 水不足はいよいよ深刻だ。あとはただ雨が降るのを待つ のみ だ。

Mizu-busoku wa iyo-iyō shinkoku da. Ato wa tada ame ga furu no o v. matsu nomi da.

The water shortage is really serious. The only thing we can do now is to wait for the rain to fall.

## NONI のに

1. Adversative usage, with an implied tone of surprise or dissatisfaction.

Also in the patterns “to yuu noni というのに” and “ii noni いいのに.”

English approximation: “although” “but” “even though”

- A) あら、もう三杯も食べた のに、またおかわり？

Ara, moo san-bai mo v. tabeta noni, mata okawari?

My goodness, you’ve already had three helpings, but you want another one?

- B) わたしの帽子、確かにここに置いた のに、ないわ。

Watashi no booshi, tashika ni koko ni v. oita noni, nai wa.

I know I definitely put my hat here, but it’s gone.

- C) 夏休みだという のに、宿題がたくさんあって遊びに行けない。

Natsu-yasumi da to v. yuu noni, shukudai ga takusan atte asobi ni ike-nai.

Even though it's summer vacation, (I) can't go out to play because (I) have too much homework. (literally: Even though it is called "summer vacation.")

2. Expresses dissatisfaction or resentment toward an unexpected situation.

English approximation: "(if ...), can/would do ..., (but ...)"

A) <sup>きみ</sup>君が<sup>く</sup>来るとわかってい<sup>ば</sup>れば、<sup>ぼく</sup>僕、<sup>うち</sup>うちに<sup>いた</sup>いた のに。

Kimi ga kuru to wakatte ire ba, boku, uchi ni v. ita noni.

If I had known that you were coming over, I would have been home, (but)...

B) もう<sup>ひゃくえん</sup>百円あれば、この<sup>ほん</sup>本が<sup>か</sup>買える のに なあ。

Moo hyaku-en are ba, kono hon ga v. kaeru noni naa.

If only I had one hundred more yen, I could buy this book, (but)...

3. In rebuking the party addressed for a fault or wrongdoing.

English approximation: "even though"

A) <sup>た</sup>食べないの？ <sup>せ</sup>せっか<sup>く</sup>く作<sup>つ</sup>った のに。

Tabe-nai no? Sekkaku v. tsukutta noni.

You're not going to eat it, even though I went to the trouble of making it?

## NO-NI の-に Combination particle

A combination of the particles “no の” and “ni に.”

1. Indicates the method by which an end is to be achieved.

English approximation: “in order to ...” “in doing ...”

- A) <sup>にほんご</sup>日本語がもっと<sup>じょうず</sup>上手に<sup>はな</sup>話せるようになる **のに** は、どうしたらいいですか？

Nihon-go ga motto joozu ni hanaseru yoo ni v. naruru **no ni** wa, doo shitara ii desu ka?

In order to become a better speaker of Japanese, what should I do?

- B) <sup>やまある</sup>山歩きをする **のに** は、<sup>むし</sup>虫よけを<sup>も</sup>持って<sup>い</sup>行<sup>い</sup>ったほうがいいよ。

Yama-aruki o v. suru **no ni** wa, mushi-yoke o motte-itta hoo ga ii yo.

In order to hike mountains, it would be better to bring an insect repellent.

2. Indicates the means or material with which something is to be achieved.

English approximation: “for (i.e. as a means for doing ...)”

- A) この<sup>はこ</sup>箱、<sup>ほん</sup>本を<sup>い</sup>入れる **のに** ちょうどいいね。

Kono hako, hon o v. ireru **no ni** choodo ii ne.

This box is perfect for putting books in, (isn't it)?

- B) この<sup>ちよきん</sup>貯金、<sup>りょこう</sup>旅行する **のに** <sup>すこ</sup>少し<sup>た</sup>足りないわね。

Kono chokin, v. ryokoo-suru **no** ni sukoshi tari-nai wa ne.

These savings aren't quite enough for going on a trip, (don't you think)?

## O (WO) を

### FUNDAMENTALS OF “O を”

First, note that the particle “o” is always written “を,” even though its pronunciation is shown as “o.” See below.

Examples:

A) これ<sup>みつ</sup>を三つください。 Give me three of these.

Kore <sup>o</sup> mittsu kudasai.

B) 落とし<sup>かね</sup>たお金<sup>ひろ</sup>を拾いました。

Otoshita okane <sup>o</sup> hiroi-mashita.

I had dropped the money I picked up

I picked up the money I had dropped.

Basically, “o を” always follows a noun or a nominal which is the direct object of a transitive verb.

Example:

わたしは ケーキ<sup>を</sup>食べました。

Watashi wa keeki <sup>o</sup> tabe-mashita.

I cake ate

I ate (a piece of) cake.  
subject transitive verb object





However, some transitive verbs in English take the particle “ga が” instead of “o を” in Japanese. Such verbs are not numerous, and some examples are:

**hoshii** (desu) ほしい(です) (to want)

**iru** いる (to need)

**kikoeru** 聞こえる (to be able to hear)

**kirai** (desu) 嫌い(です) (to dislike)

**mieru** 見える (to be able to see)

**suki** (desu) 好き(です) (to like)

**wakaru** わかる (to understand)

Examples:

A) あなたはおすし が<sup>す</sup>好きですか？

Anata wa osushi ga suki desu ka?

Do you like sushi?

B) あなたは何 が<sup>なに</sup>いますか？

Anata wa nani ga iri-masu ka?

What do you need?

C) 君はどれ が<sup>きみ</sup>わからないの？

Kimi wa dore ga wakara-nai no?

Which is the one you don't understand?

D) あそこに山 が<sup>やま</sup>見えます。

Asoko ni yama ga mie-masu.

I see a mountain over there.

Another point concerning the particle “o を” is that certain intransitive

verbs which do not require objects in English are expressed in Japanese as a set pattern: “noun + o を + transitive verb.”

For example:

Literally:

- I ski.      わたしはスキー を します。      I do skiing.  
Watashi wa skii o shi-masu.
- I jog.      わたしはジョギング を します。      I do jogging.  
Watashi wa joggingu o shi-masu.
- I study.      わたしは<sup>べんきょう</sup>勉強 を します。      I do studying.  
Watashi wa benkyoo o shi-masu.
- I sweated.      わたしは<sup>あせ</sup>汗 を かきました。      I was in a sweat.  
Watashi wa ase o kaki-mashita.

1. In relation to the type of verb in a sentence:
- 1) Placed after a noun, marks it as the direct object of the verb. Not translatable.

A) コーヒー を <sup>の</sup>飲みましょう。

n. Koohii o nomi-mashoo.

Let's have coffee.

B) わたしは、きのう、おいしい<sup>てん</sup>天ぷら を <sup>た</sup>食べました。

Watashi wa, kinoo, oishii n. tenpura o tabe-mashita.

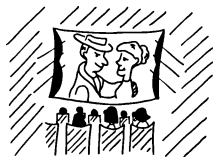
I had very good tempura yesterday.



- C) 僕はおとといフランス映画を見た。

Boku wa ototoi furansu n. eega o mita.

I saw a French movie the day before yesterday.



- D) あした妹に電話かけます。

Ashita imooto ni n. denwa o kake-masu.

(I'll call my younger sister tomorrow.



- E) 先週デパートで素敵な靴を買いました。

Senshuu depaato de suteki na n. kutsu o kai-mashita.

(I) bought a pair of very nice shoes at the department store last week.

- 2) Placed after a noun which is the direct object of a transitive verb ending in the pattern "... tai たい (want to)," "... taku-nai たくない (don't want to)," "... takatta かった (wanted to)," "... taku-nakatta かなかった (didn't want to)," as shown below. In these cases, "ga が" can be used instead of "o を" to add slightly more emphasis. Not translatable.

- A) 僕はお酒を(か)飲みたいです。

Boku wa n. osake o (ga) nomi-tai-n desu.

I want to drink sake.

B) わたしはアイスクリーム を(が) <sup>た</sup>食べたい。

Watashi wa <sub>n.</sub> aisu-kuriimu o (ga) tabe-tai.

I want to have ice cream.

- 3) Placed after a noun in a sentence with a causative verb, indicates that a person/thing causes/caused another person/thing to do something. A couple of examples of the causative form of a verb are as follows. Not translatable.

Dictionary form

Causative form

<sup>く</sup>来る (to come)

(を) <sup>こ</sup>来させる (to make someone come)

kuru

ko-saseru

<sup>い</sup>行く (to go)

(を) <sup>い</sup>行かせる (to make someone go)

iku

ika-seru

A) <sup>むすめ</sup>娘にピアノ を <sup>なら</sup>習わせています。

Musume ni <sub>n.</sub> piano o narawasete-imasu.

I'm making my daughter take piano lessons.

B) <sup>びょういん</sup>病院 <sup>なか</sup>の中では、<sup>こどもたち</sup>子供達 を <sup>はし</sup>走らせないようにしてください。

Byooin no naka de wa, <sub>n.</sub> kodomo-tachi o hashirase-nai yoo ni shite kudasai.

Don't allow children to run around in the hospital.

- 4) Placed after a noun which is the direct object of a verb in the passive form "... reru(... re-masu) ~れる(~れます)," "... rareru(... rare-masu) ~られる(~られます)," indicates that the subject of the sentence receives an action from the other party. Not translatable.

A) わたしは先生に名前 を <sup>よ</sup>呼ばれた。

Watashi wa sensee ni <sub>n.</sub> namae o yobareta.

I was called on by my teacher.

- B) わたしは猫に魚<sup>ねこ さかな</sup>を<sup>と</sup>取られた。

Watashi wa neko ni n. sakana ☐ torareta.

My fish was taken by a cat.



2. In the pattern “... o shite-iru ~をしている (... o shite-imasu ~をしています)” after a noun indicating an occupation, shows that the subject of the sentence is engaged in that occupation. Not translatable.

- A) わたしは社長の秘書<sup>しゃちょう ひしょ</sup>を<sup>し</sup>しています。

Watashi wa shachoo no n. hisho ☐ shite-imasu.

I work as a secretary to the company president.



- B) 父は先生<sup>ちち せんせい</sup>を<sup>し</sup>しています。

Chichi wa n. sensee ☐ shite-imasu.

My father is a teacher.

3. Indicates the point of departure, both in the concrete and the abstract sense.

English approximation: “(at)” “(from)”

- A) あなたは毎朝何時<sup>まいあさなんじ</sup>にうちを<sup>で</sup>出ますか？

Anata wa maiasa nan-ji ni n. uchi ☐ de-masu ka?

What time do you leave home every morning?

- B) あしたローマを<sup>な</sup>発ってパリに<sup>い</sup>行きます。

Ashita n. rooma ☐ tatte pari ni iki-masu.

I'm leaving Rome for Paris tomorrow.

- C) 地下鉄<sup>ちかてつ</sup>を<sup>お</sup>降りてから、タクシーでうちに帰<sup>かえ</sup>りました。

n. Chikatetsu ☐ orite kara, takushii de uchi ni kaeri-mashita.

After I got off the subway, I went home by taxi.

- E) あなたはいつこの大学<sup>だいがく</sup>を<sup>そつぎょう</sup>卒業しますか？

Anata wa itsu kono daigaku ☐ sotsugyoo-shi-masu ka?

When will you be graduating from this university?

4. Used with a verb of motion, indicates that an action is continued at the place preceding it.

English approximation: “on” “through”

Some examples of verbs of motion are:

doraibu-suru ドライブする (to drive)

hashiru <sup>はし</sup>走る (to run)

hau はう (to creep)

iku <sup>い</sup>行く (to go)

toori-sugiru <sup>とおす</sup>通り過ぎる (to pass through)

wataru <sup>わた</sup>渡る (to cross)

- A) わたしはスロープを<sup>すべ</sup>滑りました。

Watashi wa n. suroopu ☐ suberi-mashita.

I slid down the slope.

- B) あなたはどの道<sup>みち</sup>を<sup>とお</sup>通ってここへ来<sup>き</sup>ましたか？

Anata wa dono n. michi ☐ tootte koko e ki-mashita ka?

Which road did you take to get here?

- C) わたし達は、広い海<sup>ひろい</sup>の上<sup>うみ</sup>を<sup>うへ</sup>走<sup>はし</sup>るハイウェイ<sup>を</sup>ドライブしました。

Watashi-tachi wa hiroi umi no n. ue ☐ hashiru n. haiuee ☐

doraibu-shi-mashita.

We drove on a highway running over a wide stretch of ocean.

5. Used in some set phrases such as “... o hajime to shite ～をはじめとして (including, foremost),” “... o hittoo ni ～を筆頭に (from the top down),” “kore o ki ni これを機に (taking this opportunity).”

- A) 卒業式には、父兄<sup>そつぎょうしき</sup> をはじめとして、大勢の来賓<sup>おおぜい らいひん</sup>が出席<sup>しゅっせき</sup>した。

Sotsugyoo-shiki ni wa, n. fukee  hajime to shite, oozee no raihin ga shusseki-shita.

Many guests, including family members, attended the graduation ceremony.

- B) この会社<sup>かいしゃ</sup>では、社長<sup>しゃちょう</sup> を筆頭<sup>ひつとう</sup>に毎朝<sup>まいあさ</sup>体操<sup>たいそう</sup>をしています。

Kono kaisha de wa, n. shachoo  hittoo ni maiasa taisoo o shite-imasu.

At this firm, everyone from the president on down does exercises every morning.

- C) これ を<sup>き</sup>機<sup>きんえん</sup>に禁煙<sup>きんえん</sup>をしよう。

n. Kore  ki ni kin-en o shiyoo.

Let me take this opportunity to quit smoking.

## SA さ

Placed at the end of a sentence.

1. Emphasizes the sentence. Casual usage. Not translatable.

- A) ゆうべ徹夜<sup>てつや</sup>したんだもの、眠い<sup>ねむい</sup>のは当たり前<sup>あたりまえ</sup> さ。

Yuube tetsuya-shita-n da mono, nemui no wa n. atarimae  sa.

You stayed up all night last night, so it's natural (indeed) that

you're sleepy.

- B) 頭痛がひどいって？ ゆうべあんなに飲んだんだもの。罰が当たったの  
さ。

Zutsuu ga hidoi te? Yuube an-na ni nonda-n da mono. Bachi  
ga atatta p. no sa.

Your headache is really bad? You drank so much last night, you  
are (indeed) paying the price.

2. After interrogative pronouns or a phrase containing an interrogative  
pronoun, emphasizes the question in a fairly brusque manner. Not trans-  
latable.

- A) じゃあ、だれに聞いたらしいのさ。

Jaa, dare ni kiitara ii p. no sa.

(So) who do you want me to ask, then?

- B) なにさ、返事もしないで。

n. Nani sa, henji mo shi-nai de.

What's with you), that (you) don't even answer me.

3. In the patterns “te sa てさ” and “to sa とさ,” introduces something that  
was said by someone else.

English approximation: “..., (I hear, he/she said)”

- A) 太田君、来月ロサンゼルスに転勤だってさ。

Oota-kun, raigetsu rosanzerusu ni tenkin p. datte sa.

Ota is going to be transferred to Los Angeles next month, I hear.

- B) それから王子様と王女様は幸せに暮らしましたとさ。

Sore kara ooji-sama to oojo-sama wa shiawase ni kurashi-  
mashita p. to sa.



The Prince and Princess lived happily ever after, it is said.

## SAE さえ

1. Cites an extreme example to make a comment on the norm. Often accompanied by a negative, or in the “sae ... dakara さえ～(だ)から” pattern.

English approximation: “even”

- A) この魚は、猫<sup>ねこ</sup> **さえ** 見<sup>み</sup>向<sup>む</sup>きもしないよ。

Kono sakana wa, n. neko **sae** mimuki mo shi-nai yo.

Even cats wouldn't look twice at this fish.

- B) たった一つ<sup>ひとつ</sup>の間違<sup>まちが</sup>いで **さえ** ずいぶん<sup>き</sup>差<sup>さ</sup>がでてしまう。

Tatta hitotsu no machigai p. de **sae** zuibun sa ga dete shimau.

Even a single mistake can make a big difference.

2. Indicates that if one criterion is fulfilled, all conditions will be fulfilled.

English approximation: “if only” “only if”

- A) 時間<sup>じかん</sup> **さえ** あれば、歌舞伎<sup>かぶき</sup>も見<sup>み</sup>たいのですか。

n. Jikan **sae** are ba, kabuki mo mi-tai no desu ga.

If only I had time, I would like to see a kabuki performance, as well, (but)...

- B) お宅様<sup>たくさま</sup> **さえ** よろしければ、今晚<sup>こんばん</sup>家内<sup>かない</sup>とお邪魔<sup>じゃま</sup>したいと思うのですか。

n. Otaku-sama **sae** yoroshikere ba, konban kanai to ojama shi-tai to omou no desu ga.

I would like to come over with my wife this evening, only if it's convenient for you.

3. Shows that something exists in addition to something else. Often in a “... bakari de naku ... sae 〜ばかりでなく〜さえ” pattern.

English approximation: “(not only ..., but) ... also”

- A) どうしたのかしら、この猫<sup>ねこ</sup>。お魚<sup>さかな</sup>ばかりじゃなく、大好物<sup>だいこうぶつ</sup>のミルク  
[さえ] 飲<sup>の</sup>まないのよ。

Doo shita no kashira, kono neko. Osakana bakari ja naku,  
dai-koobutsu no n. miruku [sae] noma-nai no yo.

I wonder what's wrong with this cat? Not only is she not eating  
fish, but she's also not drinking milk, which she loves.

- B) 昔<sup>むかし</sup>と違<sup>ちが</sup>って、今<sup>いま</sup>は、夏<sup>なつ</sup>ばかりでなく、冬<sup>ふゆ</sup>で [さえ] ナスやキュウリが  
食<sup>た</sup>べられます。

Mukashi to chigatte, ima wa, natsu bakari de naku, fuyu p. de  
[sae] nasu ya kyuuri ga taberare-masu.

Unlike the old days, now we can eat eggplants and cucumbers not  
only in summer but also in winter.

## SHI し

1. In citing a list, emphasizes the items listed, in a “... shi ... shi 〜し〜し” pattern.

English approximation: “... and ...”

- A) 職<sup>しよく</sup>は失<sup>うしな</sup>う [し]、妻<sup>つま</sup>とは別<sup>わか</sup>れる [し]、彼<sup>かれ</sup>はひどく元氣<sup>げんき</sup>がない。

Shoku wa v. ushinau [shi], tsuma to wa v. wakareru [shi], kare  
wa hidoku genki ga nai.

He has lost his job, (and) he has split with his wife; he's very

depressed.

- B) 地震でうちはこわれる [し]、洪水で畑は駄目になる [し]、どうしたらいいのかわからない。

Jishin de uchi wa v. kowareru [shi], koozui de hatake wa dame ni v. naru [shi], doo shitara ii no ka wakara-nai.

The house was wrecked by the earthquake, and the fields were ruined because of the flood; I don't know what to do.

2. In a list, shows that the items or situations listed are the reasons or basis for another action or condition.

English approximation: "... (and)..., so ..."

- A) 風は強い [し]、雪は降り出した [し]、今日は出かけるのはやめましようよ。

Kaze wa adj. tsuyoi [shi], yuki wa v. furi-dashita [shi], kyoo wa dekakeru no wa yame-mashoo yo.

It's very windy, and it's started to snow, so let's not go out today.

- B) もうこんな時間だ [し]、あしたにしようよ。

Moo kon-na jikan c. da [shi], ashita ni shi yoo yo.

It's already this late, so let's put it off until tomorrow.

3. Lists two conflicting items or situations.

English approximation: "... but ..."

- A) 新しい洋服は欲しい [し]、お金はない [し]、学生のふところは寂しいなあ。

Atarashii yoofuku wa v. hoshii [shi], okane wa adj. nai [shi], gakusee no futokoro wa sabishii naa.

I want some new clothes, but I don't have money (for them); a

student's budget is pretty sad.

- B) 歯は痛い 、歯医者には行きたくない 、困ったよ。

Ha wa <sub>adj.</sub> itai  shi, haisha ni wa <sub>v.</sub> iki-taku-nai  shi, komatta yo.

I have a toothache, but I don't want to go to a dentist; I'm in a bind.

4. In the pattern “aru mai shi あるまいし.”

English approximation: “it's not as if ...”

- A) 夏でもあるまい 、薄いシャツ一枚で。寒くないの？

Natsu de mo <sub>ph.</sub> aru mai  shi, usui shatsu ichi-mai de. Samukunai no?

It's not as if it's summer, (and you're wearing) only a thin shirt.

Aren't you cold?

- B) 大金持ちでもあるまい 、あんなにぜいたくな生活をしていてお金が続くのかしら？

Oo-ganemochi de mo <sub>ph.</sub> aru mai  shi, an-nani zeetaku na seekatsu o shite ite okane ga tsuzuku no kashira?

It's not as if (she's) a millionaire. I wonder if her money's going to last, living the luxurious lifestyle she does.

## SHIKA しか

Always followed by a negative; negates everything else except that which precedes it.

1. Placed after a noun.

English approximation: “(not) any more (than)” “only (this) and nothing else”

- A) 期末テストまで、後たった一週間<sup>あと いっしゅうかん</sup> しか ありません。

Kimatsu-tesuto made, ato tatta <sub>n.</sub> is-shuukan shika ari-masen.

There's only a week left until final exams. (literally: Until final exams, there isn't any more (time) than a week left.)

- B) お母さん、今日のおやつこれ<sup>かあ きょう</sup> しか ないの？

Okaasan, kyoo no oyatsu <sub>n.</sub> kore shika nai no?

Mom, is this all there is for snacks today? (literally: Mom, is there only this and nothing else for snacks today?)

2. Placed after a verb, sets limit on the extent of the action.

English approximation: "there is no choice but"

- A) セミナーのレポートの締め切り<sup>し きり</sup>はあさって。こうなったら徹夜<sup>てつや</sup>する  
しか ない。

Seminaa no repooto no shimekiri wa asatte. Koo nattara

<sub>v.</sub> tetsuya-suru shika nai.

The deadline for the seminar report is the day after tomorrow.

Now I have no choice but to work on it all night long.

- B) 財布を盗<sup>さいふぬす</sup>まれたから、歩いて帰<sup>あるかえ</sup>る しか ない。

Saifu o nusumareta kara, aruite <sub>v.</sub> kaeru shika nai.

Because my wallet was stolen, I have no choice but to walk home.

## SHIMO しも

1. In set patterns such as "mada shimo まだしも" and "ori shimo おりしも"; emphatic. Not translatable.

- A) 英語<sup>えいご</sup>ならまだ しも、ドイツ語<sup>ご</sup>なんて全然<sup>ぜんぜん</sup>わからないよ。

Eego nara adv. mada shimo, doitsu-go nan te zenzen wakara-nai yo.

English is one thing, but I don't understand German at all.

- B) ゆうだち夕立がやんで、おり折しもそら うつく にじ空に美しい虹がかかった。

Yuudachi ga yande, n. ori shimo sora ni utsukushii niji ga kakatta.

The rainstorm ended, and at that time, a beautiful rainbow appeared across the sky.

2. In the pattern “dare shimo だれしも.”

English approximation: “anyone” “everyone”

- A) それはだれしもかんが考え付くことだ。

Sore wa n. dare shimo kangae-tsuku koto da.

That is something anyone can think of.

- B) だれだれしもし死ぬのはこわい。

n. Dare shimo shinu no wa kowai.

Everyone is afraid of death.

3. In the pattern “kanarazu shimo 必ずしも,” followed by a negative; indicates a partial negation.

English approximation: “not necessarily ...”

- A) だいがくいい大学に入ったからといって、かならず必ずしもしよく みいい職が見つかるとは限らない。

Ii daigaku ni haitta kara to itte, adv. kanarazu shimo ii shoku ga mitsukaru to wa kagira-nai.

Just because (you) get into a good university doesn't necessarily mean that (you) can find a good job.

- B) きのうまで<sup>あたたか</sup>暖かい日<sup>ひ</sup>が<sup>なんにち</sup>何日も<sup>つづ</sup>続いたから、今日<sup>きょう</sup>も<sup>あたたか</sup>暖かいとは必ず<sup>かならず</sup>  
しも <sup>い</sup>言えないよ。

Kinoo made atatakai hi ga nan-nichi mo tsuzuita kara, kyoo mo  
 atatakai to wa <sup>adv.</sup>kanarazu shimo ie-nai yo.

Just because it's been warm for several days until yesterday, it  
 can't necessarily be said that it will be warm today.

## SURA すら

Cites an extreme example.

English approximation: "(not) even ..."

- A) 世界<sup>せかい</sup>には、三度<sup>さんど</sup>の食事<sup>しょくじ</sup> すら <sup>まんぞく</sup>満足に<sup>た</sup>食べられない人<sup>ひと</sup>がたくさんいるの  
 だよ。

Sekai ni wa, san-do no <sup>n.</sup>shokuji sura manzoku ni taberare-nai  
 hito ga takusan iru no da yo.

In the world, there are many people who cannot even get to eat  
 three square meals a day, you know.

- B) あの老人<sup>ろうじん</sup>は、もう自分の娘<sup>じぶんむすめ</sup> すら <sup>みわ</sup>見分け<sup>あ</sup>がつかなくなってしまった。

Ano roojin wa, moo jibun no <sup>n.</sup>musume sura miwake ga  
 tsuka-naku natte shimatta.

The old man has reached a point where he cannot even tell his  
 daughter apart (from others).

## TARA たら

Often used in the form of “ttara ったら.”

1. Casually marks the topic or the subject.
- 1) Expresses a tone of familiarity or slight criticism. Not translatable.

A) お姉ちゃん<sup>ねえ</sup>っ たら、まだ寝<sup>ね</sup>ているよ。

n. Oneechan t tara, mada nete-iru yo.

She (literally: elder sister) is still in bed!

B) 彼<sup>かれ</sup>っ たら、もう新<sup>あたら</sup>しいガールフレンドに夢中<sup>むちゅう</sup>なんだから。

n. Kare t tara, moo atarashii gaaru-furendo ni muchuu na-n da kara.

He is already head over heels about his new girlfriend.

- 2) In the pattern “ttara ... nai ったら～ない,” expresses surprise at an unusual situation.

English approximation : an emphatic “as for”

A) 三時間<sup>さんじかん</sup>しか寝<sup>ね</sup>てないんだ。眠<sup>ねむ</sup>いっ たら ないよ。

San-jikan shika nete-nai-n da. <sup>adj.</sup> Nemui t tara nai yo.

I've only had three hours of sleep. I'm so sleepy! (literally: As for being sleepy, it's like nothing else.)

B) ゆうべの雷<sup>かみなり</sup>っ たら <sup>いま</sup>今までになくひどかったのよ。

Yuube no <sup>n.</sup> kaminari t tara, ima made ni naku, hidokatta no yo.

As for last night's thunderstorm, it was an unprecedentedly severe one.

2. Indicates a tone of impatience.



- 1) In getting the attention of the party addressed, marks the pronoun or the proper noun. Not translatable.

A) お兄ちゃん<sup>にい</sup>っ<sup>はや がっこう</sup>たら、早く学校へ行こうよ。

n. Oniichan t <sup>tara</sup>, hayaku gakkoo e ikoo yo.

Oniichan (literally: older brother), let's hurry up and go to school.

B) 面白いものがあるよ。<sup>おもしろ</sup>早く<sup>はや</sup>来てよ、お父さん<sup>とう</sup>っ<sup>はや</sup>たら。

Omoshiroi mono ga aru yo. Hayaku kite yo, n. <sup>otoosan</sup> t <sup>tara</sup>.

There's something interesting (here). Hurry over, Dad!

- 2) Placed after a verb, often in an imperative.

English approximation: "(I said) ..., (do ... already!)"

A) みんな<sup>ま</sup>待ってるのよ。<sup>はや かえ</sup>早く帰って来なさいっ<sup>はや</sup>たら。

Min-na matteru no yo. Hayaku v. <sup>kaette-kinasai</sup> t <sup>tara</sup>.

Everyone is waiting, you know. Come home already!

B) まだ<sup>にじ</sup>二時よ。おやつはもっと後<sup>あと</sup>でっ<sup>はや</sup>たら。

Mada ni-ji yo. Oyatsu wa motto ph. <sup>ato de</sup> t <sup>tara</sup>.

It's only two o'clock. (I said) snacks are to be (eaten) later!

3. Placed at the end of a sentence or clause, expresses an emphatic exclamation. Not translatable.

A) やめてっ<sup>はや</sup>たら、そんなこと。

v. <sup>Yamete</sup> t <sup>tara</sup>, son-na koto.

Stop doing that! (literally: Cut it out, (doing) something like that!)

B) <sup>こんど</sup>今度は僕にやらせてっ<sup>はやく</sup>たら。

Kondo wa boku ni v. <sup>yarasete</sup> t <sup>tara</sup>.

Come on, let me do it this time!

## TARI たり

1. Describes simultaneous or consecutive action. Often in a “... tari ... tari ~たり~たり” pattern.

English approximation: “(doing verb) and/while then (doing verb)”

- A) クマはおりのなかで、行<sup>い</sup>っ<sup>な</sup>たり<sup>き</sup>来<sup>き</sup>たり<sup>き</sup>していた。

Kuma wa ori no naka de, v. it tari v. ki tari shite-ita.

The bear was walking back and forth in its cage. (literally: was repeating going then coming.)

- B) 少女<sup>しょうじょ</sup>たちが、飛<sup>と</sup>ん<sup>は</sup>だり<sup>は</sup>跳ね<sup>は</sup>たり<sup>あそ</sup>して遊<sup>あそ</sup>んでいる。

Shoojo-tachi ga, v. ton dari v. hane tari shite asonde-iru.

The girls are playing, jumping up and down. (literally: The girls playing, leaping and jumping.)

2. Cites one action or condition as one example of others in the category.

English approximation: “such a thing as”

- A) こんなに暗<sup>くら</sup>くなるまで外<sup>そと</sup>で遊<sup>あそ</sup>んでい<sup>あそ</sup>たり<sup>あそ</sup>しては、危<sup>あぶ</sup>ないよ。

Kon-na ni kuraku-naru made soto de v. asonde-i tari shite wa, abunai yo.

It's dangerous to (do such things as) playing outside until it's this dark.

- B) そんな所<sup>ところ</sup>にごみ<sup>ごみ</sup>を捨<sup>す</sup>て<sup>す</sup>たり<sup>す</sup>してはいけません。

Son-na tokoro ni gomi o v. sute tari shite wa ike-masen.

Don't (do such a thing as) throwing your trash in such a place.

## TATTE たって

1. Following a verb or an adjective, indicates a hypothetical situation.

English approximation: “even if (you) were to ...”

- A) いま りょうこう い 今ごろ旅行に行こうっ たって、どこもまんいんだよ。

Ima goro ryokoo ni v. ikoo t tatte, doko mo man-in da yo.

Even if (you) were to want to go on a trip now (i.e. this late), it would be packed with people everywhere (you go).

- B) かえ 帰りたいと思っ たって、もうバスも電車もないよ。

Kaeri-tai to v. omo t tatte, moo basu mo densha mo nai yo.

Even if you were to think that you want to go home, there are no more buses or trains running.

2. In an emphatic adversative usage. Usually in the form “ttatte たって.”

English approximation: “even though”

- A) すこ 少しぐらい貯金があるっ たって、いざという時には役に立たないね。

Sukoshi gurai chokin ga v. aru t tatte, iza to yuu toki ni wa yaku ni tata-nai ne.

Even though you have a little bit of savings, when you really need it (i.e. in an emergency), it won't be of any use (don't you think?)

- B) の 飲むっ たって、杯にほんの四杯か五杯だけだよ。

v. Nomu t tatte, sakazuki ni hon no yon-hai ka go-hai dake da yo.

Even though (I) say (I) drink, I mean only four or five servings in

a sakazuki cup.

## TE て

Sometimes found in the “tte って” form.

1. Indicates that two actions occur simultaneously or successively.

English approximation: “do (verb) and ...”

- A) お客<sup>きやくさま</sup>様ですよ。きちんと座<sup>すわ</sup>っ<sup>て</sup>ごあいさつなさい。

Okyakusama desu yo. Kichin to v. suwa t<sup>te</sup> goaisatsu nasai.

We have a guest. Sit up straight and say your greetings.

- B) 桜<sup>さくら</sup>の花<sup>はな</sup>が散<sup>ち</sup>っ<sup>て</sup>、若<sup>わか</sup>葉<sup>ば</sup>が始<sup>はじ</sup>めた。

Sakura no hana ga v. chi t<sup>te</sup>, wakaba ga de-hajimeta.

The cherry blossoms have scattered, and the leaves have begun to appear.

2. Indicates a reason or a cause.

English approximation: “because”

- A) あの子<sup>こ</sup>は、先生<sup>せんせい</sup>にしかられ<sup>て</sup>泣<sup>な</sup>いている。

Ano ko wa, sensee ni v. shikarare <sup>te</sup> naite-iru.

That child is crying because (he) was scolded by (his) teacher.

- B) 初<sup>はじ</sup>めて五十<sup>ごじゅう</sup>メートル泳<sup>およ</sup>げた。お母<sup>かあ</sup>さんに褒<sup>ほ</sup>められ<sup>て</sup>、とてもうれしかった。

Hajimete go-juu meetoru oyogeta. Okaasan ni v. homerare <sup>te</sup>, totemo ureshikatta.

I was able to swim fifty meters for the first time. I was very happy because my Mom said she was proud of me.

3. Indicates a method for an action.

English approximation: “by” “with”

- A) わたしは、コーヒーにお砂糖とミルクを入れ<sup>きとう</sup><sub>て</sub>飲<sup>の</sup>みます。

Watashi wa, koohii ni osatoo to miruku o v. ire te nomi-masu.

I drink coffee with milk and sugar. (literally: I put milk and sugar in my coffee (and that is the way I) drink coffee.)

- B) 遠回り<sup>とおまわ</sup>をし<sub>て</sub>行<sup>い</sup>こう。

Toomawari o v. shi te ikoo.

Let's take the long way around. (literally: Let's go by taking a road out of our way.)

4. As a conjunction, lists items.

English approximation: “and”

- A) 彼女は、優しく<sup>やさしく</sup><sub>て</sub>気<sup>き</sup>さくで、だれにでも好<sup>す</sup>かれる。

Kanojo wa, adj. yasashiku te kisaku de, dare ni demo sukareru.

She is nice and she is down-to-earth, so (she) is liked by everyone.

- B) このみかんは、新しく<sup>あたら</sup><sub>て</sub>安<sup>やす</sup>く<sub>て</sub>おいしい。

Kono mikan wa, adj. atarashiku te adj. yasuku te oishii.

These oranges are fresh and inexpensive, and very good.

5. After a verb, in the pattern “... (t)te ... (t)te ...makuru 〜(っ)て〜(っ)て〜まくる.” Emphasizes the action.

English approximation: “... and ...”

- A) 原稿<sup>げんこう</sup>の締め切り<sup>し</sup>日<sup>き</sup>が近付<sup>び</sup>いて、彼は書<sup>か</sup>き<sup>か</sup>つて、彼は書<sup>か</sup>き<sup>か</sup>つて書<sup>か</sup>きま<sup>か</sup>くった。

Genkoo no shimekiri-bi ga chikazuite, kare wa v. kai te v. kai te kaki makutta.

As the deadline for the manuscript was approaching, he wrote and

wrote (like crazy).

- B) <sup>ひきだし</sup>引出しに入れておいた<sup>いちまんえん</sup>一万円が<sup>み</sup>見つからない。僕は<sup>ぼく</sup>探<sup>さが</sup>し<sup>て</sup>探<sup>さが</sup>し<sup>て</sup>  
探<sup>さが</sup>しまくった。

Hikidashi ni irete-oita ichi-man en ga mitsukara-nai. Boku wa  
v. sagashi **te** v. sagashi **te** sagashi makutta.

I couldn't find the ten thousand yen that I had put in the drawer. I  
looked and looked (like crazy).

6. In an adversative usage.

English approximation: “even though”

- A) <sup>きみ</sup>君、その<sup>し</sup>うわさを知<sup>し</sup>ってい<sup>て</sup>知<sup>し</sup>らないふりをするなんて、なぜなん  
だい？

Kimi, sono uwasa o v. shitte-i **te** shira-nai furi o suru nan te,  
naze na-n dai?

Why was it that you pretended not to know about that rumor even  
though you did?

- B) <sup>けっこん</sup>結婚の<sup>やくそく</sup>約束までしてい<sup>て</sup>、<sup>かのじょ</sup>彼女を見<sup>み</sup>捨<sup>す</sup>てるとは、あんまりじゃな  
いか。

Kekkon no yakusoku made v. shite-oi **te**, kanojo o misuteru  
to wa, anmari ja nai ka.

Isn't it too (cruel) (for you) to abandon her even though (you) had  
promised to marry her?

7. In the pattern “ni tsuite について,” introduces the topic.

English approximation: “concerning” “about”

- A) <sup>ほんじつ</sup>本日は、<sup>にちべいぼうえき</sup>日米貿易につい<sup>て</sup><sup>とうろん</sup>討論をいたします。

Honjitsu wa, nichibee-booeiki <sup>ph.</sup> ni tsui **te** tooron o itashi-

masu.

Today, we will hold a debate concerning U.S.-Japan trade.

- B) 火山<sup>かざん</sup>がまた活動<sup>かつどう</sup>を始めました。道路情報<sup>どうろじょうほう</sup>について<sup>て</sup>はラジオのニュース<sup>き</sup>をお聞きください。

Kazan ga mata katusdoo o hajime-mashita. Dooro-jooahoo<sub>ph</sub>ni  
tsui te wa rajio no nyuusu o okiki kudasai.

The volcano has become active again. Please listen to the news on the radio for (i.e. concerning ) road information.

8. Transforms a verb into a gerund by following it. Creates the “te て” verb form. Not translatable.

- A) わたしは<sup>いまかお</sup>今顔を洗<sup>あら</sup>っ<sup>て</sup>います。

Watashi wa ima kao o v. ara t<sup>te</sup> i-masu.

I'm now washing (my) face.

- B) わたしは<sup>しゅくだい</sup>宿題の論文<sup>ろんぶん</sup>を書<sup>か</sup>い<sup>て</sup>しました。

Watashi wa shukudai no ronbun o v. kai te shimai-mashita.

I've finished writing the essay for homework.

9. In women's language.

- 1) In the pattern “... (t)te yo 〜(っ)てよ.” Asserts the speaker's opinion. Not translatable.

- A) あら、このスカート、ぴったりあ<sup>っ</sup><sup>て</sup>よ。

Ara, kono sukaato, pittari v. a t<sup>te</sup> yo.

Look, this skirt fits me perfectly.

- B) あの方<sup>かた</sup>、そのお話し<sup>はなし</sup>ならもう知<sup>し</sup>っ<sup>て</sup>てよ。

Ano kata, sono ohanashi nara moo v. shit te irashi te yo.

(If you are talking about) that story, that person already knows

about it.

2) Forms the interrogative. Not translatable.

- A) あなた、わたしの言うことわかつて？

Anata, watashi no yuu koto v. waka t te ?

Do you understand what I'm saying?

- B) そんな高いところに登れて？

Son-na takai toko ni v. nobore te ?

Can you climb (some place that is) that high up?

10. Indicates a command or a request. Sometimes in the “te yo てよ” or “te ne てね” pattern. Not translatable.

- A) お母さん、珍しいチョウチョがいるよ。早く来て。

Okaasan, mezurashii choocho ga iru yo. Hayaku v. ki te .

Mom, there's a rare butterfly. Come (here) quickly!

- B) 早く食べてよ。急いでるんだから。

Hayaku v. tabe te yo. Isoideru-n da kara.

Finish eating already! (literally: Eat quickly!) I'm in a rush.

11. Placed at the end of a sentence, in a casual tone.

English approximation: “(I say, think, believe, etc.)”

- A) 君の病気は必ず治るって。

Kimi no byooki wa kanarazu v. naoru t te .

You will surely get well, (I believe).

- B) あなたのやさしさを、あいつもきっとわかるって。

Anata no yasashisa o aitsu mo kitto v. wakaru t te .

That fellow will surely appreciate your kindness, (I am sure).

12. As a variant of “to と,” makes a quotation. Not translatable.



- A) ここはなん て いう町<sup>まち</sup>だろう。

Koko wa n. nan te yuu machi daroo.

I wonder what this town is called.

- B) お兄<sup>にい</sup>ちゃんは、そんなことは出来<sup>でき</sup>ん て 言<sup>い</sup>ってたよ。

Oniichan wa, cl. son-na koto wa dekin te itteta yo.

My brother said that he couldn't do something like that.

## TEBA てば

1. Introduces the topic, with a feeling of familiarity or criticism.

English approximation: "speaking of ..."

- A) 木村<sup>きむらくん</sup>君 てば、インフルエンザでまだ学校<sup>がっこう</sup>休<sup>やす</sup>んでるんだよ。

n. Kimura-kun teba, infuruenza de mada gakkoo yasunderu-n da yo.

Speaking of Kimura, he is still not going to classes because of the flu, you know.

- B) おじいちゃん てば、またテレビの前<sup>まえ</sup>で居眠<sup>いねむ</sup>りしているよ。

n. Ojiiichan teba, mata terebi no mae de inemuri shite-iru yo.

Speaking of grandpa, (he) is dozing off in front of the TV again.

2. Placed at the end of a sentence, gives it a tone of impatience.

English approximation: "(I said)"

- A) お夕飯<sup>ゆうはん</sup>できたわよ。熱<sup>あつ</sup>いうちに食<sup>た</sup>べないと冷め<sup>さ</sup>めちゃうつ てば。

Oyuuhan dekita wa yo. Atsui uchi ni tabe-nai to v. samechau t teba.

Dinner's ready! If you don't come quickly, it will get cold, (I said).

B) わかったよ。すぐ行<sup>い</sup>くつ<sup>て</sup>ば。

Wakatta yo. sugu v. iku t<sup>te</sup>ba.

All right, I'll be right there, (I said).

## TEMO(DEMO) とても(でも)

“Temo とても” preceded by a word ending in “n ん” sound changes into “demo でも.” See 4. B) below as an example.

1. Gives an extreme case and negates it.

English approximation: “no matter ...”

A) どんなに高<sup>たか</sup>く<sup>ても</sup> その絵<sup>え</sup>を買<sup>か</sup>いたい。

Don-na ni <sup>adj.</sup> takaku <sup>temo</sup> sono e o kai-tai.

No matter how expensive the painting is, I want to buy it.

B) 今<sup>いま</sup>はどんなに悲<sup>かな</sup>しく<sup>ても</sup>、いつかは乗<sup>の</sup>り越<sup>こ</sup>えられるよ。

Ima wa don-na ni <sup>adj.</sup> kanashiku <sup>temo</sup>, itsuka wa nori-koerareru yo.

No matter how sad you might be now, someday you will be able to get over it.

2. Shows that regardless of a given condition or action, something occurs.

English approximation: “despite” “regardless of”

A) この単語<sup>たんご</sup>、なんべん辞書<sup>じしょ</sup>をひい<sup>ても</sup> すぐ意味<sup>いみ</sup>を忘<sup>わす</sup>れてしまう。

Kono tango, nanben jisho o v. <sup>hii</sup> <sup>temo</sup> sugu imi o wasurete shimau.

Regardless of how many times I look up this word, I always forget its meaning right away.

- B) じっと寝てい<sup>ね</sup>ても<sup>ても</sup>、腰<sup>こし</sup>の痛<sup>いた</sup>いのが治<sup>なお</sup>らない。

Jitto v. nete-i temo, koshi no itai no ga naora-nai.

Despite the fact that I'm lying still, my lower back pain isn't getting any better.

3. In an emphatic usage, indicates the possible limit.

English approximation: "at most" "at least"

- A) この小包<sup>こづつ</sup>は重<sup>おも</sup>くても<sup>ても</sup>五キロはないでしょう。

Kono kozutsumi wa adj. omoku temo go-kiro wa nai deshoo.

This package weighs at most five kilograms (and is probably less).

- B) その本<sup>ほん</sup>は安<sup>やす</sup>くても<sup>ても</sup>五千円<sup>ごせんえん</sup>はするでしょう。

Sono hon wa adj. yasuku temo go-sen en wa suru deshoo.

That book will cost at least five thousand yen.

4. In a sentence granting permission. Not translatable.

- A) もうお乳<sup>ちち</sup>を飲<sup>の</sup>ませたから、赤<sup>あか</sup>ちゃんを抱<sup>だ</sup>いてくださ<sup>だ</sup>っても<sup>ても</sup>いいですよ。

Moo ochichi o nomaseta kara, akachan o v. daite kudasa t temo ii desu yo.

I gave it some milk already, so it's all right for you to hold the baby.

- B) この薬<sup>くすり</sup>なら、ミルクと一<sup>いっしょ</sup>緒<sup>の</sup>に飲<sup>の</sup>んでも<sup>でも</sup>構<sup>かま</sup>いませんよ。

Kono kusuri nara, miruku to issho ni v. non demo kamaimasen yo.

It would be fine (for you) to take this medication with milk.

## TE-NE て-ね Combination particle

A combination of the particles “te て” and “ne ね.” Also used in the form of “de ne でね.” Usually found in women’s and children’s language, it is used in making a request with a familiar tone. It is the informal variant of the gerund form of a verb plus “kudasai ください.”

English approximation: “please” “would you ...?”

- A) お母さん、あしたの遠足、お握り作っ てね。

Okaasan, ashita no ensoku, onigiri v. tsuku t te ne .

Mom, could you make rice balls for tomorrow’s school trip?

- B) 今夜は早く帰ってき てね、真理子の誕生日だから。

Konya wa hayaku v. kaette-ki te ne , mariko no tanjoubi dakara.

Please come home early tonight, it’s Mariko’s birthday.

## TE-WA て-は Combination particle

A combination of the particles “te て” and “wa は.” Also in the form “de wa では.”

1. Gives a hypothetical situation followed by its result. Often implies that the hypothetical situation is undesirable.

English approximation: “if (I) were to ...”

- A) 八時の電車で乗り遅れ ては、会議に間に合わない。

Hachi-ji no densha ni v. nori-okure te wa , kaigi ni maniawa-nai.

If (I) were to miss the eight o’clock train, (I) wouldn’t make it in

time for the meeting.

- B) <sup>いま</sup>今から始め<sup>はじ</sup>ては、<sup>おく</sup>遅れてしまう。

Ima kara v. hajime te wa, okurete shimau.

If (I) were to start now, I would be late.

2. Links something that has already happened to another situation, condition or action.

English approximation: (a comma)

- A) こんなにたくさんお土産をいただき、<sup>もう</sup>申し訳ありません。

Kon-na ni takusan omiyage o v. itadai te wa mooshiwake-arimasen.

You brought so many souvenirs, you really shouldn't have.

- B) そんなに頼まれ、<sup>い</sup>いやとは言えないね。

Son-na ni v. tanomare te wa iya to wa ie-nai ne.

You beg me this much, I cannot say no.

3. Indicates a situation or a condition that is sure to give rise to the result described in the second clause.

English approximation: “with” “when”

- A) <sup>はや</sup>早まっ、<sup>そん</sup>損をするだけだ。

v. Hayama te wa, son o suru dake da.

When (you) rush into things, you will only lose out.

- B) <sup>あか</sup>赤ん坊が生まれ、<sup>きみ</sup>君も忙しくなるね。

Akanboo ga v. umare te wa, kimi mo isogashiku naru ne.

With the baby born, you'll be busy, (won't you).

4. In describing a repeated combination of actions, links the first action to the second.

English approximation: “keep doing ...”

- A) 彼は、小石を拾っ ては 投げ拾っ ては 投げていた。

Kare wa, koishi o v. hiro t **te wa** nage v. hiro t **te wa** nagete-ita.

He kept picking up a pebble and throwing it.

- B) あしたは遠足なのに、今夜は雨。ともちゃんは、空を見上げ ては ため息をついている。

Ashita wa ensoku na noni, konya wa ame. Tomo-chan wa, sora o v. miage **te wa** tameiki o tsuite-iru.

Tomorrow is the school trip, but it's raining tonight. Tomo keeps looking up at the sky and sighing.

## TO と

1. The most basic function of “to と” is to list nouns, noun phrases and noun clauses. Note that another particle “ya や” has a similar function, but its usage is slightly different (see “ya や,” p. 241).

- 1) Lists concrete and abstract things.

English approximation: “and”

- A) りんご と ぶどうがテーブルの上にあります。

n. **Ringo** **to** n. **budoo** ga teeburu no ue ni ari-masu.  
word word

There are apple(s) and grape(s) on the table.

- B) 赤いりんご と 緑のぶどうもテーブルの上にあります。

n. **Akai ringo** **to** n. **midori no budoo** mo teeburu no ue ni ari-masu.  
phrase phrase

There are also red apples and green grapes on the table.

- C) わたしが買ったりんご<sup>か</sup>とあなたが買ったぶどう<sup>か</sup>はテーブルの上<sup>うへ</sup>にあります。

n. Watashi ga katta ringo to n. anata ga katta budoo wa  
teeburu no ue ni ari-masu.

- 2) Often in the “(noun) to (noun) to ～と～と” pattern, contrasts or compares the two nouns.

English approximation: “and” “or” “between”

- A) スキムミルク<sup>よつう</sup>と普通のミルク<sup>ふつう</sup>とどちらを買いましょうか？

Sukimu n. miruku to futsuu no n. miruku to dochira o kai-mashoo ka?

Which should I buy, skim milk or regular milk?

- B) 夏<sup>なつ</sup>と冬<sup>ふゆ</sup>とでは気温は大変違います。

n. Natsu to n. fuyu to de wa kion wa taihen chigai-masu.

Between summer and winter, there is a great difference in temperature.

- C) 谷君<sup>たにくん</sup>の書いた作文<sup>か</sup>と北川君<sup>きたがわくん</sup>の書いた作文<sup>か</sup>とあなたはどちらのほうが好きですか？

n. ph. Tani-kun no kaita sakubun to n. ph. kitagawa-kun no kaita sakubun to anata wa dochira no hoo ga suki desu ka?

Which do you like better, the composition written by Tani or the one by Kitagawa?

- D) あれからもう二十年<sup>にじゅうねん</sup>か、この街も昔<sup>まち</sup>と随分<sup>ずいぶん</sup>変わったね。

Are kara moo nijuu-nen ka, kono machi mo n. mukashi to

zuibun kawatta ne.

Twenty years have passed since then. This town has changed a lot (since then).

\* Note that although “to と” functions like the English “and,” it cannot connect two separate sentences, nor can it stand alone at the beginning of a sentence. “Soshite そして” must be used in these cases instead.

a) The sentence: “I wrote a letter, and you wrote a letter (also)” must be translated as “Watashi wa tegami o kaki-mashita. Soshite, anata mo tegami o kaki-mashita. わたしは手紙<sup>てがみ</sup>を書きました。そして、あなたも手紙<sup>てがみ</sup>を書きました。” It can never be: “Watashi wa tegami o kaki-mashita. To, anata mo tegami o kaki-mashita. わたしは手紙<sup>てがみ</sup>を書きました。✕、あなたも手紙<sup>てがみ</sup>を書きました。”

b) The sentence: “And, after that, (she) sat down.” must be translated as “Soshite, sono ato, suwatta. そして、その後<sup>あと すわ</sup>、座った。” It can never be: “to, sono ato, suwatta. ✕、その後<sup>あと すわ</sup>、座った。”

Therefore, do not get into the habit of always translating “and” as “to と.” Make sure that you think about its usage first.

2. Indicates that the speaker carried out an action together with the subject who is marked off by this particle.

English approximation: “with” “accompanied by”

A) きのは、弟<sup>おとうと</sup> と 川<sup>かわ</sup>へ泳<sup>およ</sup>ぎに行きました。

Kinoo wa, n. otooto to kawa e oyogi ni iki-mashita.

Yesterday, I went swimming in the river with my brother.

きょう ひる ぼく とう かあ  
今日お昼に、僕はお父さん と お母さん と ハンバーガーを食<sup>た</sup>べました。



Kyoo ohiru ni, boku wa n. otoosan **to** n. okaasan **to** han-  
baagaa o tabe-mashita.

Today for lunch, I had a hamburger with my father and my mother.

- C) <sup>きたじま</sup>北島さんは<sup>らいげつ</sup>来月<sup>みなみだ</sup>南田さん<sup>と</sup>**と**<sup>けっこん</sup>結婚します。

Kitajima-san wa raigetsu n. minamida-san **to** kekkon-  
shimasu.

Kitajima is going to marry Minamida next month.

### 3. After a noun.

- 1) Indicates that an action which follows is performed in a struggle  
against something.

English approximation: “against”

- A) <sup>かれ</sup>彼は<sup>きょうふ</sup>恐怖<sup>と</sup>**と**<sup>たたか</sup>闘って、<sup>か</sup>ついに勝った。

Kare wa n. kyooфу **to** tatakatte, tsui ni katta.

He fought against his fears, and he finally conquered them.

- B) <sup>みずのくん</sup>水野君は<sup>い</sup>いろいろな<sup>こんなん</sup>困難<sup>と</sup>**と**<sup>たたか</sup>闘って、<sup>ゆうしょう</sup>ついに優勝した。

Mizuno-kun wa iro-iro na n. kon-nan **to** tatakatte, tsui ni  
yuushoo-shita.

Mizuno, after struggling against many obstacles, finally won first  
place.

- 2) Precedes certain incomplete intransitive verb such as “call ... (...to  
yobu ~と<sup>よ</sup>呼ぶ),” “become ... (...to naru ~となる),” “name ... (...to  
nazukeru ~と<sup>なづ</sup>名付ける).” The noun preceding “to と” becomes the  
complement of the verb. Not translatable.

- A) <sup>たけしたくん</sup>竹下君は<sup>こうがくぶ</sup>工学部の<sup>がくせい</sup>学生<sup>と</sup>**と**なった。

Takeshita-kun wa koogakubu no n. gakusee **to** natta.

Takeshita became a student in the engineering department.

- B) 友達<sup>ともだち</sup>は僕<sup>ぼく</sup>のことをタッチャン<sup>と</sup>呼びます。

Tomodachi wa boku no koto o n. tacchan to yobi-masu.

My friends call me Tacchan.

- C) 新しい喫茶店<sup>あたらしい ちっさてん</sup>の名前<sup>なまえ</sup>を「ドリーム」<sup>と</sup>つけました。

Atarashii kissaten no namae o “n. doriimu” to tsuke-mashita.

We named the new coffee shop “Dream.”

- 3) Indicates that something reaches/reached a goal or a new state. Not translatable.

- A) いよいよ運動会<sup>うんどうかい</sup>の日<sup>ひ</sup> <sup>と</sup>になりました。

Iyo-iyo undoo-kai no n. hi to nari-mashita.

At last the field day has come.

- B) クリスマスの街頭募金<sup>がいてう ぼきん</sup>は全部<sup>ぜんぶ</sup>で百万円<sup>ひゃくまんえん</sup> <sup>と</sup>なった。

Kurumasu no gaitoo-bokin wa zenbu de n. hyaku-man en to natta.

The total amount of donations collected on the streets during the Christmas season reached one million yen.

- C) あの広場<sup>ひろば</sup>は子供達<sup>こどもたち</sup>の公園<sup>こうえん</sup> <sup>と</sup>なった。

Ano hiroba wa kodomo-tachi no n. kooen to natta.

That field has now been made into a playground for children.

- 4) After a quantity or a number, indicates that something can be done in less than that quantity or number. Also, emphasizes the negative.

English approximation: “(not) as much as” “never (not even once)”

- A) そんな仕事<sup>しごと</sup>は三日<sup>みつか</sup> <sup>と</sup>かかりません。

Son-na shigoto wa n. mik-ka to kakari-masen.

It wouldn't take more than three days to do that kind of work.

- B) ひまわりの種をまいてから、一週間とたたないうちに芽がでてきました。

Himawari no tane o maite kara, n. is-shuukan to tata-nai uchi ni me ga dete-kimashita.

The sunflower seeds sprouted in less than a week after I planted them.

- C) もう二度とあんな所へは行かない。

Moo n. ni-do to an-na tokoro e wa ika-nai.

I'm never again going to go to a place like that.

4. In the patterns "... (a verb) yoo to ... mai to ~ (よ) うと ~まいと," "... (a noun) であろうと ~ (で) なかろうと," and "... (an adj.) ころうと ~ なかろうと."

English approximation: "(whether) ... or not"

- A) 君が信じよう信じまいと、それは本当に起こったんだよ。

Kimi ga v. shinji-yoo to v. shinji-mai to, sore wa hontoo ni okotta-n da yo.

Believe it or not, that really happened, you know.

- B) それが事実であろうとなかろうと、わたしは構わない。

Sore ga jijitsu c. de aroo to adj. nakaroo to, watashi wa kama-wanai.

Whether it's true or not, it doesn't matter to me.

- D) 大きかりうと小さかりうと味さえよければいい。

adj. Ookikaroo to adj. chiisakaroo to aji sae yokere ba ii.

Whether it's big or small, I don't care as long as it tastes good.

5. As a quotation particle, introduces a clause or a phrase.

English approximation: “that” or a comma

Some examples of verbs that introduce a quoted clause are:

... to hanasu ～と話す (tell that ...)

... to yuu ～と言う (say that ...)

... to kangaeru ～と考える (consider that ...)

... to omou ～と思う (think that ...)

... to soozoo-suru ～と想像する (imagine that ...)

... to wakaru ～とわかる (understand that ...)

A) いつかは大地震があるだろう ☐ 思う。

cl. Itsuka wa daijishin ga aru daroo ☐ omou.

I think that someday, there will be a big earthquake.

B) 期末テストは二週間先 ☐ 決った。

cl. Kimatsu-tesuto wa ni-shuukan saki ☐ kimatta.

It's been decided that the final exam is going to be in two weeks.

C) お化けか ☐ 思ったら、柳の木だよ。

cl. Obake ka ☐ omottara, yanagi no ki da yo.

I thought that it was a ghost, but it's (merely) a willow tree.

D) マラソンは苦しかったが、友達に遅れまい ☐ 一生懸命走った。

Marason wa kurushikatta ga, cl. tomodachi ni okure-mai ☐

issشو-kenmee hashitta.

The marathon was very hard; determined that I wasn't going to fall behind my friends, I ran the best I could.

F) お店は今日は開いていないよ。ほら、「本日休業」 ☐ 出ているでしょう。

Omise wa kyoo wa aite-inai yo. Hora, <sup>ph.</sup> “honjitsu kyuugyoo”

**to** dete-iru deshoo.

The store isn't open today. See, there is a sign that says “closed for today.”

6. Follows a mimesis, an onomatopoeic adverb.

English approximation: “in the manner of”

- A) そこにじつ **と** <sup>すわ</sup>座っていなさい。

Soko ni <sub>m.ji</sub> t **to** suwatte i-nasai.

You sit still there. (literally: There, in the manner of stillness, keep sitting.)

- B) <sup>ろうか</sup>廊下をバタバタ **と** <sup>はし</sup>走ってはいけません。

Rooka o <sub>o.</sub> bata-bata **to** hashitte wa ike-masen.

You should not run down the hall making lots of noise. (literally: Down the hall, in the manner of making lots of noise, you should not run.)

- C) グログロ **と** <sup>かみなり</sup>雷がなっている。

<sub>o.</sub> Goro-goro **to** kaminari ga natte-iru.

Thunder is rumbling. (literally: In a rumbling manner, the thunder is making noise.)

- D) <sup>おおき</sup>大きな木がどさっ **と** <sup>たお</sup>倒れた。

Ookina ki ga <sub>o.</sub> dosa t **to** taoreta.

A huge tree fell down with a thud. (literally: A huge tree, in the manner of a “thud,” fell down.)

7. Placed after a verb, indicates that the action/condition described in the clause preceding it immediately initiated another action/condition.

English approximation: “when” “as soon as”

- A) 先生が教室に入って来る<sup>せんせい きょうしつ はい</sup> **と**、生徒たちはあわてて席に着いた。<sup>せいと</sup>

Sensee ga kyooshitsu ni v. haitte-kuru **to**, seeto-tachi wa awatete seki ni tsuita.

As soon as the teacher entered the classroom, the students took their seats in a hurry.

- B) 僕が学校に着く<sup>ぼく がっこう つ</sup> **と**、友達が大勢寄ってきた。<sup>ともだち おおぜい よ</sup>

Boku ga gakkoo ni v. tsuku **to**, tomodachi ga ooze yotte-kita.

As soon as I got to school, many of my friends came over to me.

- C) 幕が上がる<sup>まく あ</sup> **と**、観客は水を打ったように静かになった。<sup>かんきゃく みず う しず</sup>

Maku ga v. agaru **to**, kankyaku wa mizu o utta yoo ni shizuka ni natta.

When the curtain went up, the audience became completely silent.

- D) 雪が降り始める<sup>ゆき より はじ</sup> **と**、動物たちは冬眠を始める。<sup>どうぶつとうみん はじ</sup>

Yuki ga v. furi-hajimeru **to**, doobutsu-tachi wa toomin o hajimeru.

When the snow starts to fall, animals go into hibernation.

## 8. Placed after an adjective or a verb, creates a conditional.

English approximation: “if” “when”

- A) あんまり安い<sup>やす</sup> **と**かえて心配だ。<sup>しんぱい</sup>

Anmari adj. yasui **to** kaette shinpai da.

If it's too cheap, then that makes me worry.

- B) 君が来ない<sup>きみ こ</sup> **と**つまらないなあ。

Kimi ga v. ko-nai **to** tsumaranai naa.

It'll be boring if you don't come.

- C) この古い戸<sup>と</sup>、こわれる [と] いけないから早く<sup>はや</sup>直<sup>なお</sup>しましょう。

Kono furui to, v. kowareru [to] ikenai kara hayaku naoshimashoo.

Let's fix this old door before it breaks. (literally: As for this door, it won't be good if it were to break, so let's fix it soon.)

- D) 雨が降る [と]、水不足<sup>みずぶそく</sup>が解消<sup>かいしょう</sup>するのですが。

Ame ga v. furu [to], mizu-busoku ga kaishoo-suru no desu ga.

If it were to rain, the water shortage would be solved, but ...

- E) あのうどん屋<sup>や</sup>に行く [と]、おいしいうどんが食べ<sup>た</sup>られるよ。

Ano udon-ya ni v. iku [to], oishii udon ga taberareru yo.

If you go to that noodle restaurant, you can have great udon (noodles).

9. In the pattern "ari to arayuru.... ありとあらゆる～"

English approximation: "every possible (thing/method)"

デパートにはあり [と] あらゆる品物<sup>しなもの</sup>が並<sup>なら</sup>んでいる。

Depaato ni wa ari [to] arayuru shinamono ga narande-iru.

Everything that you can think of is available in a department store.

10. In the pattern "... to naku ... to naku ～となく～となく," describes a ceaseless action.

English approximation: "without ... or ..."

彼は昼<sup>か</sup> [と] なく夜<sup>よる</sup> [と] なく働<sup>はたら</sup>いた。

Kare wa n. hiru [to] naku n. yoru [to] naku hataraita.

He worked all day long. (literally: without day or night)

## TO-IE-BA と-いえ-ば Combination particle

A combination of the particles “to と” and “ba ば” and the verb “ie いえ,” from “yuu いう (to say).” Introduces the topic casually.

English approximation: “speaking of ...”

- A) ああ、三井君<sup>みついくん</sup> **と**い**え**ば、さっき廊下<sup>ろうか</sup>で会**あ**ったよ。

Aa, n. mitsui-kun **to ie ba**, sakki rooka de atta yo.

Oh, speaking of Mitsui, (I) saw him in the hallway awhile ago.

- B) 滝<sup>たき</sup> **と**い**え**ば、なんといってもナイアガラだね。

n. Taki **to ie ba**, nan to itte mo naiagara da ne.

Speaking of waterfalls, it's definitely Niagara Falls (that's the best), no question.

## TO-II と-いい Combination particle

A combination of the particle “to と” and the verb “ii いい,” from “yuu いう (to say).” In the pattern “... to ii ... to ii ~といい~といい,” lists two or more items and establishes them as the topic, to be followed by a comment.

English approximation: “as for ... and ...”

- A) あの店のステーキは、味<sup>あじ</sup> **と**い**い** 値段<sup>ねだん</sup> **と**い**い** いうことないね。

Ano mise no suteeki wa, n. aji **to ii** n. nedan **to ii** yuu koto nai ne.

The steak at that restaurant, (as for its) taste and price, it's perfect.

- B) 長谷川<sup>はせがわ</sup>さんは、勉強<sup>べんきょう</sup> **と**い**い** スポーツ **と**い**い** いつでもトップなのよ。



Hasegawa-san wa, n. benkyoo [to ii] n. supootsu [to ii] itsu-  
demo toppu na no yo.

Hasegawa, (in) studies and sports, is always the best one (in the group).

## TO-ITTA と-いった Combination particle

A combination of the particle “to と” and the verb “itta いった,” from “yuu いう (to say).” Lists two or more items.

English approximation: “such as”

- A) <sup>にほん</sup>日本のお土産なら、<sup>しんじゅ</sup>真珠や<sup>しっぽう</sup>七宝 [と-いった] アクセサリーもいいでしょう。

Nihon no omiyage nara, <sup>ph</sup>shinju ya shippoo [to itta] akusesarii  
mo ii deshoo.

In terms of souvenirs from Japan, accessories such as pearls and cloisonne are probably suitable, too.

- B) <sup>むすめ</sup>うちの娘は、<sup>すうがく</sup>数学や<sup>りか</sup>理科 [と-いった] <sup>かもく</sup>科目が得意です。

Uchi no musume wa, <sup>ph</sup>suugaku ya rika [to itta] kamoku ga  
tokui desu.

Our daughter is good at subjects such as math and science.

## TO-ITTE と-いって Combination particle

A combination of the particle “to と” and the verb “itte いて,” from “yuu いう (to say).” In an adversative usage at the beginning of a sentence.

English approximation: “however”

- A) <sup>いそ</sup>急げば<sup>じゅうじ</sup>十時のバスに間に<sup>ま</sup>合いそう<sup>あ</sup>だ。 といって<sup>はし</sup>走るのはいやだ。<sup>つぎ</sup>次のバスにしよう。

Isoge ba juu-ji no basu ni mani-ai soo da. To itte hashiru no wa iya da. Tsugi no basu ni shi yoo.

If (I) rush, it looks like I might be able to make the ten o'clock bus.

However, I don't want to run. I'll (catch) the next bus.

- B) <sup>にほん</sup>日本は、<sup>たし</sup>確かに<sup>けいざいたいく</sup>経済大国になった。 といって<sup>こくみんひとりひとり</sup>、国民一人一人の暮ら<sup>く</sup>しが<sup>ゆた</sup>豊かになったわけではない。

Nihon wa, tashika ni keezai-taikoku ni natta. To itte, kokumin hitori hitori no kurashi ga yutaka ni natta wake de wa nai.

Japan has certainly become an “economic giant.” However, that doesn't mean that the standard of living of each member of society has increased significantly.

## TO-IWA-ZU と-いわ-ず Combination particle

A combination of the particles “to と” and “zu ず,” and the verb “iwa(-nai) いわ(ない),” from “yuu いう (to say).”

1. A negative imperative that influences a quotation.

English approximation: “don't say that ...”

- A) もうへとへとだなど といわず<sup>がんば</sup>に頑張<sup>ば</sup>って。ほら、もうすぐだよ。

Moo heto-heto da <sup>p.</sup>nado to iwazu ni ganbatte. Hora, moo sugu da yo.

Don't say things like you're completely worn out; just hang in there.

Look, we're almost there.

- B) あきらめた **【といわず】**、もう一度先生に相談してみたらいいんじゃない？

v. **Akirameta** **【to iwazu】**, moo ichido sensee ni soodan shite mitara ii-n ja nai?

Don't say that you've given up; why don't you (literally: wouldn't it be better if you) talk to your teacher about it again?

2. In the pattern "... to iwa zu ... to iwa zu ～といわず～といわず," indicates an all-inclusiveness.

English approximation: "not only all ..., but ..."

- A) 手 **【といわず】** 足 **【といわず】**、体 中蚊にさされた。

n. **Te** **【to iwa zu】** n. **ashi** **【to iwa zu】**, karada-juu ka ni sasareta.

Not just all over my hands and feet, but I was bitten by mosquitoes all over my body.

- B) 彼は、朝 **【といわず】** 夜 **【といわず】**、暇さえあれば漫画を読んでいる。

Kare wa, n. **asa** **【to iwa zu】** n. **yoru** **【to iwa zu】**, hima sae are ba manga o yonde-iru.

Not just in the morning and in the evening, but he reads comics whenever he has time.

## TOKA とか

1. Lists several items.

English approximation: "such as ... and ... (and ..., etc.)"

- A) みよちゃんは、ピアノ **【とか】** 絵 **【とか】** お習字 **【とか】** たくさんおけいこ

にいつているのよ。

Miyo-chan wa, <sub>n.</sub> piano toka <sub>n. e</sub> toka <sub>n.</sub> oshuuji toka ta-  
kusan okeeko ni itte-iru no yo.

Miyo is taking many lessons such as piano, drawing, and calligraphy, you know.

- B) テレビばかり見ていないで、少しは弟の面倒を見る とか、犬を散歩に連れていく とか、しなさいよ。

Terebi bakari mite-inai de, sukoshi wa ootoo no mendoo o <sub>v.</sub>  
miru toka , inu o sanpo ni <sub>v.</sub> tsurete-iku toka , shi-nasai yo.

Instead of watching TV all the time, why don't you at least do something like look after your little brother or take the dog out for a walk?

## 2. Conveys uncertainty, often due to its hearsay nature.

English approximation: “something like ..., (I hear)”

- A) あの家は、一億円 とか で売れたそうですよ。

Ano ie wa, <sub>n.</sub> ichi-oku en toka de ureta soo desu yo.

That house was sold for something like one hundred million yen, I hear.

- B) 橋君のおじいさんは、百いくつ とか で、まだ英語を教えているんですって。

Takashi-kun no ojiisan wa, <sub>n.</sub> hyaku ikutsu toka de mada eego o oshiete-iru-n desu-tte.

Takashi's grandfather is something like a hundred-odd years old, and is still teaching English, I hear.

## TOKORO ところ

Shows that two events occurred successively.

English approximation: “when”

- A) うちへ帰<sup>かえ</sup>ってみた ところ、合格<sup>ごうかく</sup>通知<sup>つうち</sup>が届<sup>とど</sup>いていた。

Uchi e v. kaette-mita tokoro, gookaku-tsuuchi ga todoite-ita.

When I came home, (I found that) the acceptance letter had been delivered.

- B) 人事<sup>じんじ</sup>部<sup>ぶ</sup>に聞<sup>き</sup>いてみた ところ、部長<sup>ぶちやう</sup>のロンドン<sup>てんきん</sup>転勤<sup>ほんとう</sup>は本当<sup>ほんとう</sup>だとわかった。

Jinji-bu ni v. kiite-mita tokoro, buchou no rondon tenkin wa hontoo da to wakatta.

When I asked the personnel division, I found that it was true that our director would be transferred to London.

## TOKORODE ところで

Poses a hypothetical situation. The tone is pessimistic, implying that even if that something were to happen, an undesirable situation would still exist in reality.

English approximation: “even if (you) were to ...”

- A) 嘆<sup>なげ</sup>いてみた ところで、なくしたビデオカメラは戻<sup>もど</sup>っては来<sup>こ</sup>ないさ。

v. Nageite-mita tokorode, nakushita bideo-kamera wa modotte wa ko-nai sa.

Even if you were to grieve, the camcorder that you lost won't come

back.

- B) 今電話した<sup>いまだんわ</sup>ところで、彼はまだ留守<sup>かれ るす</sup>でしょう。

Ima <sub>v</sub> denwa-shita tokorode, kare wa mada rusu deshoo.

Even if you were to call now, he's probably still out.

## TOKORO-E ところへ Combination particle

A combination of the noun “tokoro ところ (a place/an occasion)” and the particle “e へ.” Indicates that as one action was being carried out, by chance, something else happened.

English approximation: “just when ...”

- A) わたしが宿題<sup>しゅくだい</sup>を始めようとしている<sup>はじめ</sup>ところへ、村田さんが遊び<sup>むらた あそ</sup>にきた。

Watashi ga shukudai o hajime-yoo to <sub>v</sub> shite-iru tokoro e,  
murata-san ga asobi ni kita.

Just when I was about to start doing my homework, Murata came over for a visit.

- B) 大雨<sup>おおあめ</sup>がやんだところへ、山崩れ<sup>やまくず</sup>が起きた<sup>お</sup>。

Oo-ame ga <sub>v</sub> yanda tokoro e, yama-kuzure ga okita.

Just when the rainstorm had ended, there was a landslide.

## TOKOROGA ところが

Indicates that although the speaker was anticipating one result which is described in the first clause, the real result was unexpectedly negative.

English approximation: “but”

- A) おいしいイチゴなので、たくさん買ったところ<sup>か</sup>が、箱<sup>はこ</sup>の下<sup>した</sup>の方<sup>ほう</sup>のはだいぶ腐<sup>くさ</sup>っていた。

Oishi-soona ichigo na node, takusan v. katta tokoroga, hako no shita no hoo no wa daibu kusatte-ita.

The strawberries looked good, so I bought a lot, but many of the ones at the bottom of the box were rotten.

- B) 朝<sup>あさ</sup>お天気<sup>てんき</sup>だったから傘<sup>かさ</sup>を持たずに出<sup>で</sup>かけたところ<sup>か</sup>が、午<sup>ご</sup>後<sup>ご</sup>になって土砂<sup>どしゃぶ</sup>降りになった。

Asa otenki datta kara kasa o motazu ni v. dekaketa tokoroga, gogo ni natte dosha-buri ni natta.

I went out without an umbrella because it was nice out this morning, but in the afternoon, there was a downpour.

## TOKORO-O ところ-を

Indicates that something unexpected has happened or is happening.

Colloquial form: “toko-o どこを.”

English approximation: “although (usually) ...”

- A) 主人<sup>しゅじん</sup>は、いつもなら十<sup>じゅうじ</sup>時には帰<sup>かえ</sup>って来<sup>く</sup>るところ<sup>を</sup>、今<sup>こん</sup>夜<sup>や</sup>はまだ帰<sup>かえ</sup>らない。

Shujin wa, itsumo nara juu-ji ni wa v. kaette-kuru tokoro-o, kon-ya wa mada kaera-nai.

Although my husband usually comes home before ten o'clock, he hasn't come home yet tonight.

- B) いつもの年なら、今ごろは山は雪で白くなる ところを、今年は暖かくてまだ全然雪がありません。

Itsumo no toshi nara, imagoro wa yama wa yuki de v. shiroku-naru tokoro-o, kotoshi wa atatakaku te mada yuki ga arimasen.

Although usually at this point, the mountains turn white with snow, this year, it's warm and there is still no snow at all.

- C) いつもなら七時には起きる とこを、今朝は目覚し時計が故障して、寝坊してしまった。

Itsumo nara shichi-ji ni wa v. okiru toko-o, kesa wa mezamashi-dokee ga koshoo shite, neboo-shite shimatta.

Although usually I get up at seven o'clock, the alarm clock was broken this morning and I overslept.

## TOMO とも

1. In the patterns such as “don-na ni ... tomo どんなに〜とも,” “doredake ... tomo どれだけ〜とも,” expresses an absolute determination.

English approximation: “no matter ...”

- A) ゴールまであと一回りだ。どんなに苦しく とも 頑張って走るぞ。

Gooru made ato hito-mawari da. Don-na ni adj. kurushiku tomo ganbatte hashiru zo.

One more lap until the finish line. No matter how hard it may be, I'll give it my best and run.

- B) どれだけ時間がかかろう とも、この仕事だけはやってしまわなければ



ばならない。

Doredake jikan ga v. kakaroo tomo, kono shigoto dake wa  
yatte shimawa-nakere ba nara nai.

No matter how long it may take, I absolutely have to finish doing  
at least this job.

2. After an adjective, indicates an approximate limit.

English approximation: “at least” “at most”

- A) <sup>おそ</sup>遅く tomo <sup>らいしゅう</sup>来週までには<sup>へんじ</sup>お返事をください。

adj. Osoku tomo raishuu made ni wa ohenji o kudasai.

Please give me an answer by next week at the latest.

- B) <sup>へや</sup>部屋を<sup>さが</sup>探しているんですが、<sup>すく</sup>少なく tomo <sup>ろくじょう</sup>六畳は<sup>ほ</sup>欲しいと<sup>おも</sup>思います。

Heya o sagashite-iru-n desu ga, adj. sukunaku tomo roku-joo  
wa hoshii to omoi-masu.

I'm looking for a room, and I'd like one that has at least six-tatami  
mats.

3. At the end of a sentence, strongly and curtly expresses a decision or  
statement of fact.

English approximation: “..., all right.”

- A) 「君、本当にUFOを見たのか？」 「<sup>み</sup>見た tomo。」

“Kimi hontoo ni UFO o mita no ka?” “v. Mita tomo.”

“You really saw a UFO?” “I saw it, all right.”

- B) <sup>きき</sup>君の<sup>き</sup>聞き<sup>ちが</sup>違いた tomo <sup>ぼく</sup>僕が<sup>い</sup>そんなこと<sup>いう</sup>言うわけないだろ？

Kimi no kiki-chigai c. da tomo. Boku ga son-na koto yuu  
wake nai daro?

You misheard me, all right. You know there's no way I'd say

something like that !

## TO-MO と-も Combination particle

A combination of the particles “to と” and “mo も.” Emphasizes the preceding noun. Not translatable.

- A) <sup>あす</sup>明日アメリカにたちます。あなた とも <sup>とうぶん</sup>当分 <sup>め</sup>お目にかかれませんが、  
<sup>げん き</sup>どうかお元気で。

Asu amerika ni tachi-masu. n. Anata to mo toobun ome ni  
kakare-masen ga, dooka ogenki de.

I'm leaving for the U.S. tomorrow. I won't be seeing you for a long time, but please take care of yourself.

- B) <sup>けいかん</sup>警官 とも <sup>ひと</sup>あろう人が、<sup>ぬす</sup>盗み <sup>はたら</sup>を働いたとはねえ。  
n. Keekan to mo aroo hito ga, nusumi o hataraita to wa nee.  
(Can you believe that) a policeman (literally: someone who is a policeman) committed a theft!

## TO-MO-ARE と-も-あれ Combination particle

A combination of the particles “to と” and “mo も,” and “are あれ,” from the verb “aru ある (to be/exist).”

1. After a noun or a nominal followed by “wa は,” plays down its importance.

English approximation: “putting aside ...” “never mind ...”

- A) <sup>いきさき</sup>行き先は ともあれ、<sup>ことし</sup>今年こそは <sup>かいがいりよう</sup>海外旅行をしようよ。

Ikisaki <sub>p.</sub>wa to mo are, kotoshi koso wa kaigai-ryokoo o shi-yoo yo.

Putting aside the (issue of the) destination (for the time being), let's (agree to) finally go on a trip overseas this year.

- B) <sup>い</sup>言<sup>わけ</sup>い訳は ともあれ、もっと勉強<sup>べんきょう</sup>しないと希望<sup>きぼう</sup>する学校<sup>がっこう</sup>に入れないよ。

liwake <sub>p.</sub>wa to mo are, motto benkyoo shi-nai to kiboo-suru gakkoo ni haire-nai yo.

Never mind excuses; if you don't study more, you won't be able to get into the school of your choice.

2. In the pattern “nani wa to mo are <sup>なに</sup>何はともあれ.”

English approximation: “in any case ...”

- A) 「うわあ、おいしそうなケーキ!」 「<sup>いま</sup>今いただいたのよ。<sup>なに</sup>何は ともあれ、早速<sup>さっそく</sup>いたしましょうよ。」

“Uwaa, oishi-soona keeki!” “Ima itadaita no yo. <sub>ph.</sub>Nani wa to mo are, sassoku itadaki-mashoo yo.”

“Wow, that cake looks good!” “(Someone) just gave it to us. In any case, let's go ahead and eat it now.”

- B) <sup>なに</sup>何は ともあれ、<sup>すべ</sup>全ては<sup>あす</sup>明日のことにして、<sup>きょう</sup>今日のところは<sup>ね</sup>寝ることにしましょう。

<sub>ph.</sub>Nani wa to mo are, subete wa asu no koto ni shite, kyoo no tokoro wa neru koto ni shi-mashoo.

In any case, let's leave everything for tomorrow, and go to bed for tonight.

## TO-SHI-TE と-し-て Combination particle

A combination of the particles “to と” and “te て,” and “shi し,” from the verb “suru する (to do).”

1. Indicates a position or a circumstance.

English approximation: “as”

- A) <sup>こんど</sup> 今度の <sup>すいえいたいかい</sup> 水泳大会には、<sup>はやかわ</sup> 早川さんが <sup>がっこうだいひょうせんしゅ</sup> 学校代表選手 として <sup>えら</sup> 選ばれました。

Kondo no suiee-taikai ni wa, hayakawa-san ga n. gakkoo-dai-hyoo-senshu to shi te erabare-mashita.

For the coming swim meet, Hayakawa was chosen as the athlete representing our school.

- B) <sup>まんじろう</sup> ジョン万次郎は、<sup>にほんじん</sup> 日本人 として <sup>はじ</sup> 初めて、<sup>きょういく</sup> アメリカで <sup>う</sup> 教育を受けた。
- Jon manjiroo wa, n. nihonjin to shi te hajimete, amerika de kyooiku o uketa.

John Manjiro was the first Japanese person (literally: the first person as a Japanese) to receive an education in the U.S.

2. Sets aside a topic for the time being.

English approximation: “let’s leave the ...”

- A) <sup>はなし</sup> 話は <sup>あと</sup> 後です として、<sup>しょくじ</sup> まず <sup>し</sup> 食事 <sup>に</sup> にしましょう。

Hanashi wa ato de v. suru to shi te, mazu shokuji ni shi-mashoo.

Let’s leave talking for later, and eat first.

- B) その <sup>はなし</sup> うわきは <sup>かれ</sup> それ として、<sup>はなし</sup> 彼 <sup>について</sup> については <sup>まだ</sup> まだ <sup>いろいろ</sup> いろいろ <sup>と</sup> と <sup>はなし</sup> 話 <sup>がある</sup> があるんだよ。

Sono uwasa wa n. sore **to shi te** , kare ni tsuite wa mada iro-iro  
to hanashi ga aru-n da yo.

That rumor aside, I have many other stories about him, you know.

3. Followed by a negative in the sentence or clause, shows that there are no exceptions to a category.

English approximation: “not even ...”

- A) <sup>ひとり</sup>一人 **として** <sup>もんだい</sup>この問題が<sup>と</sup>解けた<sup>がくせい</sup>学生はいませんでした。

n. Hitori **to shi te** kono mondai ga toketa gakusee wa i-masen  
deshita.

There was not even one, among the students, who could solve this problem.

- B) <sup>ぼく</sup>僕は、<sup>いちにち</sup>一日 **として** <sup>かのじょ</sup>彼女の<sup>おも</sup>ことを<sup>ひ</sup>思わない日はない。

Boku wa, n. ichi-nichi **to shi te** kanojo no koto o omowa-nai hi  
wa nai.

There isn't a single day that I don't think about her.

## TO-SHITE-MO と-して-も Combination particle

A combination of the particles “to と” and “mo も,” and “shite して,” from the verb “suru する (to do).”

1. Indicates that a position or a circumstance is the same as that which was mentioned in a previous sentence.

English approximation: “as for ..., also/too ...”

- A) わたし **としても**、あなたの<sup>なや</sup>悩みはよくわかります。<sup>おな</sup>同じような<sup>けいけん</sup>経験  
がありますから。

n. Watashi to shite mo, anata no nayami wa yoku wakari-masu.  
Onaji-yoona keeken ga ari-masu kara.

As for me, too, I understand your worries. I've also had similar experiences.

B) PTA としても、<sup>じゅぎょうりょう</sup>授業料の<sup>ね</sup>値上げは、<sup>もんだい</sup>問題だと<sup>かんが</sup>考えます。

n. PTA to shite mo, jugyoo-ryoo no ne-age wa, mondai da to kangae-masu.

As for the PTA, (we) too, think that the increase in tuition is a problem.

## 2. Establishes a hypothetical situation.

English approximation: “even if (you) were to ...”

A) わたしはその案には賛成する としても、<sup>かね</sup>お金は<sup>いま</sup>今は<sup>だ</sup>出せません。

Watashi wa sono an ni wa v. sansee-suru to shite mo, okane wa ima wa dase-masen.

Even if I were to agree to that proposal, I cannot give you any money now.

B) <sup>くるま</sup>車を買<sup>か</sup>い替<sup>か</sup>える としても、<sup>こんど</sup>今度も<sup>しろ</sup>やっぱり<sup>しろ</sup>白いのに<sup>しろ</sup>しましょうね。

Kuruma o v. kai-kaeru to shite mo, kondo mo yappari shiroi no ni shi-mashoo ne.

Even if we were to buy a new car, we would stick with white, right?

## TO-SHITE-WA として-は Combination particle

A combination of the particles “to と” and “wa は,” and “shite して,” from the verb “suru する (to do).” Indicates a position or a circumstance.

English approximation: “as for”

- A) 彼女<sup>かのじょ</sup> **としては**、彼<sup>かれ</sup>のプロポーズ<sup>ことわ</sup>を断るほかなかったのだろう。  
n. Kanojo **to shite wa**, kare no purupoozu o kotowaru hoka  
nakatta no daroo.

As for her, there was probably no other choice but to say no to his marriage proposal.

- B) わたし **としては**、彼<sup>かれ</sup>の意見<sup>いけん</sup>に反対<sup>はんたい</sup>です。  
n. Watashi **to shite wa**, kare no iken ni hantai desu.

As for me, I don't agree with his opinion.

## TO-WA とは Combination particle

A combination of the particles “to と” and “wa は.”

1. As a quotation, introduces the topic.

English approximation: “the (thing) that is called ...”

- A) ブラックホール **とは**、一体<sup>いったい</sup>どんなものなのだろう。  
n. Burakku-hooru **to wa**, ittai don-na mono na no daroo.  
What exactly is the thing that is called a black hole?
- B) 政治<sup>せいじ</sup> **とは**、政治家<sup>せいじか</sup>にだけ<sup>まか</sup>任せておいてよいものであろうか。  
n. Seiji **to wa**, seiji-ka ni dake makasete-oite yoi mono de  
aroo ka.

That which is called “government,” is it something that we should leave only in the hands of politicians?

2. As an emphatic version of “to と,” meaning “together with.”

English approximation: “with”

- A) わたし、高見君<sup>たかみくん</sup> とは<sup>と</sup> もう付き合う<sup>つきあ</sup> のやめたわ。

Watashi, <sup>n.</sup> takami-kun to wa moo tsuki-au no yameta wa.

I've decided to stop being friends with Takami.

- B) 小川さん<sup>おがわ</sup> とは<sup>と</sup>、小<sup>しょう</sup>学<sup>がっこう</sup>校<sup>と</sup>のときからの<sup>ともたち</sup>お友達<sup>ともたち</sup>ですの。

<sup>n.</sup> Ogawa-san to wa, shoogakoo no toki kara no otomodachi desu no.

I've been friends with Ogawa since grade school.

3. Placed at the end of a sentence as an exclamatory particle, expresses surprise, anger or some sort of emotion.

English approximation: “to think that ...”

- A) 竹内君<sup>たけうちくん</sup>、あんなに一生懸命<sup>いっしょうけんめい</sup>勉強<sup>べんきょう</sup>したのに<sup>と</sup>不合格<sup>ふごう</sup>だった とは<sup>と</sup>。

Takeuchi-kun, an-na ni isshoo-kenmee benkyoo-shita no ni fu-gookaku <sup>c.</sup> datta to wa .

Takeuchi studied so hard and to think that he didn't pass!

- B) もう今年<sup>ことし</sup>も十二月<sup>じゅうにがつ</sup> とは<sup>と</sup>。月<sup>つき</sup>日<sup>ひ</sup>のたつのは何<sup>なん</sup>と早<sup>はや</sup>いのだろう。

Moo kotoshi mo <sup>n.</sup> juuni-gatsu to wa . Tsukihi no tatsu no wa nan to hayai no daroo.

To think that it's already December! How quickly the days and months pass.

## TO-WA-IE と-は-いえ Combination particle

A combination of the particles “to と” and “wa は,” and “ie いえ,” from the verb “yuu いう (to say).” Used as an adversative conjunction. Interchangeable with “to wa ii-nagara とはいいいながら” or “to wa yuu mono no



とというのはの。”

English approximation: “even though”

- A) 梅雨 とはいえ、今年<sup>ことし</sup>は晴れた日<sup>ひ</sup>が多い<sup>おお</sup>。

n. Tsuyu to wa ie, kotoshi wa hareta hi ga ooi.

Even though it's the rainy season, there have been many clear days this year.

- B) このまつたけはおいしい とはいいながら、ずいぶん<sup>ねだん</sup>値段<sup>たか</sup>が高いね。

Kono matsutake wa <sup>adj.</sup>oishii to wa ii nagara, zuibun nedan ga takai ne.

Even though this matsutake mushroom is good, it's really expensive, isn't it?

## TO-YUU と-いう Combination particle

A combination of the particle “to と” and the verb “yuu いう (to say, called/named).”

1. Introduces a proper noun.

English approximation: “... called/named ...”

- A) 富士山<sup>ふじさん</sup> という山<sup>やま</sup>は、日本<sup>にほん</sup>で一番<sup>いちばん</sup>高い山<sup>やま</sup>です。

n. Fujisan to yuu yama wa, nihon de ichiban takai yama desu.

The mountain called Fuji-san is the tallest mountain in Japan.

- B) ナンシー という女性<sup>じょせい</sup>はどの人<sup>ひと</sup>ですか。

n. Nanshii to yuu josee wa dono hito desu ka?

Which person is the woman named Nancy?

2. After a number, indicates that the quantity of something has reached

that number.

English approximation: “numbering” “totaling”

- A) プロ野球の開幕試合に、五万人 という 人がスタジアムに押しかけた。

Puro-yakyuu no kaimaku-jiai ni, n. go-man nin to yuu hito ga sutajiamu ni oshikaketa.

For the opening game of baseball, people numbering fifty thousand rushed to the stadium.

- B) 何千枚 という 宝くじが、一日で売り切れた。

n. Nan-zen mai to yuu takara-kuji ga, ichi-nichi de uri-kireta.

Lottery tickets totaling several thousand were sold out overnight.

3. Placed after a phrase or a sentence, sets as a quotation and modifies the noun that immediately follows it.

English approximation: “(something) that ...”

- A) 林さんの息子さんがバスケットボールの選手だ という ことを聞きました。

cl. Hayashi-san no musuko-san ga basuketto-booru no senshu  
da to yuu koto o kiki-mashita.

I heard (the story) that Hayashi's son was a basketball player.

- B) お化けがでる という 話は信じられません。

cl. Obake ga deru to yuu hanashi wa shinjirare-masen.

I cannot believe a story that claims that there are ghosts.

4. Placed at the end of a sentence, follows a statement as a quotation.

English approximation: “I hear” “they say” “it's said”

- A) 彼の祖父は大学者だった という。

cl. Kare no sofū wa dai-gakusha datta to yuu .

They say that his grandfather was a great scholar.

B) <sup>むかし</sup>昔 <sup>まち</sup>この町 <sup>やま</sup>は山 だった という 。

cl. Mukashi kono machi wa yama datta to yuu .

It is said that this town used to be a mountain a long time ago.

5. Used between two repeated nouns, signifies every single one in that category.

English approximation: “every single ...”

A) <sup>こ</sup>濃い <sup>きり</sup>霧のため、<sup>くるま</sup>車 という <sup>くるま</sup>車はみんな <sup>はし</sup>ライトをつけて走っている。

Koi kiri no tame, n. kuruma to yuu kuruma wa min-na raito o tsukete hashitte-iru.

Due to the dense fog, every single car is running with its headlights on.

B) <sup>まつ</sup>お祭り <sup>むらじゅう</sup>で、<sup>おとこ</sup>村中の男 という <sup>おとこ</sup>男が <sup>かつ</sup>おみこしを担いでいる。

Omatsuri de, mura-juu no n. otoko to yuu otoko ga omikoshi o katsuide-iru.

Since it is festival time, every single man in the village is helping to carry the portable shrine.

## TO-YUU-KOTO-WA と-いう-こと-は Combination particle

A combination of the particles “to と” and “wa は,” the verb “yuu いう (to say)” and the noun “koto こと (fact/matter).” Used in drawing a conclusion from the action/situation described in the previous sentence.

English approximation: “that means ...”

- A) 彼<sup>かれ</sup>からまだ電話<sup>でんわ</sup>がかかってこない。 ということは、まだ出張<sup>しゅつちやう</sup>から帰<sup>かえ</sup>ってないのだらう。

Kare kara mada denwa ga kakatte-ko-nai. To yuu koto wa, mada shucchoo kara kaette-nai no daroo.

He hasn't called me yet. That means he probably hasn't come home from his business trip yet.

## TO-YUU-NO-WA(MO) と-いう-の-は(も) Combination particle

A combination of the particles “to と,” “no の,” and “wa(mo) は(も),” and the verb “yuu いう (to say).” Explains a reason or a cause for an action or situation.

English approximation: “the reason (for that) ...”

- A) 彼<sup>かれ</sup>は他人<sup>たにん</sup>を信じない。 というのは、友達<sup>ともだち</sup>にだまされたことがあるからです。

Kare wa hito o shinji-nai. To yuu no wa, tomodachi ni damasareta koto ga aru kara desu.

He doesn't trust other people. The reason (for that) is that he has been deceived by a friend in the past.

- B) 彼<sup>かれ</sup>は最近<sup>さいきん</sup>会社<sup>かいしや</sup>をやめました。 というのも、あたら<sup>あた</sup>ら<sup>じぎやう</sup>しい事業<sup>しぎ</sup>を始めたからです。

Kare wa saikin kaisha o yame-mashita. To yuu no mo, atarashii jigyou o hajimeta kara desu.

He recently quit his job. The reason (for that) was that he started a new business.

## TO-YUU-TO と-いう-と Combination particle

A combination of the particles “to と” and the verb “yuu いう (to say).”

1. As a conjunction, shows that whenever something occurs, something else also always happens.

English approximation: “every” “every time”

- A) この大学では、前日まで雨でも、卒業式 という 必ず晴れるのだよ。

Kono daigaku de wa, zenjitsu made ame demo, n. sotsugyoo-shiki to yuu to kanarazu hareru no da yo.

At this university, even if it were to rain until the day before, it always clears up on graduation day.

2. At the beginning of the sentence, in drawing what seems like the natural conclusion judging from the preceding statement.

English approximation: “if (we) say that, then ...”

- A) 学生は遊ぶところをたくさん知ってるからね。 という、学生はあまり勉強していないように聞こえるけど。

Gakusee wa asobu tokoro o takusan shitte-ru kara ne. To yuu to, gakusee wa amari benkyoo-shite-inai yoo ni kikoe-ru kedo.

Students know of lots of places to have fun, you know. If we say that, then, it sounds like they're not studying very much, but ...

## TTE って

Used in casual speech.

1. Introduces a quotation, similar to “to と.”

English approximation: “... say (that)”

- A) お父<sup>とう</sup>さんがね、わたしの作<sup>つく</sup>ったお料理<sup>りょうり</sup>とってもおいしかった<sup>って</sup>。

Otoosan ga ne, cl. watashi no tsukutta oryoori tottemo oishikatta tte.

Dad said that the dishes I cooked were really good.

- B) 彼<sup>かれ</sup>ね、今晚<sup>こんばん</sup>来<sup>き</sup>てくれないか<sup>って</sup> 言う<sup>い</sup>のよ。

Kare ne, cl. konban kite kurenai ka tte yuu no yo.

He asked me if I could come over tonight. (literally: He said to me, could you come over tonight.)

2. An informal variant of “to yuu という,” modifies the noun that directly follows this particle.

English approximation: “the (noun) called ...”

- A) 相撲<sup>すもう</sup><sup>って</sup> スポーツは、なかなか面白<sup>おもしろ</sup>いね。

n. Sumoo tte supootsu wa, naka-naka omoshiroi ne.

The sport called sumo is pretty interesting, isn't it?

- B) ニューヨーク<sup>って</sup> 街<sup>まち</sup>は、汚<sup>きたな</sup>いけど活気<sup>かつき</sup>があるね。

n. Nyuuyooku tte machi wa, kitanai kedo kakki ga aru ne.

The city called New York is dirty but full of life, isn't it?

3. Introduces the topic casually.

English approximation: “(speaking of)”

- A) オオカミ<sup>って</sup> 恐<sup>こわ</sup>いんだね、犬<sup>いぬ</sup>によく似<sup>に</sup>てるけど。

n. Ookami tte kowai-n da ne, inu ni yoku niteru kedo.

Wolves are vicious, even though they look a lot like dogs.

B) あした<sup>あさ</sup>大阪<sup>おおさか</sup>へ行く<sup>い</sup> って<sup>ほんとう</sup> 本当？

cl. Ashita oosaka e iku tte hontoo?

Is it true you're going to Osaka tomorrow? (literally: That you are going to Osaka tomorrow, is it true?)

4. In an interrogative sentence.

1) Repeats that which was said by the other party.

English approximation: “(You) are asking/saying ...?”

A) いつ<sup>おんせん</sup>温泉<sup>い</sup>に行く<sup>い</sup>か って？ <sup>いそが</sup>忙しい<sup>とうぶん</sup>から<sup>だめ</sup>当分駄目だね。

cl. Itsu onsen ni ikoo ka tte? Isogashii kara toobun dame da ne.

You're asking when we should go to a hot spring? Not for a while because I'm busy.

B) もう<sup>で</sup>出かけよう って？ <sup>きみはや</sup>君早い<sup>したく</sup>ね、<sup>したく</sup>支度<sup>するの</sup>するの。

cl. Moo dekake yoo tte? Kimi hayai ne, shitaku-suru no.

You're saying let's go already? You're quick at getting ready, aren't you?

1) Expresses a desire to confirm what was said by the other party.

English approximation: “Is it true that ...?”

A) <sup>かのじょ</sup>彼女<sup>み</sup>を見<sup>み</sup>かけた って？ いつ、どこで？

cl. Kanojo o mikaketa tte? Itsu, doko de?

Is it true that you saw her? When and where?

B) <sup>いがくぶ</sup>医学部<sup>ごうかく</sup>に合格<sup>ごうかく</sup>な<sup>ごうかく</sup>った<sup>ごうかく</sup>んです って？ おめで<sup>ごうかく</sup>とう<sup>ごうかく</sup>ございます。

cl. Igakubu ni gookaku nasatta-n desu tte? Omedetoo

gozaimasu.

Is it true that you got into medical school? Congratulations!

5. In talking about hearsay.

English approximation: “(they) say” “I hear”

- A) <sup>わたなべ</sup> 渡辺さんちね、<sup>おお</sup> 大きなカラーテレビ<sup>か</sup> 買ったんだ って。

Watanabe-san chi ne, cl. ookina karaaterebi katta-n da tte.

I hear that the Watanabes bought a big color TV.

- B) <sup>かちょう</sup> 課長の<sup>はなし</sup> 話では、<sup>こんど</sup> 今度の<sup>すく</sup> ボーナス<sup>すく</sup> いつもより少ないんだ って。

Kachoo no hanashi de wa, cl. kondo no boonasu itsumo yori  
sukunai-n da tte.

According to what the section chief said, our bonuses this time will  
be less than usual.

6. In the pattern “datte だって.”

English approximation: “(he/she) says ...”

- A) <sup>にい</sup> お兄ちゃんあしたテストがあるから、<sup>ぼく</sup> 僕と<sup>あそ</sup> 遊ぶ<sup>じかん</sup> 時間ないんだ って

cl. Oniichan ashita tesuto ga aru kara, boku to asobu jikan nai-n  
da tte.

My elder brother said that he has a test tomorrow, so he has no  
time to play with me.

- B) <sup>はやくわ</sup> コンクールね、<sup>いっとう</sup> 早川さんが一等だ って さ。

cl. Konkuuru ne, hayakawa-san ga it-too da tte sa.

They said that Hayakawa has placed first in the competition.

7. The casual version of “tote とて”; poses a hypothetical situation.

English approximation: “even if (I) were to ...”

- A) <sup>いっしょうけんめいべんきょう</sup> 一生懸命勉強した って、<sup>いい だくん</sup> 飯田君にはかなわない



Isshoo-kenmee v. benkyoo-shita tte, iida-kun ni wa kanawa-nai.

Even if I were to study very hard, I couldn't compete with Iida.

B) いまさら<sup>なげ</sup>嘆いた って はじまらない。

Imasara v. nageita tte hajimara-nai.

It wouldn't do any good to grieve now. (literally: Even if I were to grieve now, it wouldn't do any good.)

## WA は

### FUNDAMENTALS OF “WA は”

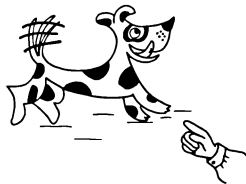
First, note that the particle “は” is read “wa,” even though it is normally read “ha.” Also, when reading a romanized sentence, you should note that “wa” has two hiragana possibilities: は, which is the particle to be discussed here, and the particle わ. Generally speaking, you can apply the following rule in deciding between the two choices:

- (a) If “wa” appears in the middle of a sentence after the subject (a noun or a nominal), then it is the particle は.
- (b) If “wa” appears at the end of a sentence or clause following a copula, verb, or adjective, the particle is わ.

For example: あれ は <sup>いぬ</sup>犬です わ。

Are wa inu desu wa.

That is a dog.



1. “Wa は” as a topic marker in an affirmative sentence.

“wa は” marks the topic or the subject by directly following it. The structure that is established, then, is a topic followed by a comment on that topic, where “wa は” functions like “as for ...,” or “in referring to ....” Note that the particle “ga が” also serves as a topic/subject marker, but is used differently (see p. 34).

- A) ライオン は <sup>もうじゅう</sup> 猛獣だ。

n. Raion wa moojuu da.

As for lions, (they) are ferocious animals.



- B) この本 は <sup>ほん</sup> <sup>むずか</sup> 難しい。

Kono n. hon wa muzukashii.

As for this book, (it) is difficult.

- C) あの は <sup>やまだ</sup> 山田さん <sup>しゅじん</sup> のご主人です。

Ano n. hito wa, yamada-san no goshujin desu.

As for that person, (he) is Mrs. Yamada's husband.

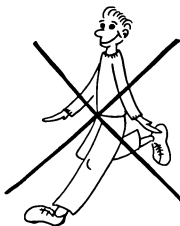
2. “Wa は” as a topic marker in a negative sentence.

In a negative sentence, “wa は” usually indicates a comparison, emphasis, or choice.

- A) わたし は <sup>い</sup> 行きません。

n. Watashi wa iki-masen.

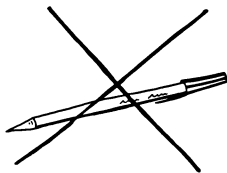
As for me, I won't go./I'm not going to go. (i.e. I will not go, but someone else probably will.)



B) ボールペン は ありません。

n. Boorupen wa ari-masen.

There is no ball-point pen. (i.e. There is no ball-point pen, but there are other writing instruments.)



\* Note that when the subject is an interrogative pronoun, “ga が” is used instead of “wa は” (see p. 34).

3. As an emphatic particle.

1) When the topic is the object of a verb, it is followed by “wa は,” which emphasizes it.

A) お金 は <sup>かね</sup> は <sup>ぼく</sup> <sup>はら</sup> 僕が払うよ。

n. Okane wa boku ga harau yo.

As for the money, I'll pay (it). (i.e. but I may not be responsible for other things.)



B) <sup>しゅくだい</sup> 宿題 は <sup>す</sup> もう済んだ。

n. Shukudai wa moo sun-da.

As for homework, (I) have already finished (it). (i.e. but I

haven't finished doing other things.)

2) Follows a particle or an adverb.

- A) いつも は バスで行きます。

adv. Itsumo wa basu de iki-masu.

Usually, (I) go by bus.

- B) あの<sup>ひと</sup>人と は もう<sup>つ</sup>付き合<sup>あ</sup>いせん。

Ano hito p. to wa moo tsuki-ai-masen.

I'm not going to associate with that person anymore. (literally: As for (relations) with that person, I'm not going to associate (with him/her) anymore.)

3) Following a verb, adjective, or the particles “te て” or “de で.”

- A) もう二度と<sup>にど たの</sup>頼<sup>たの</sup>み は しないからさ。

Moo nido to v. tanomi wa shi-nai kara sa.

Look, I won't ever ask you (for this favor) again, so ...

- B) 薬<sup>くすり</sup>は、まだ飲<sup>の</sup>んで は いないよ。

Kusuri wa, mada non p. de wa i-nai yo.

As for the medication, I haven't taken it yet.

- C) そのうわさ、うそで は ないのよ。

Sono uwasa, uso p. de wa nai no yo.

That rumor isn't a lie, you know.

4. Indicates a contrast between two topics.

- A) 昼<sup>ひる</sup> は 暑<sup>あつ</sup>く、夜<sup>よる</sup> は 寒<sup>さむ</sup>い。それが<sup>さばく きこう</sup>砂漠の気候だ。

n. Hiru wa atsuku, n. yoru wa samui. Sore ga sabaku no kikoo da.

Days are hot, and nights are cold. That is the climate of the desert.

B) これ は わたしの、それ は あなたの。<sup>まちが</sup>間違えないで。

n. Kore wa watashi no, n. sore wa anata no. Machigae-nai de.

This is mine, that is yours. Don't get them mixed up.

5. In the pattern "... (de)wa ... (da)ga ~(で)は~(だ)が," indicates that the speaker is recognizing another view or giving way to something.

English approximation: "..., (to be sure) ..."

A) <sup>でんわ</sup>電話をかけるに は <sup>か</sup>かけたが、<sup>てがみ</sup>手紙も出しておこう。

Denwa o kakeru p. ni wa kaketa ga, tegami mo dashite okoo.

I did telephone (to be sure), but I'll also send a letter.

B) この本、<sup>よ</sup>読むに は <sup>よ</sup>読んだが、<sup>むづか</sup>難しくてあまりよくわからない。

Kono hon, yomu p. ni wa yonda ga, muzukashiku te amari yoku wakara-nai.

I've read through this book (to be sure), but it's so difficult that I couldn't understand it well.

## WA わ

1. Found in women's language.

1) Placed at the end of a sentence, serves to soften the statement. Not translatable.

A) あら、<sup>へん</sup>変だわ。<sup>くるま</sup>車の<sup>かぎ</sup>鍵、<sup>たし</sup>確かにここに<sup>お</sup>置いておいたんだけど。

Ara, hen c. da wa. Kuruma no kagi, tashika ni koko ni oite-oita-n da kedo.

Hmm, this is strange. I'm certain I put the car keys here, but ...

B) あら、<sup>すて</sup>すてきたわね、あなたのドレス。

Ara, suteki c. da wa ne, anata no doresu.

Wow, your dress is so nice.

- C) そうね、いますぐ彼に電話したほうがいいと思うわ。

Soo ne, ima sugu kare ni denwa-shita hoo ga ii to v. omou wa.

Well, yes, I think it would be better to call him right now.

- 2) Expresses a casual exclamation. Not translatable.

- A) 上手だわ、この絵。幸子さんがかいたんですって。

Joozu c. da wa, kono e. Sachiko-san ga kaita-n desut te.

This drawing is done well! Sachiko drew it, I hear.

- B) 驚いたわ、恐竜ってあんなに大きいとは思わなかったもの。

v. Odoroita wa, kyooryuu tte an-na ni ookii to wa omowa-nakatta mono.

I'm surprised! I hadn't thought that dinosaurs were that big.

2. In making a list in an exclamatory tone. Not translatable.

- A) 熱はでるわ、のどは痛いわ、今度の風邪はひどかった。

Netsu wa v. deru wa, nodo wa adj. itai wa, kondo no kaze wa hidokatta.

I had a fever, and a sore throat; this cold was pretty severe.

- B) アリの巣をつついたら、出るわ出るわ、何百というアリがはい出してきた。

Ari no su o tsutsuitara, v. deru wa v. deru wa, nan-byaku to yuu ari ga hai-dashite kita.

When I poked at the anthill, several hundreds of ants came flooding out (they just kept coming out (literally: came out and came out)).

## YA や

### FUNDAMENTALS OF “YA や”

The basic function of the particle “ya や” is similar to that of the particle “to と” (see P. 200). It lists nouns, phrases and clauses like the word “and” in English. However, whereas “to と” refers to specific, clearly defined things, “ya や” refers more to a category, and makes the thing more vague. Compare:

- a) ピクニックにはお菓子<sup>かし</sup>と<sup>と</sup>飲み物<sup>の飲み物</sup>を持って行きましょう。

Pikunikku ni wa n. okashi to n. nomimono o motte iki-mashoo.

Let's bring some candies and drinks on the picnic.



- ピクニックにはお菓子<sup>かし</sup>や<sup>や</sup>飲み物<sup>の飲み物</sup>を持って行きましょう。

Pikunikku ni wa n. okashi ya n. nomimono o motte iki-mashoo.

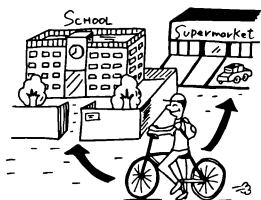
Let's bring something like candies and drinks on the picnic.



- b) 学校へ行くとき と 買い物に行くときは自転車で行きます。

n. Gakkoo e iku toki to n. kaimono ni iku toki wa jitensha de  
clause clause  
 iki-masu.

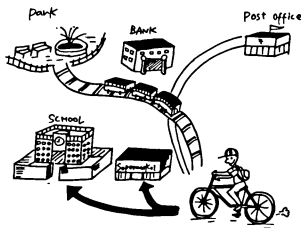
I ride my bicycle (only when I) go to school and go shopping.



- がっこう　い　学校へ行くとき　や　か　もの　い　買い物に行くときは　じてんしゃ　い　自転車で行きます。

n. Gakkoo e iku toki ya n. kaimono ni iku toki wa jitensha de  
clause clause  
 iki-masu.

I ride my bicycle to go to school and to go shopping, (and to go to other places).



1. Placed after a noun, loosely refers to it and other things that are also present or similar.

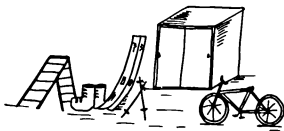
English approximation: "... and ... (among other things/places)"

- A) 物置に自転車<sup>ものおき</sup><sup>じてんしゃ</sup> や スキーがしまっておりまう。



Mono-oki ni <sup>n.</sup> jiten<sup>sha</sup> ya sukii ga shimatte ari-masu.

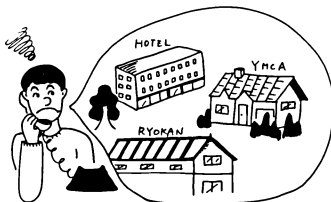
In the storage room, there is a bicycle and a pair of skis (among other things).



- B) <sup>なつやす</sup>夏休みで、ホテル や <sup>りょかん</sup>旅館はどこも <sup>まんいん</sup>満員だ。

Natsu-yasumi de, <sup>n.</sup> hote<sup>ru</sup> ya ryokan wa doko mo man-in da.

Since it is summer vacation, hotels, inns and the like are fully booked.



- C) <sup>きょう</sup>今日は <sup>たかしくん</sup>貴君の <sup>たんじょう</sup>誕生パーティーだったの。 <sup>まもるくん</sup>守君 や <sup>あさこ</sup>朝子ちゃん や  
<sup>とも</sup>智ちゃん や <sup>まことくん</sup>誠君、 <sup>なかよ</sup>仲良しが <sup>あつ</sup>みんな集まったのよ。

Kyoo wa takashi-kun no tanjoo paatii datta no. <sup>n.</sup> Mamoru-kun ya <sup>n.</sup> asako-chan ya <sup>n.</sup> tomo-chan ya makoto-kun, nakayoshi ga min-na atsumatta no yo.

Takashi had a birthday party today. All his good friends like Mamoru, Asako, Tomo, Makoto, among others, got together.

2. Indicates that an action is immediately followed by another action.  
Shortened version of "... ya ina ya ~やいなや" (see p. 247).

English approximation: "as soon as" "when" "the moment ..."

- A) <sup>かのじょ</sup>彼女は、 <sup>ぼく</sup>僕の <sup>すがた</sup>姿を見る や、 <sup>いか</sup>怒りを <sup>ぼくはつ</sup>爆発させた。

Kanojo wa, boku no sugata o v. miru ya, ikari o bakuhatsu saseta.

As soon as she saw me, she went into a fit of anger.

- B) <sup>じしん はっせい</sup>地震が発生する ya, <sup>きしょうちょう ただ</sup>気象庁は直ちに津波警報を出した。<sup>つなみけいほう</sup>

Jishin ga v. hassee-suru ya, kishoo-choo wa tadachi ni tsunami-keehoo o dashita.

As soon as the earthquake happened, the Meteorological Agency issued a tidal wave warning.

3. Placed at the end of a sentence in men's language.

1) Used in casually coaxing or inviting action.

English approximation: "shall we?" "would we?"

- A) まあ、もう少し話をしてから帰ろう ya。

Maa, moo sukoshi hanashi o shite kara v. kaeroo ya.

Well now, let's talk a little more before we go home, shall we?

- B) <sup>ひき</sup>久しぶりに、うなぎでも食べに行こう ya。

Hisashiburi ni, unagi demo tabe ni v. ikoo ya.

It's been a long time (since we had some), so let's go and have unagi or something, shall we?

- C) もうやめよう ya、ソフトボール。そろそろ暗くなってきたよ。

cl. Moo yame-yoo ya, sofutobooru. Soro-soro kuraku-natte kita yo.

Let's stop playing softball, shall we? It's getting dark.

2) Expresses a sense of resignation, helplessness or some sort of emotion.

Not translatable.

- A) <sup>ふみこ</sup>文子さん、<sup>ぼく</sup>僕の<sup>きもち</sup>気持ちわかってくれないんだ。まあ仕方がない ya。

そのうちわかってくれるさ。

Fumiko-san, boku no kimochi wakatte-kure-nai-n da. Maa

cl. shikata-ga-nai ya. Sono uchi wakatte-kureru sa.

Fumiko won't try to understand how I feel. Well, there is nothing I can do. I hope she'll understand me some day.

- B) まあ、いいや。もう一度やり直そう。

Maa, adj. ii ya. Moo ichido yari-naosoo.

Forget it. I'll do it over again.

- C) <sup>そのだくん</sup>園田君、<sup>で き</sup>ガールフレンドが出来たんだって。うらやましいや。

Sonoda-kun, gaaru-furendo ga dekita-n datte. adj. Urayamashii  
ya.

I hear that Sonoda has a girlfriend now. I'm envious.

- D) あ、ボールが当たって窓ガラスが割れちゃった。どうにもならないや。みんなで謝りにいこうよ。

A, booru ga atatte mado-garasu ga warechatta. cl. Doo ni mo  
nara-nai ya. Min-na de ayamari ni ikoo yo.

Oh no, the ball broke the window! We can't do anything about it.

Let's all go and apologize.

4. After the name of the party addressed, softens the tone of the entire sentence. Mainly used by elderly people. Not translatable.

- A) <sup>よしこ</sup>芳子や、ちょっと針に糸を通しておくれでないかい？

n. Yoshiko ya, chotto hari ni ito o tooshite okure-de=nai ka i?

Yoshiko, my dear, will you thread the needle for me?

- B) おじいさんや、今日はあなたの誕生日ですよ。

n. Ojiisan ya, kyoo wa anata no tanjoobi desu yo.

My dear old man, today is your birthday, you know.

5. In set phrases such as “mata mo ya またもや” and “mashite ya ましてや,” intensifies the meanings of “mata mo またも” (again) and “mashite まして” (even more). Not translatable.

- A) 僕は、またも や <sup>かのじょ</sup>彼女を <sup>おこ</sup>怒らせてしまった。

Boku wa, <sup>ph.</sup> mata mo ya kanojo o okorasete shimatta.

I ended up making her angry yet again.

- B) このドレス、<sup>きょねん</sup>去年でさえ <sup>きゅうくつ</sup>窮屈だったのよ。まして や、<sup>ことし</sup>今年はまた <sup>ふと</sup>太ったもの、<sup>はい</sup>入るはすがないわ。

Kono doresu, kyonen de sae kyuukutsu datta no yo.

<sup>adv.</sup> Mashite ya, kotoshi wa mata futotta mono, hairu hazu-ga-nai wa.

This dress was too tight for me last year even. So it's even more true that I can't fit into it, because I put on extra weight this year.

## YAI やい

1. Used in calling out to someone, with a tone of familiarity or scorn. Not translatable.

- A) <sup>あき おくん</sup>秋雄君 やい、ちょっとおじさんに <sup>て</sup>手 <sup>か</sup>を貸してくれ。

<sup>n.</sup> Akio-kun yai, chotto ojisan ni te o kashite kure.

Akio, come lend me (your uncle) a hand for a bit.

- B) <sup>けむし</sup>毛虫が <sup>こわ</sup>恐いの？ <sup>い</sup>いくじなし やい。

Kemushi ga kowai no? <sup>n.</sup> Ikujinashi yai.

You're scared of caterpillars? You coward!

2. At the end of a sentence, creates an exclamatory, curt statement. Not translatable.

- A) その鉢こわしたの僕じゃない やい。

Sono hachi kowashita no cl. boku ja nai yai.

I'm not the one who broke that flower pot!

- B) もう君になんか頼まない やい。

Moo kimi ni nanka v. tanoma-nai yai.

I'll never ask you for a favor again!

## YA-INA-YA や-いな-や Combination particle

A combination of the particle “ya や,” the adverb “ina いな(not)” and the particle “ya や.” Indicates that an action is immediately followed by another action.

English approximation: “as soon as ...”

- A) 主人は出張から帰る やいなや、風邪で寝込んでしまった。

Shujin wa shucchoo kara v. kaeru ya ina ya, kaze de nekonde shimatta.

My husband, as soon as he came back from his business trip, took to bed with a cold.

- B) 若者は馬にまたがる やいなや、駆け去った。

Wakamono wa uma ni v. matagaru ya ina ya, kake-satta.

The young man, as soon as he got on the horse, galloped away.

## YARA やら

1. Following an interrogative or a word indicating uncertainty, emphasizes the uncertainty. Not translatable.

- A) 僕のおじいさんは歯がたくさん欠けているので、何を言っている(の)  
やら さっぱりわからない。

Boku no ojisan wa ha ga takusan kakete-iru no de, nani o

v. itte-iru (no) yara sappari wakara-nai.

Since my grandfather is missing lots of teeth, (I) can't understand what he's saying at all.

- B) ひいおばあさんが亡くなったのは、いつのことだった やら 忘れてしまったよ。

Hii-obaasan ga nakunatta no wa, itsu no koto c. datta yara  
wasurete shimatta yo.

I've completely forgotten when it was that my great-grandmother passed away.

2. In the pattern “to yara とやら,” to make a statement more vague.

English approximation: “... or something/someone”

- A) 高見と やら という人がお目にかかりたいそうです。

Takami p. to yara yuu hito ga ome-ni-kakari-tai soo desu.

Someone named Takami or something says he would like to see you.

- B) 坂本さんは、どこと やら わたしの姉に似ている。

Sakamoto-san wa, doko p. to yara watashi no ane ni nite-iru.

Ms. Sakamoto somehow resembles my elder sister.

3. In the pattern “... yara ... yara 〜やら〜やら,” followed by a negation, indicates an indecision between the choices.

English approximation: “... or ...”

- A) 息子も大きくなって、どっちが主人のシャツ やら 息子のシャツ やら、見分けがつかない。

Musuko mo ookiku natte, docchi ga shujin no n. shatsu yara musuko no n. shatsu yara, miwake ga tsuka-nai.

My son has grown up, and I can't tell which are my husband's shirts and which are my son's.

- B) 今日は雨が降るの やら 降らないの やら。まあ傘だけは持っていこう。

Kyoo wa ame ga furu p. no yara fura-nai p. no yara. Maa kasa dake wa motte ikoo.

(I wonder) if it will rain today or not. I'll bring an umbrella (just in case).

4. Lists two or more items, with the implication that other items exist as well.

English approximation: “and ... (other things)”

- A) あしたはクリスマス、おいしいごちそう やら ケーキ やら たくさん作りましょうね。

Ashita wa kurisumasu, oishii n. gochisoo yara n. keeki yara takusan tsukuri-mashoo ne.

Tomorrow is Christmas Day, let's make lots of good food and cakes (and other things).

- B) <sup>うえ</sup>上の階でまた<sup>ふうふ</sup>夫婦けんかが<sup>はじ</sup>始まったよ。ものを<sup>な</sup>投げる やら <sup>わめく</sup> やら、<sup>たいへん</sup>大変だなあ

Ue no kai de mata fuufu-genka ga hajimatta yo. Mono o  
v. nageru yara v. wameku yara, taihen da naa.

The couple upstairs has started fighting again. They're throwing things and screaming (at each other) (and doing other things), it's quite something.

5. Placed at the end of a sentence, expresses a casual remark addressed to oneself with a tone of uncertainty.

English approximation: "I wonder ..."

- A) <sup>きょう</sup>今日も<sup>しゅじん</sup>主人は<sup>さかなつ</sup>魚釣りに<sup>で</sup>出かけた。<sup>なんびきつ</sup>何匹釣ってくる(の) やら。

Kyoo mo shujin wa sakana-tsuri ni dekaketa. Nan-biki v. tsutte-  
kuru (no) yara.

My husband went fishing again today. I wonder how many he'll catch and bring back?

- B) <sup>やくそく</sup>約束の<sup>じかん</sup>時間を一時間<sup>いちじかんしゅうごふん</sup>十五分も<sup>す</sup>過ぎたのに、<sup>かのしよ</sup>彼女は<sup>こ</sup>まだ来ない。どれ  
だけ<sup>ま</sup>待たされる(の) やら

Yakusoku no jikan o ichi-jikan juugo-fun mo sugita no ni,  
kanojo wa mada ko-nai. Doredake v. mata-sareru (no) yara.

Even though it's an hour and fifteen minutes past the time we're supposed to meet, she hasn't come yet. I wonder how long I'll be kept waiting?



## YO よ

1. Placed at the end of a sentence.

- 1) Transforms the sentence into an exclamation. Not translatable.

A) <sup>かのじょ</sup>彼女の<sup>はなよめすがた</sup>花嫁姿、<sup>ほんとう</sup>本当にきれいだっ<sup>た</sup>わ<sup>よ</sup>。

Kanojo no hanayome-sugata, hontoo ni kiree <sup>c.</sup> datta yo.

She looked really beautiful in her wedding dress!

B) あなたの<sup>えんそう</sup>演奏<sup>すてき</sup>素敵だったわ<sup>よ</sup>。

Anata no ensoo suteki datta <sup>p.</sup> wa yo.

Your performance was really splendid.

- 2) After an interrogative pronoun, adds a tone of criticism. Not translatable.

A) その<sup>かっこう</sup>格好<sup>なん</sup>は何だ<sup>よ</sup>。ズボンからシャツがはみ出しているじゃないか。

Sono kakkoo wa <sup>ph.</sup> nan da yo. Zubon kara shatsu ga hami dashite-iru ja nai ka.

What's with your attire? Your shirt's hanging out of your pants.

B) <sup>きゅう</sup>急に<sup>な</sup>泣き<sup>だ</sup>出したりして、<sup>いったい</sup>一体どうしたの<sup>よ</sup>。

Kyuu ni naki-dashitari shite, ittai <sup>cl.</sup> doo shita no yo.

(You) suddenly burst into tears, what in the world is the matter?

- 3) Emphasizes a command. Not translatable.

A) <sup>はや</sup>早く<sup>た</sup>食べろ<sup>よ</sup>。<sup>がっこう</sup>学校に<sup>おく</sup>遅れるぞ。

Hayaku <sup>v.</sup> tabero yo. Gakkoo ni okureru zo.

Eat quickly, already! You'll be late for school.

- B) 黙<sup>だま</sup>って辞書<sup>じしょ</sup>を使った<sup>つか</sup>ぐらいで、そんなに怒<sup>おこ</sup>るな<sup>よ</sup>。

Damatte jisho o tsukatta gurai de, son na ni okoru p. na <sup>yo</sup>.

Don't get so angry at me just for using your dictionary without asking you!

- 4) After the form “oo おお (う)” or “yoo よう.”

Emphasizes a statement of suggestion. Not translatable.

- A) いいお天気<sup>てんき</sup>だ。散歩<sup>さんぽ</sup>にでも行<sup>い</sup>こう<sup>よ</sup>。

li otenki da. Sanpo ni demo v. ikoo <sup>yo</sup>.

It's nice out. Let's go take a walk or something.

- B) ねえ、お父<sup>とう</sup>さん、おすし<sup>た</sup>食べよう<sup>よ</sup>。

Nee, otoosan, osushi v. tabe yoo <sup>yo</sup>.

Say, Dad, shall we have sushi?

Expresses an emotional state. Not translatable.

- C) なんて暗<sup>くら</sup>い道<sup>みち</sup>なんだろう<sup>よ</sup>。

Nan te kurai michi na-n c. deshoo <sup>yo</sup>.

What a dark road (this) is!

- D) 彼女<sup>かのじょ</sup>には新<sup>あた</sup>しいボーイフレンドか出来<sup>でき</sup>たらしい。僕<sup>ぼく</sup>のことなんかすぐ忘<sup>わす</sup>れるだろう<sup>よ</sup>。

Kanojo ni wa atarashii booi-furendo ga dekita rashii. Boku no koto nan ka sugu wasureru c. daroo <sup>yo</sup>.

I've heard that she has a new boyfriend. I'll bet she'll forget about me very soon!

2. Placed at the end of a clause or a sentence.

- 1) Expresses an exclamatory address. Not translatable.

- A) 神<sup>かみ</sup><sup>よ</sup>、お守<sup>まも</sup>りください。

n. Kami yo, omamori kudasai.

God, please protect me.

- B) おーい! <sup>ひらいわくん</sup>平岩君 よ、<sup>はや のぼ</sup>早く登ってこいよ。すばらしい<sup>けしき</sup>景色だぞ。

Ooi! n. Hiraiwa-kun yo, hayaku nobotte koi yo. Subarashii keshiki da zo.

Hey! Hiraiwa, come climb up quickly! It's a great view!

- 2) As a “filler” particle placed at pauses in a sentence, to catch a breath or call something to the attention of the party addressed. Not translatable.

- A) お父さん<sup>とう</sup>まだ<sup>かえ</sup>帰ってこないの? ひょっとするとだよ、おじさんの<sup>うち</sup>家に寄っているのかもしれないね。

Otoosan mada kaette ko-nai no? Hyotto suru to c. da yo, ojisan no uchi ni yotte-iru no kamo-shirenai ne.

Your father's not home yet? There's a chance that maybe he has stopped by your uncle's.

- B) <sup>まんいち</sup>万ーだよ、<sup>たから</sup>宝くじの<sup>いっとう</sup>一等が<sup>あた</sup>当たったらどうする?

Man-ichi c. da yo, takara-kuji no it-too ga atattara doo suru?

Let's say that by a one-in-ten-thousand chance, you won the lottery, what would you do?

## YORI より

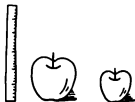
1. Makes a comparison. Also in the forms “yorika よりか,” or “yorimo よりも.”

English approximation: “than”

- A) このりんごは、あのりんご より<sup>おお</sup> 大きいです。

Kono ringo wa, ano n. ringo yori ookii desu.

This apple is bigger than that apple.



- B) わたしは、あなた より(か・も)<sup>せ たか</sup> 背が高い。

Watashi wa, n. anata yori(ka/mo) se ga takai.

I'm taller than you.



- C) 今日のテストは思った より(か・も)<sup>むづか</sup> 難しくなかった。

Kyoo no tesuto wa v. omotta yori(ka/mo) muzukashiku-nakatta.

Today's exam was less difficult than I had expected.

- D)きのう より(か・も)<sup>きょう</sup> 今日のほうがずっと寒い。

n. Kinoo yori(ka/mo) kyoo no hoo ga zutto samui.

Today is much colder than yesterday.

2. Establishes a boundary. Often followed by a word describing time, distance, or position.

English approximation: "than"

- A) 僕たちの学校は、駅 より<sup>ぼく がっこう えき</sup> 手前にあります。

Boku tachi no gakkoo wa, n. eki yori temae ni ari-masu.

Our school is before the station. (i.e. closer to us than the station.)

- B) まだおなかがすいていないなら、夕 より<sup>ゆうしょく しちじ あと</sup> 食は七時 後にしましょう。

Mada onaka ga suite-inai nara, yuushoku wa n. shichi-ji yori ato ni shi-mashoo.

If you're not hungry yet, let's have dinner after seven o'clock.  
(literally: later than seven.)

- C) ホームの白線<sup>はくせん</sup>より<sup>うちがわ</sup>内側<sup>ま</sup>でお待ちください。

Hoomu no n. hakusen yori uchigawa de omachi kudasai.

Please wait inside the white line on the platform. (literally: at a more inner location than the white line.)

3. In the pattern “yori hoka よりほか,” followed by a negation, shows that matters are limited to what precedes the particle and nothing else.

English approximation: “(nothing else) to do besides ...”

- A) どうしても電話<sup>でんわ</sup>が通<sup>つう</sup>じない。こうなつては、中谷君<sup>なかやくん</sup>の家<sup>うち</sup>へ行<sup>い</sup>くより<sup>ま</sup>ほかない。

Doo shite mo denwa ga tsuuj-i-nai. Koo natte wa, nakaya-kun no uchi e .iku yori hoka nai.

I can't get through on the phone no matter what. This being the case, there's nothing (I) can do except go to Nakaya's house.

- B) ケーブルカーが故障<sup>こしょう</sup>で動<sup>うご</sup>かない。直<sup>なお</sup>るまで待<sup>ま</sup>つより<sup>ま</sup>ほかないね。

Keeburukaa ga koshoo de ugoka-nai. Naoru made .matsu yori hoka nai ne.

The tramway is out of order and not running. There's nothing to do but wait.

4. In formal or written language, indicates the starting point of time or space for an action. In colloquial usage, “kara から” is usually used in its place.

English approximation: “from”

- A) 新幹線<sup>しんかんせん</sup>ひかり一<sup>いち</sup>号<sup>ごう</sup>博多<sup>はくた</sup>行きは、十六番線<sup>じゅうろくばんせん</sup>より<sup>はっしや</sup>発車<sup>はつしや</sup>します。

Shin-kansen hikari-ichi-goo hakata-yuki wa, n. juuroku-ban-sen  
yori hassha-shi-masu.

Shin-kansen Hikari No. 1 to Hakata will be leaving from track No.  
16.

- B) <sup>きょう かいぎ いちじ</sup>今日の会議は一時 yori <sup>はじ</sup>始まります。

Kyoo no kaigi wa n. ichi-ji yori hajimari-masu.

Today's meeting will start from one o'clock.

5. Used with an interrogative noun such as “doko どこ (where),” “dare だれ (who),” “nani 何 (what),” etc., to indicate that which follows it is the best.

English approximation: “no better than”

- A) どこ yori <sup>わがや</sup>我が家が一番だね。

n. Doko yori wagaya ga ichi-ban da ne.

There is no better place than our home.

- B) まあ、とりたてのナシ、<sup>なに</sup>何 yori のものをありがとうございます。

Maa, toritate no nashi, n. nani yori no mono o arigatoo  
gozaimasu.

My goodness, (these are) freshly picked pears; thank you so much  
(for giving us something that cannot be surpassed.)

- C) <sup>きみ</sup>君はだれ yori (も) <sup>はや</sup>早く <sup>はし</sup>走ったね。

Kimi wa n. dare yori (mo) hayaku hashitta ne.

You ran faster than anyone else, didn't you?

6. Indicates the basis for conclusions, results, etc.

English approximation: “on the basis of” “from”

- A) ピアノ・コンクールの優勝者はあしたの最終審査の結果に yori <sup>き</sup>決

めます。

Piano konkuruu no yuushoo-sha wa ashita no saishuu-shinsa  
no kekka <sub>p. ni</sub> yori kime-masu.

The winner of the piano competition will be selected on the basis  
of the results of the final performance tomorrow.

- B) <sup>こんかい</sup> 今回の <sup>じんこうちょうき</sup> 人口調査に より、<sup>にほん</sup> 日本の <sup>じんこう</sup> 人口は <sup>やくいちおくにせんまんにん</sup> 約一億二千万人とわかった。

Konkai no jinkoo-choosa <sub>p. ni</sub> yori, nihon no jinkoo wa yaku  
ichi-oku ni-sen-man nin to wakatta.

From this census, it's understood that the population of Japan is  
about one hundred twenty million.

7. In the pattern “to yuu yori というより,” indicates that a person/thing  
seems to be or is considered to be something other than what it is.

English approximation: “more of a ... than ...”

- A) <sup>さいとうくん</sup> 斎藤君は、<sup>ビジネス</sup> ビジネスマンという より <sup>かがくしゃ</sup> 科学者だ。

Saitoo-kun wa, bijinesuman <sub>ph. to yuu</sub> yori kagakusha da.

Saito is more of a scientist than a businessman.

- B) <sup>おお</sup> 大きいなあ！ <sup>みずうみ</sup> これは湖という より <sup>うみ</sup> 海だ。

Ookii naa! Kore wa mizuumi <sub>ph. to yuu</sub> yori umi da.

It's so big! It's more like an ocean than a lake.

## ZE ゼ

Found in men's language. Used only in casual conversation among  
colleagues or with those whose supposed social status is below that of the  
speaker.

To elicit an agreement from the party addressed. Not translatable.

- A) 吉岡君が係長になるんだ。みんなで祝いしようぜ。

Yoshioka-kun ga kakari-choo ni naru-n da. Min-na de v. oiwai-shiyoo ze.

Yoshioka is going to become an assistant section chief. Let's all celebrate (for him).

- B) 今までは三日坊主だった。だが、今度はきっとタバコをやめるぜ。

Ima made wa mikka-booze datta. Daga, kondo wa kitto tabako o v. yameru ze.

Until now, I couldn't keep a resolution past three days. However, this time, I'm really going to quit smoking.

## ZO ゼ

Placed at the end of a sentence or a clause, emphatically states one's opinion or judgement. Found in men's language. Not translatable.

- A) 君より僕のほうが背が高いぜ。

Kimi yori boku no hoo ga se ga adj. takai zo.

I'm taller than you!

- B) ほら、真一、投げるぜ。

Hora, shin-ichi, v. nageru zo.

Look, Shin-ichi, I'm going to throw (the ball)!



## ZUTSU ずつ

Establishes equal divisions.

English approximation: "... at a time" "(quantity) each ..."

- A) 歯<sup>は</sup>が悪い<sup>わる</sup>ので、固<sup>かた</sup>いものは少し<sup>すこ</sup> **ずつ** しかかめません。

Ha ga warui node, katai mono wa n. sukoshi **zutsu** shika kame-masen.

Since I have bad teeth, I can only chew tough things a little at a time.

- B) 漫画<sup>まんが</sup>の本<sup>ほん</sup>、一冊<sup>いっさつ</sup> **ずつ** じゃなくて、もっとたくさん<sup>か</sup>貸<sup>か</sup>してよ。

Manga no hon, n. is-satsu **zutsu** ja naku te, motto takusan kashite yo.

Don't lend me comic books one at a time; let me have a lot more (at once).

- C) どのクラスにも、学級委員<sup>がっきゅういん</sup>が二人<sup>ふたり</sup> **ずつ** います。

Dono kurasu ni mo, gakkyuu-iin ga n. futari **zutsu** i-masu.

There are two class representatives for each and every class.



# **MASTERING PARTICLES: EXERCISES**

## INTRODUCTION

This section is designed for students who are at the beginning level of Japanese language studies. Learning how and when to use particles is so essential to Japanese that it's best to master the basics at an early stage. Exposure to numerous examples and problems will familiarize you with the appropriate usages.

These exercises start out with a variety of practice sentences involving the particles “waは” and “gaが,” since it's crucial to grasp the difference between these two fundamental particles. As you progress, other particles are gradually introduced into the problems, and sentence structures become increasingly more complex. Your instructor may wish to use these problems as homework. There is also an answer key in the back.

# Lesson 1

Complete the sentences below, using either “は(wa)” or “が(ga)” in the parentheses.

1. リンゴ (     ) <sup>みつ</sup>三つあります。

Ringo (     ) mit-tsu ari-masu.

There are three apples.

2. あれ (     ) <sup>あか</sup>赤いリンゴです。

Are (     ) akai ringo desu.

That is a red apple.

3. <sup>がくせい</sup>学生 (     ) <sup>ふたり</sup>二人います。

Gakusee (     ) futari i-masu.

There are two students.

4. <sup>がくせい</sup>あの学生 (     ) <sup>じん</sup>アメリカ人です。

Ano gakusee (     ) amerika-jin desu.

That student is an American.

5. あなた (     ) どこ (     ) <sup>いた</sup>痛いんですか？

Anata (     ) doko (     ) itai-n desu ka?

(As for you,) where does it hurt?

6. わたし (     ) <sup>あたま</sup>頭 (     ) <sup>いた</sup>痛いんです。

Watashi (     ) atama (     ) itai-n desu.

(As for me,) my head hurts.

7. わたし (     ) <sup>あたま</sup>頭 (     ) <sup>いた</sup>痛くありません。

Watashi (     ) atama (     ) itaku-arimasen.

(As for me,) my head doesn't hurt (but other parts do).

8. ほら、子供達（ ）たくさん来ましたよ。

Hora, kodomo-tachi ( ) takusan ki-mashita yo.

Look, many children have come.

9. 子供達（ ）みんな男の子ですよ。

Kodomo-tachi ( ) min-na otoko-no-ko desu yo.

The children are all boys.

10. 田中さん（ ）今日来ますか？

Tanaka-san ( ) kyoo ki-masu ka?

Will Mr. Tanaka come today? (Literally: "As for Mr. Tanaka ...")

11. はい、来ますよ。あ、田中さん（ ）来ました。

Hai, ki-masu yo. A, tanaka-san ( ) ki-mashita.

Yes, (he) will come. Ah, Mr. Tanaka has come.

12. 風（ ）強いですねえ。

Kaze ( ) tsuyoi desu nee.

It's windy, isn't it? (Literally: "The winds are strong, aren't they?")

13. 雨（ ）降ってきましたよ。

Ame ( ) futte-ki-mashita yo.

It has started to rain. (Literally: "The rain has started to fall.")

14. あの大きい窓（ ）きれいです。

Ano ookii mado ( ) kiree desu.

That big window is clean. (Literally: "As for that big window ...")

15. 窓（ ）開いています。

Mado ( ) aite-imasu.

The window is open.

16. 山（ ）見えます。

Yama ( 1 ) mie-masu.

(I) can see a mountain.

17. あなた ( ) あの山 ( ) 見えますか？

Anata ( 1 ) ano yama ( 2 ) mie-masu ka?

Can you see that mountain? (Literally: "As for you ...")

18. いいえ、山 ( ) 見えません ( )、木 ( ) 見えます。

lie, yama ( 1 ) mie-masen ( 2 ), ki ( 3 ) mie-masu.

No, (I) can't see a mountain, but (I) can see trees. (Literally: "As for a mountain, I can't see (it), but ...")

19. どんな木 ( ) 見えますか？

Don-na ki ( 1 ) mie-masu ka?

What kind of trees can (you) see?

20. いろいろな木 ( ) 見えます。

Iro-iro na ki ( 1 ) mie-masu.

(I) can see many kinds of trees.

21. きれいな花 ( ) たくさん咲いています。

Kiree na hana ( 1 ) takusan saite-imasu.

Beautiful flowers are blooming in abundance.

22. チューリップ ( ) まだ咲いていません。

Chuurippu ( 1 ) mada saite-imasen.

Tulips have not bloomed yet (but other flowers have).

23. 桜 ( ) どうですか？

Sakura ( 1 ) doo desu ka?

What about cherry blossoms?

24. 桜 ( ) ありませんよ。

Sakura (    |    ) ari-masen yo.

There are no cherry blossoms (but there are other flowers).

25. わたし (    ) <sup>やまだ</sup>山田<sup>もう</sup>と申します。

Watashi (    |    ) yamada to mooshi-masu.

I am (called) Yamada.

26. ああ、あなた (    ) <sup>やまだ</sup>山田<sup>さん</sup>でいらっしゃいますか。

Aa, anata (    |    ) yamada-san de irasshaimasu ka.

Oh, you are Mr. Yamada.

27. じゃあ、どなた (    ) <sup>たなか</sup>田中<sup>さん</sup>ですか？

Jaa, donata (    |    ) tanaka-san desu ka?

Then, who is Mr. Tanaka?

28. <sup>わたくし</sup>私 (    ) <sup>たなか</sup>田中<sup>です</sup>。

Watakushi (    |    ) tanaka desu.

I am Tanaka.

29. わたし (    )、<sup>にほんご</sup>日本語 ( <sup>すこ</sup> ㊦ ) <sup>はな</sup>少し話<sup>せ</sup>ます

Watashi (    |    ) nihongo (    2    ) sukoshi hanase-masu.

I can speak a little bit of Japanese.

30. わたし (    )、<sup>ご</sup>フランス語 (    ) わかりますが、<sup>ご</sup>ドイツ語 (    ) わかりません。

Watashi (    |    ) furansugo (    2    ) wakari-masu ga, doitsugo (    3    ) wakari-masen.

I can understand French, but not German.



## Lesson 2

Complete the sentences below, using “は(wa)”, “が(ga)”, or “も(mo)” in the parentheses.

1. これ (     ) <sup>ひゃくえん</sup> 百 円です。

Kore (    1    ) hyaku en desu.

This is one hundred yen.

2. どれ (     ) <sup>にひゃくえん</sup> 二百 円ですか？

Dore (    1    ) ni-hyaku en desu ka?

Which one is two hundred yen?

3. あれ (     ) <sup>にひゃくえん</sup> 二百 円です。

Are (    1    ) ni-hyaku en desu.

That is two hundred yen.

4. これ (     ) <sup>にひゃくえん</sup> 二百 円ですか？

Kore (    1    ) ni-hyaku en desu ka?

Is this two hundred yen also?

5. いいえ、それ (     ) <sup>にひゃくえん</sup> 二百 円じゃありません。

lie, sore (    1    ) ni-hyaku en ja ari-masen.

No, that isn't two hundred yen.

6. あなた (     ) <sup>せ</sup> 背 (     ) <sup>たか</sup> 高いですねえ。

Anata (    1    ) se (    2    ) takai desu nee.

You are tall, aren't you. (Literally: “Your height is high, isn't it.”)

7. <sup>とよだ</sup> 豊田さん (     ) <sup>せ</sup> 背 (     ) <sup>たか</sup> 高いですねえ。

Toyoda-san (    1    ) se (    2    ) takai desu nee.

Ms. Toyoda is also tall, isn't she?

8. わたし (     ) 背 (     ) 低<sup>ひく</sup>いんです。

Watashi (   1   ) se (   2   ) hikui-n desu.

I am short. (Literally: "As for me, my height is low.")

9. き<sup>てんき</sup>のう (     ) どんなお天気でしたか？

Kinoo (   1   ) don-na otenki deshita ka?

How was the weather yesterday?

10. き<sup>ゆき</sup>のう (     ) 雪 (     ) 降<sup>ふ</sup>りました。

Kinoo (   1   ) yuki (   2   ) furi-mashita.

Yesterday, it snowed.

11. 今日<sup>きょう</sup> (     ) 雪<sup>ゆき</sup> (     ) 降<sup>ふ</sup>っていますか？

Kyoo (   1   ) yuki (   2   ) futte-imasu ka?

Is it snowing today, too?

12. いいえ、今日<sup>きょう</sup> (     ) 雪<sup>ゆき</sup> (     ) 降<sup>ふ</sup>っていません。でも霧<sup>きり</sup> (     ) 濃<sup>こ</sup>いです。

lie, kyoo (   1   ) yuki (   2   ) futte-imasen. Demo kiri (   3   ) koi desu.

No, today it's not snowing (although it snowed yesterday). But the fog is dense.

13. あした (     ) 雨<sup>あめ</sup> (     ) 降<sup>ふ</sup>るでしょう。

Ashita (   1   ) ame (   2   ) furu deshoo.

Tomorrow, it will probably rain.

14. 今日<sup>きょう</sup> (     ) 熱<sup>ねつ</sup> (     ) あります。

Kyoo (   1   ) netsu (   2   ) ari-masu.

Today, (I) have a fever.

15. き<sup>ねつ</sup>のう (     ) 熱 (     ) ありましたか？

Kinoo ( 1 ) netsu ( 2 ) ari-mashita ka?

Did you have a fever yesterday as well?

16. きのう ( ) 熱 ( <sup>ねつ</sup> ) ありませんでした。

Kinoo ( 1 ) netsu ( 2 ) ari-masen deshita.

Yesterday, I didn't have a fever.

17. <sup>そら</sup>空 ( ) <sup>あお</sup>青いです。

Sora ( 1 ) aoi desu.

The sky is blue.

18. <sup>うみ</sup>海 ( ) <sup>あお</sup>青いです。

Umi ( 1 ) aoi desu.

The ocean is blue, too.

19. <sup>ちきゅう</sup>地球 ( ) <sup>あお</sup>青いですよ。

Chikyuu ( 1 ) aoi desu yo.

The earth is blue also.

20. <sup>くも</sup>雲 ( ) <sup>あお</sup>青いですか？

Kumo ( 1 ) aoi desu ka?

Are clouds blue as well?

21. いいえ、<sup>くも</sup>雲 ( ) <sup>あお</sup>青くありません。

lie, kumo ( 1 ) aoku ari-masen.

No, clouds aren't blue (although other things listed above are blue).

22. <sup>あお</sup>ほかに青いもの ( ) ありますか？

Hoka ni aoi mono ( 1 ) ari-masu ka?

Is there anything else blue?

23. <sup>わたし</sup>私 ( ) <sup>げんき</sup>元気です。

Watashi ( 1 ) genki desu.

I am fine, too

24. あなた (    ) <sup>げんき</sup>元気です。

Anata (    ) genki desu.

You are fine, too.

25. だれ (    ) <sup>びょうき</sup>病気ですか？

Dare (    ) byooki desu ka?

Who is sick?

26. <sup>かわもと</sup>川本さん (    ) <sup>びょうき</sup>病気です。

Kawamoto-san (    ) byooki desu.

Mr. Kawamoto is sick.

27. <sup>かわもと</sup>川本さん (    ) どこ (    ) <sup>わる</sup>悪いんですか？

Kawamoto-san (    ) doko (    ) warui-n desu ka?

What is wrong with Mr. Kawamoto? (Literally: "As for Mr. Kawamoto, where is (he) not well (i.e. which part of him is sick)?")

28. <sup>かわもと</sup>川本さん (    ) <sup>あたま</sup>頭 (    ) <sup>いた</sup>おなか (    ) 痛いそうです。

Kawamoto-san (    ) atama (    ) onaka (    ) itai soo desu.

I heard that Mr. Kawamoto has both a headache and a stomachache.

(Literally: "... both (his) head and stomach hurt.")

29. <sup>まんねんひつ</sup>万年筆 (    ) <sup>ボールペン</sup>ボールペン (    ) ありません <sup>えんぴつ</sup>鉛筆 (    ) <sup>ほ</sup>欲しいんです。

Man-nen-hitsu (    ) booru-pen (    ) iri-masen. Enpitsu (    ) hoshii-n desu.

I need neither a fountain pen nor a ball-point pen. What I need is a pencil.

30. きのう (     ) にし川君とまえ田君 (     ) あそびにき来た。僕たち (     )、野  
球きゅうをしてあそんだ。

Kinoo (    1    ) nishikawa-kun to maeda-kun (    2    ) asobi-ni-kita.

Boku-tachi (    3    ) yakyuu o shite asonda.

Yesterday, Nishikawa and Maeda came over to play. We played  
baseball.

## Lesson 3

Complete the sentences below, using “は(wa)”, “が(ga)”, “も(mo)”, or “の(no)” in the parentheses.

1. とうきょう ( ) ちず ( ) ありますか？

Tookyoo ( 1 ) chizu ( 2 ) ari-masu ka?

Do you have a map of Tokyo?

2. おおさか ( ) ちず ( ) ありますか？

Oosaka ( 1 ) chizu ( 2 ) ari-masu ka?

Do you have a map of Osaka, too?

3. おおさか ( ) ちず ( ) ありません。

Oosaka ( 1 ) chizu ( 2 ) ari-masen.

We don't have a map of Osaka.

4. なごや ( ) ちず ( ) あります ( ) …

Nagoya ( 1 ) chizu ( 2 ) ari-masu ( 3 )

We have a map of Nagoya, but ...

5. じゃあ、なごや ( ) ちず ( ) を見せてください。

Jaa, nagoya ( 1 ) chizu o misete kudasai.

Well, then please show me a map of Nagoya.

6. きみ ( ) なに ( ) たべたい？

Kimi ( 1 ) nani ( 2 ) tabe-tai?

What would you like to eat?

7. ぼく ( ) ハンバーガー ( ) たべたい

Boku ( 1 ) hanbaagaa ( 2 ) tabe-tai.

I want to eat a hamburger.

8. の飲み物 ( ) 何 ( ) いい?

Nomi-mono ( 1 ) nani ( 2 ) ii?

What would you like to drink?

9. 僕 ( ) のど ( ) 渴いたから、アイスティー ( ) いいな。

Boku ( 1 ) nodo ( 2 ) kawaita kara aisui-tii ( 3 ) ii na.

As I'm thirsty, I'd like to drink iced-tea.

10. わたし ( ) 父 ( ) 兄弟 ( ) 二人います。

Watashi ( 1 ) chichi ( 2 ) kyoudai ( 3 ) futari i-masu.

My father has two brothers. (Literally: "As for my father, there are two brothers.")

11. 父 ( ) 兄 ( ) 弟 ( ) わたしにとってはおじです。

Chichi ( 1 ) ani ( 2 ) ototoo ( 3 ) watashi ni totte wa oji desu.

(My) father's older brother and younger brother are both my uncles.

12. 父 ( ) 兄 ( ) 子供 ( ) いません ( ) 、父 ( ) 弟 ( ) 娘 ( ) 二人います。

Chichi ( 1 ) ani ( 2 ) kodomo ( 3 ) i-masen ( 4 ) ,  
chichi ( 5 ) ototoo ( 6 ) musume ( 7 ) futari i-masu.

(My) father's older brother doesn't have children, but (my) father's younger brother has two daughters.

13. わたし ( ) 母 ( ) 兄弟 ( ) 二人います。

Watashi ( 1 ) haha ( 2 ) kyoudai ( 3 ) futari i-masu.

My mother has two brothers as well.

14. 母 ( ) 兄弟 ( ) わたしにとってはおじです。

Haha ( 1 ) kyoudai ( 2 ) watashi ni totte wa oji desu.

(My) mother's brothers are my uncles, too.

15. 今日 ( ) お天気 ( ) どうですか？

Kyoo ( 1 ) otenki ( 2 ) doo desu ka?

How is today's weather?

16. 今日 ( ) 風 ( ) 吹いて、雨 ( ) 降っています。

Kyoo ( 1 ) kaze ( 2 ) fuite, ame ( 3 ) futte imasu.

Today, it's windy and it's raining as well. (Literally: "... the wind is blowing, and the rain is falling, too.")

17. あした ( ) お天気 ( ) 悪いでしょうか？

Ashita ( 1 ) otenki ( 2 ) warui deshoo ka?

Will it be bad weather tomorrow, too?

18. いいえ、あした ( ) いいお天気でしょう。

lie, ashita ( 1 ) ii otenki deshoo.

No, tomorrow will probably be good weather.

19. 鉛筆 ( ) 欲しいんです ( )。

Enpitsu ( 1 ) hoshii-n desu ( 2 ) .

I'd like a pencil ...

20. 何色 ( ) よろしいですか？

Nani-iro ( 1 ) yoroshii desu ka?

Which color do you want? (Literally: "Which color would be good?")

21. 赤い ( ) 、黒い ( ) あります ( ) 。

Akai no ( 1 ) , kuroi no ( 2 ) ari-masu ( 3 ) .

There are red ones as well as black ones...

22. 黒い ( ) 欲しいです。

Kuroi no ( 1 ) hoshii desu.



I want a black one.

23. <sup>あか</sup>赤いの (    ) どうですか? それ (    ) いりません。

Akai no ( 1 ) doo desu ka? Sore ( 2 ) iri-masen.

What about a red one? That I don't need.

24. <sup>うみ</sup>海 (    ) <sup>なか</sup>中に (    )、<sup>せいぶつ</sup>どんな生物 (    ) いますか?

Umi ( 1 ) naka ni ( 2 ), don-na seebutsu ( 3 ) i-masu ka?

What kinds of creatures are there in the sea?

25. <sup>うみ</sup>海に (    )、<sup>さかな</sup>魚や<sup>かい</sup>貝 (    ) います。<sup>しょくぶつ</sup>植物 (    ) あります。

Umi ni ( 1 ), sakana ya kai ( 2 ) i-masu. Shokubutsu ( 3 ) ari-masu.

In the sea, there are such things as fish and shellfish. There are plants, too.

26. <sup>あか</sup>赤い<sup>くるま</sup>車 (    ) いかがですか? わたし (    ) <sup>しろ</sup>白い<sup>くるま</sup>車 (    ) <sup>す</sup>好きです。

Akai kuruma ( 1 ) ikaga desu ka? Watashi ( 2 ) shiroi kuruma ( 3 ) suki desu.

How about a red car? I like white cars.

27. <sup>しろ</sup>白い<sup>くるま</sup>車 (    ) <sup>みぎ</sup>右に、<sup>あお</sup>青い<sup>くるま</sup>車 (    ) ありますね。<sup>あお</sup>青い<sup>いろ</sup>色のものいいですねえ。

Shiroi kuruma ( 1 ) migi ni, aoi kuruma ( 2 ) ari-masu nee.

Aoi iro no mo ii-desu ne.

To the right of the white car, there is a blue car, (right)? The blue one is nice, too.

28. <sup>ぼく</sup>僕 (    ) <sup>み</sup>テレビを見ているときに、おじさんと<sup>おば</sup>叔母さん (    ) <sup>たず</sup>訪ねて

きた。

Boku ( 1 ) terebi o mite-iru toki ni, oji-san to oba-san ( 2 )  
tazunete kita.

When I was watching T.V., my uncle and aunt came to visit.

29. わたし ( )、スキー ( ) 得意です ( )、冬 ( ) スポーツ  
( ) ほとんど 出来ます。スケート ( ) ホッケー ( ) やります。

Watashi ( 1 ), sukii ( 2 ) tokui desu ( 3 ), fuyu ( 4 )  
supootsu ( 5 ) hotondo deki-masu. Sukeeto ( 6 ) hokkee  
( 7 ) yari-masu.

I'm good at skiing, but I can do most winter sports. I skate and play  
hockey, too.

30. あの山に登ってみよう。きれいな景色 ( ) 見えるよ。川 ( ) 湖  
( )、そして、汽車 ( ) 見えるかも知れないよ。

Ano yama ni nobotte miyoo. Kiree na keshiki ( 1 ) mieru yo.  
Kawa ( 2 ) mizuumi ( 3 ), soshite, kisha ( 4 ) mieru-  
kamo-shire nai yo.

Let's go climb that mountain. We'll be able to see a great view. We'll  
be able to see a river, a lake, and possibly even a train.

## Lesson 4

Complete the sentences below, using “で (de)” or “を (o)” in the parentheses.

1. あなたはどこ ( ) この辞書 ( <sup>じしょ</sup> ) 買 ( <sup>か</sup> ) いましたか？

Anata wa doko ( 1 ) kono jisho ( 2 ) kai-mashita ka?

Where did you buy this dictionary?

2. わたしは駅 ( <sup>えき</sup> ) へタクシー ( ) 行 ( <sup>い</sup> ) きました。

Watashi wa eki e takushii ( 1 ) iki-mashita.

I went to the station by taxi.

3. その赤 ( <sup>あか</sup> ) い時計 ( <sup>とけい</sup> ) ( ) 見 ( <sup>み</sup> ) せてください。

Sono akai tokee ( 1 ) misete kudasai.

Please show me that red clock.

4. わたしはきのうデパートの食 ( <sup>しょくどう</sup> ) 堂 ( ) スパゲッティー ( ) 食 ( <sup>た</sup> ) べました。

Watashi wa kinoo depaato no shokudoo ( 1 ) supagettii  
( 2 ) tabe-mashita.

Yesterday, I ate spaghetti at the restaurant in a department store.

5. このバースデーケーキ ( ) ナイフ ( ) 切 ( <sup>き</sup> ) ってください。

Kono baasudee-keeki ( 1 ) naifu ( 2 ) kitte kudasai.

Please cut this birthday cake with a knife.

6. ここへ、あなたのお名 ( <sup>な</sup> ) 前 ( <sup>まえ</sup> ) ( ) ペン ( ) 書 ( <sup>か</sup> ) いてください。

Koko e anata no onamae ( 1 ) pen ( 2 ) kaite kudasai.

Please write your name here with a pen.

7. わたしは母 ( <sup>はは</sup> ) に手紙 ( <sup>てがみ</sup> ) ( ) 書留 ( <sup>かきとめ</sup> ) ( ) 送 ( <sup>おく</sup> ) った。

Watashi wa haha ni tegami ( 1 ) kakitome ( 2 ) okutta.

I sent my mother a letter by registered mail.

8. おなかがすいた。どこ ( ) <sup>なに</sup>何 ( ) <sup>た</sup>食べよう？

Onaka ga suite. Doko ( 1 ) nani ( 2 ) tabe-yoo?

I'm hungry. Where and what shall I eat?

9. あなたはどこの学校 ( ) <sup>がっこう</sup>卒業 ( <sup>そつぎょう</sup> ) しましたか？

Anata wa doko no gakko ( 1 ) sotsugyoo-shi-mashita ka?

From which school did you graduate?

10. この道 ( ) <sup>みち</sup>まっすぐ行くと、バス停があります。そこ ( ) <sup>い</sup>バスに  
<sup>の</sup>乗ってください。

Kono michi ( 1 ) massugu iku to, basu-tee ga ari-masu. Soko  
( 2 ) basu ni notte kudasai.

If you go straight down this street, there will be a bus stop. Get on the  
bus there.

11. 日本 ( ) <sup>にほん</sup>は、車は道 <sup>くるま みち</sup>の左側 ( <sup>ひだりがわ</sup> ) <sup>はし</sup>走ります。

Nihon ( 1 ) wa, kuruma wa michi no hidari-gawa ( 2 )  
hashiri-masu.

In Japan, cars keep to the left side of the road.

12. あしたの朝、飛行機 ( ) <sup>あさ</sup> <sup>ひこうき</sup> <sup>しゅっぱつ</sup> ( ) ニューヨーク ( ) 出発します。

Ashita no asa, hikooki ( 1 ) nyuuyooku ( 2 ) shuppatsu-shi-  
masu.

Tomorrow morning, I'm leaving New York on a plane.

13. 来週わたしのうち ( ) <sup>らいしゅう</sup>パーティー ( ) <sup>ぱーてぃー</sup> します。

Raishuu watashi no uchi ( 1 ) paatii ( 2 ) shi-masu.

I'm going to throw a party at my house next week.

14. このレストラン (     ) <sup>いちばん</sup> 一番 <sup>りょうり</sup> おいしい <sup>なん</sup> お料理は何ですか？

Kono restoran (    1    ) ichiban oishii oryoori wa nan desu ka?

What is the best dish (served) at this restaurant?

15. <sup>やまだ</sup> 山田 <sup>おく</sup> さんの <sup>しゅじん</sup> 奥さんは、ご主人 (     ) <sup>な</sup> 亡くしてから <sup>ひと</sup> 独り (     ) アパートに <sup>す</sup> 住んでいます。

Yamada-san no okusan wa, goshujin (    1    ) nakushite kara hitori (    2    ) apaato ni sunde-imasu.

After having lost her husband, Mrs. Yamada is living alone in his apartment.

16. わたしの <sup>そぼ</sup> 祖母は、<sup>ことし</sup> 今年 (     ) <sup>きゅうじゅうさい</sup> 九十歳になります。みんな (     ) <sup>いわ</sup> お祝い (     ) <sup>し</sup> します。

Watashi no sobo wa, kotoshi (    1    ) kyuujuus-sai ni nari-masu.

Min-na (    2    ) oiwai (    3    ) shi-masu.

My grandmother is going to turn ninety this year. We're all going to celebrate ( her birthday).

17. みんな (     ) <sup>いっしょ</sup> 一緒に <sup>た</sup> デザート (     ) 食べましょう。

Min-na (    1    ) issho ni dezaato (    2    ) tabe-mashoo.

Let's all have desert together.

18. <sup>きって</sup> 切手 (     ) のり (     ) はってください。

Kitte (    1    ) nori (    2    ) hatte kudasai.

Please paste down the postage stamp with glue.

19. <sup>あか</sup> 赤ちゃん (     ) <sup>うばやるま</sup> 乳母車 (     ) <sup>さんぽ</sup> 散歩 <sup>つ</sup> に <sup>い</sup> 連れて行きました。

Aka-chan (    1    ) uba-guruma (    2    ) sanpo ni tsurete-iki-mashita.

I took the baby out for a walk in a stroller.

20. お弁当 (    ) どこ (    ) 食べましょうか？

Obentoo ( 1 ) doko ( 2 ) tabe-mashoo ka?

Where shall we eat our boxed lunch?

21. わたしは犬 (    ) 散歩に連れて行きました。公園 (    )、よその犬に  
会おうと、わたしの犬は、うれしそうにしっぽ (    ) 振りました。

Watashi wa inu ( 1 ) sanpo ni tsurete iki-mashita. Kooen  
( 2 ), yoso no inu ni de-au to, watashi no inu wa, ureshisoo ni  
shippo ( 3 ) furi-mashita.

I took my dog for a walk. At the park, when my dog saw another dog,  
it wagged its tail in delight.

22. わたしは、その英語の単語 (    ) 辞書 (    ) 調べました。

Watashi wa, sono eego no tango ( 1 ) jisho ( 2 ) shirabe-  
mashita.

I looked up that English word in the dictionary.

23. 今夜は、ホテル (    ) クラス会があります。わたしは、友達とタクシー  
(    ) 拾って、ホテルまで行きます。

Konya wa, hoteru ( 1 ) kurasu-kai ga ari-masu. Watashi wa,  
tomodachi to takushii ( 2 ) hirotte, hoteru made iki-masu.

Tonight, there will be a class reunion at a hotel. I'm going to catch a  
taxi with a friend, and (that is how) we're going to go to the hotel.

24. 今日は日本語のクラス (    )、スライド (    ) 見ました。

Kyoo wa nihongo no kurasu ( 1 ), suraido ( 2 ) mi-mashita.

Today in Japanese class we saw slides.

25. こんな所 (    ) 昼寝 (    ) していると、風邪 (    ) 引きますよ。

Kon-na tokoro ( 1 ) hirune ( 2 ) shite-iru to, kaze ( 3 )  
hiki-masu yo.

If you take a nap at a place like this, you'll catch cold.

26. わたしはデパート ( ) このコイン入れ ( ) 千円 ( ) 買いま  
した。

Watashi wa depaato ( 1 ) kono koin-ire ( 2 ) sen en ( 3 )  
kai-mashita.

I bought this change purse for one thousand yen at a department store.

27. あの学校の<sup>がっこう</sup>前<sup>まえ</sup> ( ) 車<sup>くるま</sup> ( ) 止<sup>と</sup>めてください。

Ano gakkō no mae ( 1 ) kuruma ( 2 ) tomete kudasai.

Please stop the car in front of that school.

28. シャンペン ( ) チームの<sup>ゆうしょう</sup>優勝 ( ) 祝<sup>いわ</sup>いましょう。

Shanpen ( 1 ) chiimu no yuushoo ( 2 ) iwai-mashoo.

Let's celebrate our victory with champagne.

29. この定期券<sup>てい き けん</sup>は、期限<sup>き げん</sup>が切<sup>き</sup>れていますね。あそこの窓<sup>まど</sup>口<sup>ぐち</sup> ( ) 新<sup>あた</sup>しいの  
( ) 買<sup>か</sup>ってください。

Kono teikiken wa, kigen ga kirete-imasu ne. Asoko no mado-guchi  
( 1 ) atarashii no ( 2 ) katte kudasai.

Your (train/bus) pass is no longer valid. Please buy a new one at that  
ticket window.

30. 今日<sup>きょう</sup>は、隅田川<sup>すみ だがわ</sup> ( ) 花火<sup>はな び</sup>大会<sup>たいかい</sup>があります。あそこの高<sup>たか</sup>い建<sup>たて</sup>物の屋<sup>おく</sup>上<sup>じょう</sup>  
( ) 花火<sup>はな び</sup> ( ) 見<sup>み</sup>ましょう。

Kyoo wa, sumidagawa ( 1 ) hanabi-taikai ga ari-masu. Asoko no  
takai tatemono no okujoo ( 2 ) hanabi ( 3 ) mi-mashoo.

Today, there's going to be fireworks over (at) the Sumida River. Let's watch the fireworks from the rooftop of that tall building.



## Lesson 5

Complete the sentences below, using “で(de)”, “を(o)” or “に(ni)” (“へ(e)”) in the parentheses.

1. わたしは子供達 ( ) バス ( ) お祭り ( ) 連れて行きました。

Watashi wa, kodomo-tachi ( 1 ) basu ( 2 ) omatsuri  
( 3 ) tsurete iki-mashita.

I took my children to the festival by bus.

2. わたしは京都 ( ) 行きたいんですが、この電車 ( ) いいでしょうか？

Watashi wa kyooto ( 1 ) ikitai-n desu ga, kono densha ( 2 )  
ii deshoo ka?

I'd like to go to Kyoto, (but) is this the right train?

3. 僕は喫茶店 ( ) 彼女 ( ) サンドイッチ ( ) ごちそうしました。

Boku wa kissa-ten ( 1 ) kanojo ( 2 ) sandoicchi ( 3 )  
gochisoo shi-mashita.

I bought her a sandwich at a coffee shop.

4. わたしはニューヨーク ( ) 住みたいから、新聞 ( ) アパート ( ) 探しています。

Watashi wa nyuuyooku ( 1 ) sumitai kara, shinbun ( 2 )  
apaato ( 3 ) sagashite-imasu.

Because I want to live in New York, I am looking for an apartment through the newspaper.

5. わたしの鉛筆 ( ) どこ ( ) 置いたの？

Watashi no enpitsu ( 1 ) doko ( 2 ) oita no?

Where did you put my pencil?

6. <sup>こんばんなんじ</sup>今晚何時 ( )、どこ ( ) <sup>あ</sup>会いましょうか?

Konban nanji ( 1 ) doko ( 2 ) ai-mashoo ka?

Where and when shall we meet tonight?

7. わたしはペンフレンド ( ) <sup>にほんご</sup>日本語 ( ) <sup>てがみ</sup>手紙 ( ) <sup>か</sup>書きました。

Watashi wa pen-furendo ( 1 ) nihongo ( 2 ) tegami ( 3 )  
kaki-mashita.

I wrote a letter to my penpal in Japanese.

8. <sup>ぼく</sup>僕は、いつか <sup>ふね</sup>船 ( ) ハワイ ( ) <sup>い</sup>行きたい。そして、そこ ( )  
<sup>サーフィン</sup>サーフィン ( ) したい。

Boku wa, itsuka fune ( 1 ) hawaii ( 2 ) ikitai. Soshite, soko  
( 3 ) saafin ( 4 ) shitai.

Some day I'd like to go to Hawaii by boat. Then, I'd like to go surfing  
there.

9. <sup>スーパーマーケット</sup>スーパーマーケット ( ) <sup>じてんしゃ</sup>自転車 ( ) パン ( ) <sup>か</sup>買いに <sup>い</sup>行きました。  
た。

Suupaa-maaketto ( 1 ) jitensha ( 2 ) pan ( 3 ) kai ni iki-  
mashita.

I went to the supermarket by bicycle to buy some bread.

10. わたしは一日 ( ) <sup>いちにち</sup>一度 <sup>いちど</sup>母 ( ) <sup>でんわ</sup>電話 ( ) します。

Watashi wa ichi-nichi ( 1 ) ichi-do haha ( 2 ) denwa  
( 3 ) shi-masu.

I call my mother once every day.

11. <sup>みっかご</sup>三日後 ( ) またここ ( ) <sup>あ</sup>会いましょう。

Mikka-go ( 1 ) mata koko ( 2 ) ai-mashoo.

Let's meet again here in three days.

12. ロンドン ( ) 行く飛行機は、何時 ( ) 空港 ( ) 出発しますか？

Rondon ( 1 ) iku hikooki wa, nanji ( 2 ) kuukoo ( 3 ) shuppatsu shi-masu ka?

When will the plane for London leave the airport?

13. わたしは財布 ( ) うち ( ) 忘れてきた。

Watashi wa saifu ( 1 ) uchi ( 2 ) wasurete kita.

I forgot my wallet at home (and came here).

14. 彼は、毎朝七時半 ( ) うち ( ) 出て、自動車 ( ) ハイウエー ( ) 走って会社 ( ) 行きます。

Kare wa, maiasa shichiji-han ( 1 ) uchi ( 2 ) dete, jidoosha ( 3 ) haiuee ( 4 ) hashitte kaisha ( 5 ) iki-masu.

Every morning, he leaves his house at seven-thirty and drives on the highway to get to his office.

15. 僕は夜中 ( )、洗面所 ( )、ゴキブリ ( ) 見つけた。

Boku wa yonaka ( 1 ), senmenjo ( 2 ), gokiburi ( 3 ) mitsuketa.

I found a cockroach in the washroom at midnight.

16. 刈谷君はテスト ( ) 百点 ( ) 取った。

Kariya-kun wa tesuto ( 1 ) hyaku-ten ( 2 ) totta.

Kariya got a hundred (A+) on the test.

17. 今日は寒いから、みんな ( ) 一緒 ( ) うちの中 ( )、ゲーム ( ) しましょう。

Kyoo wa samui kara, min-na ( 1 ) isscho ( 2 ) uchi no naka ( 3 ), geemu ( 4 ) shi-mashoo.

Since it's cold outside today, let's all play a game inside the house.

18. 僕は、お昼 ( 1 ) 食べ ( 2 ) レストラン ( 3 ) 行って、そこ ( 4 ) 財布 ( 5 ) なくしてしまった。

Boku wa, ohiru ( 1 ) tabe ( 2 ) resutoran ( 3 ) itte, soko ( 4 ) saifu ( 5 ) nakushite shimatta.

I went to a restaurant to eat lunch, and lost my wallet (there).

19. わたしは、妹と一緒に ( 1 ) デパート ( 2 ) 買物 ( 3 ) 行きました。  
Watashi wa, imooto to isscho ( 1 ) depaato ( 2 ) kaimono ( 3 ) iki-mashita.

I went shopping at a department store with my sister.

20. あと ( 1 ) デザート ( 2 ) アイスクリーム ( 3 ) 食べましょう。  
Ato ( 1 ) dezaato ( 2 ) aisukuriimu ( 3 ) tabe-mashoo.

Let's have ice cream for dessert later.

21. ヘリコプター ( 1 ) 乗って、空 ( 2 ) 飛んでみたいなあ。  
Herikoputaa ( 1 ) notte, sora ( 2 ) tonde-mitai naa.

I want to fly through the air in a helicopter.

22. あした学校 ( 1 ) 先生 ( 2 ) 聞いてみよう。  
Ashita gakko ( 1 ) sensee ( 2 ) kiite-miyoo.

I'll ask my teacher (about it) at school tomorrow.

23. お兄さん ( 1 ) わからない単語の意味 ( 2 ) 聞いたら、「辞書 ( 3 ) 調べてごらん」だって。

Oniisan ( 1 ) wakara-nai tango no imi ( 2 ) kiitara, "jisho ( 3 ) shirabete goran" datte.

My older brother said, "Look it up in the dictionary," when I asked him the meaning of a word that I didn't know.

24. 机の上 ( ) あった友達の写真 ( )、どこ ( ) しまったのか  
わす  
れた。

Tsukue no ue ( 1 ) atta tomodachi no shashin ( 2 ), doko  
( 3 ) shimatta no ka wasureta.

I forgot where I put the picture of my friend which had been on the desk.

25. ああ、駅ですか？ あの橋 ( ) 渡って、最初の信号 ( ) 右  
( ) 曲って、その道 ( ) まっすぐ行くと、左のほう ( ) あり  
ますよ。

Aa, eki desu ka? Ano hashi ( 1 ) watatte, saisho no shingoo  
( 2 ) migi ( 3 ) magatte, sono michi ( 4 ) massugu iku  
to, hidari no hoo ( 5 ) ari-masu yo.

"Oh, the station? Go across that bridge, turn right at the first traffic light, (then) keep going straight on that road, then you'll see the station on your left."

26. あしたは、学校 ( )、加藤先生のセミナー ( ) 出席しなければな  
らないから、今夜十時まで ( ) タイプ ( ) レポート ( ) 作ろ  
う。

Ashita wa, gakkoo ( 1 ), katoo - sensee no seminaa ( 2 )  
shusekki-shi-nakere ba nara nai kara, konya juuji made ( 3 )  
taipu ( 4 ) repooto ( 5 ) tsukuroo.

Since I will have to attend Prof. Katoh's seminar at school tomorrow, I'll type my report by ten o'clock tonight.

27. パーティー (     ) どんなドレス (     ) 着て行こうかしら? 彼は、ブラックタイ (     ) 行くていったけど。

Paatii ( 1 ) don-na doresu ( 2 ) kite ikoo kashira? Kare wa, burakku-tai ( 3 ) ikutte itta kedo.

What sort of dress shall I wear to the party? He was saying that he would go in black-tie.

28. 今日は暖かいから、この鉢植え (     ) 外 (     ) 出して、水 (     ) やってくれない?

Kyoo wa atataikai kara, kono hachi-ue ( 1 ) soto ( 2 ) dashite, mizu ( 3 ) yatte-kure nai?

It's warm today, so could you take these plants outside and water them?

29. のどが渴いたから、あの喫茶店 (     ) コーヒー (     ) 飲んでからうち (     ) 帰りましょう。

Nodo ga kawaita kara, ano kissa-ten ( 1 ) koohii ( 2 ) nonde kara uchi ( 3 ) kaeri-mashoo.

I'm thirsty, so let's go home after we have coffee at that coffee shop.

30. そのおすし (     ) おはし (     ) このお皿 (     ) とってください。それから、この小さいお皿 (     ) おしょうゆ (     ) 少し入れて、わさび (     ) つけて食べてください。

Sono osushi ( 1 ) ohashi ( 2 ) kono osara ( 3 ) totte kudasai. Sore kara, kono chiisai osara ( 4 ) oshooyu ( 5 ) sukoshi irete, wasabi ( 6 ) tsukete tabete kudasai.

Please put the sushi onto this plate with the chopsticks. Then, pour a little bit of soy sauce onto this small plate, and eat it with the wasabi.

## Lesson 6

Complete the sentences below, using “から(kara)”, “に(ni)”, “へ(e)”, “まで(made)”, or “までに(madeni)” in the parentheses.

1. コンサートホール (     ) たくさん<sup>ひと</sup>人<sup>で</sup>が出<sup>で</sup>てきました。

Konsaato-hooru (    1    ) takusan hito ga dete ki-mashita.

A crowd of people came out of the recital hall.

2. 君<sup>きみ</sup>、きのう<sup>なんじ</sup>は何時 (     ) テレビ<sup>てれび</sup>を見たの？

Kimi, kinoo wa nanji (    1    ) terebi o mita no?

Until what time did you watch T.V. last night?

3. あなたはいつ (     ) この村<sup>むら</sup>に住<sup>す</sup>んでいますか？

Anata wa itsu (    1    ) kono mura ni sunde i-masu ka?

How long have you lived in this village?

4. わたしは去年<sup>きょねん</sup>の六月<sup>ろくがつ</sup>に東京<sup>とうきょう</sup> (     ) 大阪<sup>おおさか</sup> (     ) 来<sup>き</sup>ました。来年<sup>らいねん</sup>の三月<sup>さんがつ</sup>  
(     ) 大阪<sup>おおさか</sup>にいます。それから、また東京<sup>とうきょう</sup> (     ) 帰<sup>かえ</sup>ります。

Watashi wa kyonen no rokugatsu ni tookyoo (    1    ) oosaka

(    2    ) ki-mashita. Rainen no sangatsu (    3    ) oosaka ni i-masu.

Sorekara, mata tookyoo (    4    ) kaeri-masu.

I came to Osaka from Tokyo in June of last year. I'll be in Osaka until March of next year. Then, I'm going to go back to Tokyo.

5. ワシントン (     ) モスクワ (     )、飛行機<sup>ひこうき</sup>で、どれくらいかかりますか？

Washinton (    1    ) mosukuwa (    2    ), hikooki de, dore kurai kakari-masu ka?

How long does it take from Washington D.C. to Moscow by plane?

6. 今日<sup>きょう</sup>はストライキで電車<sup>でんしゃ</sup>が走<sup>はし</sup>っていません (    ), うち (    ) 会社<sup>かいしゃ</sup>  
(    ) 歩<sup>ある</sup>いて行<sup>い</sup>きました。

Kyoo wa sutoraiiki de, densha ga hashitte i-masen (    ), uchi  
(    2    ) kaisha (    3    ) aruite iki-mashita.

Because there was no train service today due to the strike, I walked to  
my office from my house.

7. 空<sup>そら</sup> (    ) いん石<sup>せき</sup>が落<sup>お</sup>ちてきた。

Sora (    1    ) inseki ga ochite kita.

A meteorite came falling out of the sky.

8. 東京<sup>とうきょう</sup> (    ) 京都<sup>きょうと</sup> (    ), 新幹線<sup>しんかんせん</sup>で二時間半<sup>に じ かんはん</sup>ぐらいかかります。

Tookyoo (    1    ) kyooto (    2    ), shinkansen de nijikan-han gurai  
kakari-masu.

It takes two and half hours from Tokyo to Kyoto by Shinkan-sen (bullet  
train).

9. 僕<sup>ぼく</sup>は、今日<sup>きょう</sup>は疲<sup>つか</sup>れた (    ) 遊<sup>あそ</sup>びに行<sup>い</sup>かない。

Boku wa, kyoo wa tsukareta (    1    ) asobi ni ika nai.

Because I'm tired today, I'm not going to go out to have fun.

10. わたしは、金曜日<sup>きんようび</sup> (    ) (    ) 日本語<sup>にほんご</sup>の作文<sup>さくぶん</sup>を書<sup>か</sup>かなければならない  
(    ), 映画<sup>えいが</sup>を見る<sup>み</sup>のは来週<sup>らいしゅう</sup> (    ) 待<sup>ま</sup>ってください。

Watashi wa, kin-yoobi (    1    ) (    2    ) nihongo no sakubun o  
kaka-nakereba nara-nai (    3    ), eega o miru no wa raishuu  
(    4    ) matte kudasai.

As I have to finish writing a Japanese composition by this Friday,  
please (could we) wait until next week to see a movie.

11. わたしは広島<sup>ひろしま</sup> (    ) 行<sup>い</sup>きたいんですが、電車<sup>でんしゃ</sup>は何番線<sup>なんばんせん</sup> (    ) 出<sup>で</sup>ます



か？

Watashi wa, hiroshima ( 1 ) ikitai-n desu ga, densha wa nanban-sen ( 2 ) de-masu ka?

I'd like to go to Hiroshima, (but) from which platform will the train leave?

12. 指輪<sup>ゆびわ</sup>をなくしたので、部屋<sup>へや</sup>の隅<sup>すみ</sup> ( ) 隅<sup>すみ</sup> ( ) 探<sup>さが</sup>しましたが、見<sup>み</sup>つかりませんでした。

Yubiwa o naku-shita node, heya no sumi ( 1 ) sumi ( 2 ) sagashi-mashita ga, mitsukari-masen deshita.

I lost my ring, so I looked for it everywhere in my room, but it couldn't be found.

13. 飛行機<sup>ひこうき</sup>がで<sup>で</sup>出る ( ) まだ二時間<sup>にじかん</sup>あります。食事<sup>しょくじ</sup>をして ( ) コーヒーでも飲<sup>の</sup>みましょう。

Hikooki ga deru ( 1 ) mada ni-jikan ari-masu. Shokuji o shite ( 2 ) koohii de mo nomi-mashoo.

We still have two more hours until the departure of our flight. Let's eat something and then have some coffee.

14. この漫画<sup>まんが</sup>は面白<sup>おもしろ</sup>い ( ) 君<sup>きみ</sup> ( ) 貸<sup>か</sup>してあげるよ。

Kono manga wa omoshiroi ( 1 ) kimi ( 2 ) kashite ageru yo.

This comic book is funny, so I'll lend it to you.

15. 空<sup>そら</sup>が暗<sup>くら</sup>くなってきた ( ) また雨<sup>あめ</sup>が降<sup>ふ</sup>るよ。梅雨<sup>つゆ</sup>はいつ ( ) 続<sup>つづ</sup>くのだろう。

Sora ga kuraku natte-kita ( 1 ) mata ame ga furu yo. Tsuyu wa itsu ( 2 ) tsuzuku no daroo.

The sky is getting dark, so it's going to rain again. I wonder how much

longer the rainy season will continue?

16. 果物屋 (  ) 行ったら、バナナがとても安かった (  )、おやつ (  ) 買ってきた。

Kudamono-ya (  ) ittara, banana ga totemo yasukatta  
(  ), oyatsu (  ) katte kita.

I went to a fruit shop, and I found their bananas so cheap that I bought some for snacks.

17. とても暑い日だった (  )、わたしは六時 (  ) 涼しいオフィス (  ) いました。

Totemo atsui hi datta (  ), watashi wa rokuji (  ) suzushii ofisu (  ) i-mashita.

Since it was a very hot day, I stayed at the cool (air-conditioned) office until six o'clock.

18. 浜田さんは、六十歳 (  ) 銀行 (  ) 勤めました (  )、退職しました。

Hamada-san wa, rokujus-sai (  ) ginkoo (  ) tsutome-mashita (  ), taishoku shi-mashita.

As Mr. Hamada worked at the bank until he was sixty years old, he has now retired.

19. わたしは、生まれて (  ) 今 (  ) スキーをしたことはありません。

Watashi wa, umarete (  ) ima (  ) sukii o shita koto ga ari-masen.

I've never skied in my life. (Literally: Between the time I was born until now ... )

20. この宿題は、いつ (  ) (  ) 出さなければなりませんか？

Kono shukudai wa, itsu ( 1 ) ( 2 ) dasa-nakereba nari-masen ka?

By when do I have to hand in this homework to you?

21. 隣の家 ( ) 火が出て、明け方 ( ) ( ) 三軒が全焼した。

Tonari no ie ( 1 ) hi ga dete, akegata ( 2 ) ( 3 ) sangen ga zenshoo shita.

The fire started at my neighbor's, and by dawn, three houses were completely lost in the fire.

22. 僕は、クリスマス ( ) サンタクロース ( ) ミットをもらった。

Boku wa, kurisumasu ( 1 ) santakuroosu ( 2 ) mitto o moratta.

On Christmas, I got a baseball mitt from Santa Claus.

23. 今回のサミットミーティング ( )、日本 ( ) 首相と二人の大臣が参加した。

Konkai no samitto-miitingu ( 1 ), nihon ( 2 ) shushoo to futari no daijin ga sank-shita.

For this Summit Meeting, Japan sent the Prime Minister, accompanied by two ministers.

24. 朝 ( ) 頭が痛かった ( )、わたしは今日学校 ( ) 行きませんでした。

Asa ( 1 ) atama ga itakatta ( 2 ), watashi wa kyoo gakko ( 3 ) iki-masen deshita.

Because I had a headache until this morning, I didn't go to school today.

25. わたし達は、横浜 ( ) 電車で行って ( )、バス ( ) 乗り換えて、ホテル ( ) 行きましたが、ほかの人達は、そのとき ( )

(     ), もうホテル (     ) 着いていました。

Watashi-tachi wa, yokohama ( 1 ) densha de itte ( 2 ), basu  
( 3 ) norikaete, hoteru ( 4 ) iki-mashita ga, hoka no hito-tachi  
wa, sono toki ( 5 ) ( 6 ), moo hoteru ( 7 ) tsuite i-mashita.  
We took a train as far as Yokohama, then (from there), we transferred  
and got on the bus to the hotel, but the others had already arrived at the  
hotel by that time.

26. あしたはオフィスで朝九時 (     ) ミーティングがある (     )、八時半  
(     ) (     ) オフィス (     ) 行かなければならない。

Ashita wa ofiisu de asa kuji ( 1 ) miitingu ga aru ( 2 ),  
hachi-ji han ( 3 ) ( 4 ) ofisu ( 5 ) ika-nakere ba nara-nai.  
As I will have to attend a meeting in my office at nine o'clock tomorrow morning, I have to be in my office by eight-thirty.

27. 今日は残業 (     ) ある (     )、わたしは会社 (     ) 九時 (     )  
いて、それからうち (     ) 帰ります。

Kyoo wa zangyoo ( 1 ) aru ( 2 ), watashi wa kaisha  
( 3 ) kuji ( 4 ) ite, sore kara uchi ( 5 ) kaeri-masu.

Because I have to work overtime today, I will be at my office until nine  
o'clock, then I will go home.

28. 船で沖 (     ) 行って (     )、わたしは海の中 (     ) 潜った。太陽の  
光が海底 (     ) 届いて、夢の国 (     ) 行ったようにきれいだった。

Fune de oki ( 1 ) itte ( 2 ), watashi wa umi no naka ( 3 )  
mogutta. Taiyoo no hikari ga kaitee ( 4 ) todoite, yume no kuni  
( 5 ) itta-yoo ni kiree datta.

After I went off shore by boat, I dove into the sea. The sun's rays reached all the way down to the bottom of the sea, and it was as if I had wondered into a dream, it was so beautiful.

29. あなたは、先月（ ）今日（ ）（ ）、図書館（ ）何冊本を借りましたか？

Anata wa, sengetsu ( 1 ) kyoo ( 2 ) ( 3 ), tosho-kan ( 4 ) nansatsu hon o kari-mashita ka?

How many books have you borrowed from the library since last month (until today)?

30. 中国（ ）いる兄（ ）わたし（ ）手紙が来た。来年の夏（ ）中国語を勉強して（ ）、九月（ ）（ ）日本（ ）帰るそうだ。

Chuugoku ( 1 ) iru ani ( 2 ) watashi ( 3 ) tegami ga kita. Rainen no natsu ( 4 ) chuugokugo o benkyoo shite ( 5 ), kugatsu ( 6 ) ( 7 ) nihon ( 8 ) kaeru-soo da.

A letter (addressed to me) came from my brother in China. He wrote that after studying Chinese there until next summer, he would come back to Japan by September.

## Lesson 7

Complete the sentences below, using either “と (to),” “や (ya),” “だけ (dake),” “しか (shika),” or “くらい (kurai [ぐらい gurai])” in the parentheses.

1. <sup>あか えんぴつ</sup> 赤い鉛筆は、これ ( ) ですか? はい、それ ( ) です。

Akai enpitsu wa, kore ( 1 ) desu ka? Hai, sore ( 2 ) desu.

Is this the only red pencil? Yes, there is only that one.

2. <sup>ぼく かず おくん</sup> 僕は、<sup>こう じくん</sup> 和夫君 ( ) <sup>ふみ おくん</sup> 幸二君 ( ) 文男君 ( ) かくれんぼをしました。  
た。

Boku wa, kazuo-kun ( 1 ) kooji-kun ( 2 ) fumio-kun ( 3 )  
kakurenbo o shi-mashita.

I played hide-and-seek with (such friends as) Kazuo, Kooji, and Fumio.

3. わたしは、<sup>け さ</sup> 今朝コーヒー ( ) <sup>の</sup> ジュース ( ) 飲みました。

Watashi wa, kesa koohii ( 1 ) juusu ( 2 ) nomi-mashita.

I only drank coffee and juice for breakfast this morning.

4. <sup>ぼく</sup> 僕は、<sup>け さ</sup> 今朝オムレツ ( ) <sup>た</sup> サラダ ( ) 食べませんでした。

I didn't eat anything but an omlet and a salad this morning.

5. <sup>ほし</sup> 星が、いくつ ( ) <sup>み</sup> 見えますか?

<sup>ぼく みつ</sup> 僕は三つ ( ) <sup>み</sup> 見えるよ。わたしは一つ ( ) <sup>ひと</sup> 見えないわ。

Hoshi ga, ikutsu ( 1 ) mie-masu ka?

Boku wa mittsu ( 2 ) mieru yo. Watashi wa hitotsu ( 3 )  
mie-nai wa.

(Approximately) how many stars can you see in the sky? I can see only three stars. I can see only one.

6. あしたの遠足には、サンドイッチ (     ) 果物 (     ) あめを持って行く。  
う。

Ashita no ensoku ni wa, sandoicchi ( 1 ) kudamono ( 2 )  
ame o motte ikoo.

I'll take a sandwich, some fruit, and some candies on the picnic tomorrow.

7. 僕は、お握り (     )、お菓子 (     ) の飲み物をもって行くよ。

Boku wa, onigiri ( 1 ), okashi ( 2 ) nomi-mono o motte iku  
yo.

I'll bring some onigiri (rice balls) and things like cookies and beverages.

8. わたしは、お弁当 (     ) の飲み物 (     ) 持って行かないわ。

Watashi wa, obentoo ( 1 ) nomi-mono ( 2 ) motte ika-nai  
wa.

I'll only bring a boxed lunch and beverages.

9. それだけ? お弁当 (     ) の飲み物 (     ) じゃおなかがすくでしょう?  
果物を二つ (     ) 持って行きなさいよ。

Sore dake? Obentoo ( 1 ) nomi-mono ( 2 ) jaa onaka ga  
suku deshoo? Kudamono o futatsu ( 3 ) motte iki-nasai yo.

That's all? You'll be hungry with only a boxed lunch and beverages.

Why don't you bring a couple of pieces of fruit or so.

10. 今日の父兄会に、両親が来たのは、僕 (     ) で、全部で三十人  
(     ) 来たけれど、父親は五人 (     ) 来なかった。

Kyoo no fukee-kai ni ryooshin ga kita no wa, boku ( 1 ) de,

zenbu de sanjuu-nin ( 2 ) kita keredo, chichi-oya wa go-nin  
( 3 ) ko-nakatta.

Among the parents who attended today's P.T.A., I was the only one whose parents both came, and thirty parents came altogether, but there were only five fathers who came.

11. わたし、今日二百円 ( ) も持っていないの。啓三君、五百円 ( )  
貸してくれない？

Watashi, kyoo ni-hyaku en ( 1 ) motte i-nai no. Keezoo-kun,  
go-hyaku en ( 2 ) kashite-kure-nai?

I have only two hundred yen with me today. Keezo, could you lend me about five hundred yen?

12. あなたの家から駅まで車でどれ ( ) かかりますか？

Anata no ie kara eki made kuruma de dore ( 1 ) kakari-masu ka?

How long does it take from your house to the station by car?

13. 東京から札幌まで何キロ ( ) ありますか？

Tookyoo kara sapporo made nan-kiro ( 1 ) ari-masu ka?

How many kilometers are there between Tokyo and Sapporo?

14. 僕の友達 ( ) 先生は、寒い寒いと言っているけれど、これ ( ) の  
寒さは平気だよ。僕はTシャツ一枚 ( ) 着ていないよ。

Boku no tomodachi ( 1 ) sensee wa, samui samui to itte-iru  
keredo, kore ( 2 ) no samusa wa heeki da yo. Boku wa tii-  
shatsu ichi-mai ( 3 ) kite-i-nai yo.

(People like) my friends and my teacher keep saying that it's cold, but cold weather like this doesn't bother me at all. I'm only wearing a T-shirt.



15. ビーフ (    ) チキン (    ) どちらが好きですか？

Biifu ( 1 ) chikin ( 2 ) dochira ga suki desu ka?

Which do you like better, beef or chicken?

16. 「君を愛しているよ」 (    ) 言って欲しいのに、喫茶店 (    ) レストランに入っても、彼は黙っている (    ) です。

"Kimi o aishite iru yo," ( 1 ) itte-hoshii no ni, kissa-ten

( 2 ) resutoran ni haitte mo, kare wa damatte-iru ( 3 ) desu.

I want him to say (to me), "I love you," but when we go to (places like) a coffee shop or a restaurant, he only remains silent.

17. 今年は一週間 (    ) 休みがとれないから、旅行は中国 (    ) にしようと思ったけれど、もう二日 (    ) 休みが取れそうだから、タイにも行くと思う。

Kotoshi wa isshuu-kan ( 1 ) yasumi ga tore-nai kara, ryokoo wa chuugoku ( 2 ) ni shiyoo to omotta keredo, moo futsuka ( 3 ) yasumi ga tore-soo da kara, tai nimo ikoo to omou.

Since I could only take one week for vacation this year, I had planned just to travel around China, but now since it looks like I can get two more days off, I hope to go to Thailand, as well.

18. 今晚のおかずこれ (    ) (    ) ないの？ サラダ (    ) 食べたいなあ。

Konban no okazu kore ( 1 ) ( 2 ) nai no? Sarada ( 3 ) tabe-tai naa.

Is this all we're having for dinner tonight? I wish I could have (at least) a salad as well.

19. 今日の数学の宿題は二ページ (    ) なのに、まだ半分 (    ) 出来て

いない。

Kyoo no suugaku no shukudai wa ni-peeji ( 1 ) na no ni, mada hanbun ( 2 ) dekitei-nai.

The math homework for today is only two pages, but I've only done half of it.

20. あしたは、京都 ( ) 奈良へ修学旅行に行くのだと思うと、うれしくて、二時間 ( ) ( ) 眠れなかった。

Ashita wa, kyotoo ( 1 ) nara e shuugaku-ryokoo ni iku noda to omou to, ureshikute, ni-jikan ( 2 ) ( 3 ) nemure-na-katta.

When I thought about going to Kyoto and Nara tomorrow on the school trip, I was so excited that I could only sleep for about two hours.

## Lesson 8

Complete the sentences below, using “と(to),” “で(de),” “の(no),” “より(yori)” or “ほど(hodo)” in the parentheses.

1. この時計 (     ) あの時計 (     ), どちら (     ) ほうが<sup>やす</sup>いですか？

Kono tokee ( 1 ) ano tokee ( 2 ), dochira ( 3 ) hoo ga yasui desu ka?

Which is more inexpensive, this watch or that watch?

2. コーヒー (     ) 紅茶<sup>こうちゃ</sup> (     ) どちらがいいですか？

Koohii ( 1 ) koocha ( 2 ) dochira ga ii desu ka?

Which would you like to have, coffee or tea?

3. わたしはコーヒー (     ) 紅茶<sup>こうちゃ</sup> (     ) ほうが<sup>の</sup>飲みたいです。

Watashi wa koohii ( 1 ) koocha ( 2 ) hoo ga nomi-tai desu.

I'd rather drink tea than coffee.

4. 僕は紅茶<sup>こうちゃ</sup>はコーヒー (     ) 好き<sup>す</sup>じゃありません。

Boku wa koocha wa koohii ( 1 ) suki ja ari-masen.

I don't like tea as much as I like coffee.

5. きのう (     ) 今日<sup>きょう</sup> (     ) ほうが<sup>さむ</sup>いですね。でも北海道<sup>ほっかいどう</sup> (     ) 寒<sup>さむ</sup>くありませんよ。

Kinoo ( 1 ) kyoo ( 2 ) hoo ga samui desu ne. Demo hokkaidoo ( 3 ) samuku-arimasen yo.

It's colder today than it was yesterday, isn't it? But it's not as cold as Hokkaido.

6. この仕事<sup>しごと</sup>は、あなた (     ) わたし (     ) やりましょう。

Kono shigoto wa, anata ( 1 ) watashi ( 2 ) yari-mashoo.

Let's you and I do this work.

7. すきやき (    ) おすし (    ) てんぷら (    ) うち (    ) どれが一番  
お好きですか？

Sukiyaki ( 1 ) osushi ( 2 ) tempura ( 3 ) uchi ( 4 )  
dore ga ichiban osuki desu ka?

Of sukiyaki, sushi, and tempura, which do you like best?

8. わたしは姉 (    ) 背が高くありませんが、妹 (    ) 高いです。

Watashi wa ane ( 1 ) se ga takaku-ari-masen ga, imooto  
( 2 ) takai desu.

I'm not as tall as my elder sister, but I'm taller than my younger sister.

9. 京都から (    ) 名古屋から (    ) ほうが東京に近いです。

Kyooto kara ( 1 ) nagoya kara ( 2 ) hoo ga tookyoo ni chikai  
desu.

It is closer to Tokyo from Nagoya than from Kyoto.

10. 汽車 (    ) 行く (    ) バス (    ) 行くほうが安いですよ。

Kisha ( 1 ) iku ( 2 ) basu ( 3 ) iku hoo ga yasui desu  
yo.

It is cheaper to go by bus than by train.

11. 今日はおととい (    ) 暑いけれど、きのう (    ) 暑くない。

Kyoo wa ototoi ( 1 ) atsui keredo, kinoo ( 2 ) atsuku-nai.

It's warmer today than it was the day before yesterday, but not as  
warm as yesterday.

12. 君 (    )、君のお父さん (    )、お兄さん (    ) (    )、だれが朝一  
番早く起きますか？

Kimi ( 1 ), kimi no otoosan ( 2 ), oniisan ( 3 ) ( 4 ),

dare ga asa ichiban hayaku oki-masu ka?

Among you, your father, and your brother, who gets up the earliest in the morning?

13. 僕は、<sup>ぼく</sup>数学 ( ) <sup>せいぶつ</sup>生物 ( ) <sup>す</sup>ほうが好きだ。国語は、<sup>こくご</sup>歴史 ( ) <sup>れきし</sup>好きじゃない。

Boku wa, suugaku ( 1 ) seebutsu ( 2 ) hoo ga suki da.

Kokugo wa rekishi ( 3 ) suki ja nai.

I like biology better than math. I don't like Japanese as much as history.

14. ニューヨーク ( ) <sup>とうきょう</sup>東京 ( ) は、どちら ( ) <sup>じんこう</sup>ほうが人口が<sup>おお</sup>多いですか？

Nyuuyooku ( 1 ) tookyoo ( 2 ) wa, dochira ( 3 ) hoo ga jinkoo ga ooi desu ka?

Which has a greater population, New York or Tokyo?

15. あのスーパー ( ) <sup>か</sup>買ったバナナ ( ) 、このスーパー ( ) バナナ ( ) <sup>やす</sup>ほうが、ずっと安い。

Ano suupaa ( 1 ) katta banana ( 2 ) , kono suupaa ( 3 ) banana ( 4 ) hoo ga zutto yasui.

The bananas at this supermarket are much cheaper than the bananas I bought at that supermarket.

16. <sup>じてんしゃ</sup>自転車 ( ) <sup>バイク</sup>バイク ( ) はどちら ( ) <sup>はや</sup>ほうが速いですか？ バイク ( ) <sup>はやく</sup>ほうが、<sup>じてんしゃ</sup>自転車 ( ) <sup>はや</sup>速いですよ。

Jitensha ( 1 ) baiku ( 2 ) wa dochira ( 3 ) hoo ga hayai desu ka? Baiku ( 4 ) hoo ga, jitensha ( 5 ) hayai desu yo.

Which is faster, a bicycle or a motorcycle? A motorcycle is faster than

a bicycle.

17. 友達 ( ) 京都 ( ) 旅館に泊まりました。二人 ( ) 一泊五万円  
でした。

Tomodachi ( 1 ) kyooto ( 2 ) ryokan ni tomari-mashita. Futari  
( 3 ) ip-paku ni-man en deshita.

I stayed at a Japanese style inn in Kyoto with my friend. The charge  
was twenty thousand yen for the two of us for the night.

18. わたしは兄 ( ) 背が高くありませんが、靴 ( ) サイズは、兄の  
( ) 大きいです。

Watashi wa ani ( 1 ) se ga takaku-ari-masen ga, kutsu ( 2 )  
saizu wa, ani no ( 3 ) ookii desu.

I'm not as tall as my (elder) brother, but my shoe size is larger than his.

19. 今日は弟 ( ) 誕生日です。母 ( ) わたし ( ) ( ) お祝  
い ( ) ごちそうを作りました。ケーキは去年 ( ) ずっと上手に出  
来ました。

Kyoo wa ootoo ( 1 ) tanjoobi desu. Haha ( 2 ) watashi  
( 3 ) ( 4 ) oiwai ( 5 ) gochisoo o tsukuri-mashita. Keeki  
wa kyonen ( 6 ) zutto joozu ni deki-mashita.

Today is my brother's birthday. My mother and I cooked a feast to  
celebrate. The cake we made this year was much better than the one  
we made last year.

20. 僕は弟と、大学 ( ) 合格発表を見に行った。たくさん ( ) 人  
( ) いっぱいだったが、僕は普通 ( ) 背が高いから、遠くから、  
自分 ( ) 番号がよく見えた。合格だ！ 今日 ( ) うれしい日はな  
い。

Boku wa ototoo to, daigaku ( 1 ) gookaku-happyoo o mini-  
itta. Takusan ( 2 ) hito ( 3 ) ippai datta ga, boku wa futsuu  
( 4 ) se ga takai kara, tooku kara, jibun ( 5 ) bangoo ga  
yoku mieta. Gookaku da! Kyoo ( 6 ) ureshii hi wa nai.

My brother and I went to the college to see the acceptance list. It was  
packed full of people, but since I'm taller than average, I could see my  
number well from a distance. I'd been accepted! I've never been  
happier than (I am ) today.

## Lesson 9

Comprehension Exercises. Complete the sentences below, using appropriate particles.

My Experience Living in Japan (A):

1. わたし (     ) <sup>なまえ</sup>名前 (     ) ブレンダ (     ) いいです。

Watashi ( 1 ) namae ( 2 ) burenda ( 3 ) ii-masu

My name is Brenda.

2. わたし (     )、<sup>こんがっ き</sup>今学期 (     )、この<sup>だいがく</sup>大学 (     ) <sup>にほんご</sup>日本語 (     ) <sup>べんきょう</sup>勉強  
します。

Watashi ( 1 ), kon-gakki ( 2 ), kono daigaku ( 3 ) nihongo  
( 4 ) benkyoo-shi-masu.

I'm going to study Japanese at this college starting this semester.

3. わたし (     )、<sup>きょねん</sup>去年 (     ) <sup>じゅうに がつ はつ か</sup>十二月二十日 (     )、<sup>とう</sup>シカゴ (     ) 東  
<sup>きょう</sup>京 (     ) 来ました。

Watashi ( 1 ), kyonen ( 2 ) juuni-gatsu hatsuka ( 3 ),  
shikago ( 4 ) tookyoo ( 5 ) ki-mashita.

I came to Tokyo from Chicago on December 20 of last year.

4. (わたし (     ) ) <sup>にほん</sup>日本 (     ) <sup>はじ</sup>初めてです (     )、<sup>だい</sup>シカゴ (     ) 大  
<sup>がく</sup>学 (     ) <sup>にほんご</sup>日本語 (     ) <sup>べんきょう</sup>勉強 (     ) しましたし、<sup>にほんじん</sup>日本人 (     ) お  
<sup>ともだち</sup>友達 (     ) <sup>はじ</sup>たくさんいました (     )、<sup>き</sup>初めての<sup>き</sup>ような気 (     ) あま  
りしません。

(Watashi ( 1 ) ) nihon ( 2 ) hajimete desu ( 3 ), shikago  
( 4 ) daigaku ( 5 ) nihongo ( 6 ) benkyoo ( 7 ) shi-  
mashita shi, nihonjin ( 8 ) otomodachi ( 9 ) takusan i-mashita



( 10 ), hajimete no yoo na ki ( 11 ) amari shi-masen.

This is my first time in Japan, but I studied Japanese at a college in Chicago, and had many Japanese friends (there), so I don't feel very much like I'm (here) for the first time.

5. この大学 ( <sup>だいがく</sup> ) (    ), 日本語 ( <sup>にほんご</sup> ) ではなく、日本 ( <sup>にほん</sup> ) 文化 ( <sup>ぶんか</sup> ) (    ) 歴史 ( <sup>れきし</sup> ) (    ) 経済 ( <sup>けいざい</sup> ) (    ) 勉強 ( <sup>べんきょう</sup> ) します。

Kono daigaku ( 1 ) ( 2 ), nihongo ( 3 ) de wa naku, nihon ( 4 ) bunka ( 5 ) rekishi ( 6 ) keezai ( 7 ) benkyoo-shi-masu.

At this college, I'm going to study not only Japanese language but also Japanese culture, history, and economics as well.

6. シカゴ (    ) 大学 ( <sup>だいがく</sup> ) いた時 ( <sup>とき</sup> ) 、寮 ( <sup>りょう</sup> ) 住んでいました (    ) 、東京 ( <sup>とうきょう</sup> ) (    ) ホームステイ (    ) しています。ホストファミリー (    ) 黒川さん ( <sup>くろかわ</sup> ) いいです。

Shikago ( 1 ) daigaku ( 2 ) ita toki ( 3 ), ryoo ( 4 ) sunde-imashita ( 5 ) tookyoo ( 6 ) ( 7 ) hoomustee ( 8 ) shite-imasu. Hosuto famirii ( 9 ) kurokawa-san ( 10 ) ii-masu.

When I was at the college in Chicago, I lived in a dormitory, but in Tokyo, I'm staying with a host family. My family is the Kurokawas.

7. ご主人 ( <sup>しゅじん</sup> ) (    ) 黒川さん ( <sup>くろかわ</sup> ) 、貿易会社 ( <sup>ぼうえきがいしゃ</sup> ) (    ) 社長 ( <sup>しゃちょう</sup> ) さんです。

Goshujin ( 1 ) kurokawa-san ( 2 ), booeiki-gaisha ( 3 ) shachoo-san desu.

Mr. Kurokawa, the husband, is the president of a trading company.

8. 奥さん ( <sup>おく</sup> ) (    ) 昭子さん ( <sup>あきこ</sup> ) 、生け花 ( <sup>いけばな</sup> ) (    ) 先生 ( <sup>せんせい</sup> ) です。

Okusan ( 1 ) akiko-san ( 2 ), ikebana ( 3 ) sensee desu.

His wife, Akiko, is a teacher of flower arrangement.

9. <sup>いちばんうえ</sup>一番上 ( ) <sup>じょう</sup>お嬢さん ( )、<sup>けっこん</sup>結婚して、<sup>にさい</sup>二歳 ( ) <sup>おとこ</sup>男 ( ) <sup>こ</sup>子 ( ) います。

Ichiban ue ( 1 ) ojoosan ( 2 ), kekkon-shite, nisai ( 3 ) otoko ( 4 ) ko ( 5 ) i-masu.

Their eldest daughter is married, and has a two-year old boy.

10. <sup>にばんめ</sup>二番目 ( ) <sup>じょう</sup>お嬢さん ( )、<sup>なまえ</sup>名前 ( ) <sup>こ</sup>きみ子 ( ) いって、  
<sup>おなとし</sup>わたし ( ) 同年です。

Niban-me ( 1 ) ojoosan ( 2 ), namae ( 3 ) kimiko ( 4 ) itte, watashi ( 5 ) onaji toshi desu.

Their second daughter is named Kimiko, and she is my age.

11. <sup>こ</sup>きみ子さん ( ) <sup>した</sup>下 ( )、<sup>しんじ</sup>伸二 ( ) <sup>おとうと</sup>いう弟 ( ) います  
( )、<sup>かれ</sup>彼 ( ) <sup>こうこういちねんせい</sup>高校一年生です。

Kimiko-san ( 1 ) shita ( 2 ), shinji ( 2 ) yuu ootoo ( 4 ) imasu ( 5 ), kare ( 6 ) kookoo ichi-nen-see desu.

Kimiko has a younger brother, Shinji; he is a first-year student in high school.

12. わたし ( ) <sup>とぎ</sup>シカゴ ( ) いた時 ( )、<sup>こ</sup>きみ子さん ( ) <sup>ぶんつう</sup>文通  
( ) していました ( )、<sup>きょうだい</sup>姉妹のように <sup>なかよ</sup>仲良しです。

Watashi ( 1 ) shikago ( 2 ) ita toki ( 3 ), kimiko-san ( 4 ) buntsuu ( 5 ) shite-imashita ( 6 ), kyoodai no yoo ni nakayoshi desu.

Because I had been exchanging letters with Kimiko while I was in

Chicago, we are very good friends, like real sisters.

13. 先週 ( <sup>せんしゅう</sup> ) 日曜日 ( <sup>にちようび</sup> )、きみ子 ( <sup>こ</sup> ) さん ( <sup>さん</sup> ) お父 ( <sup>とう</sup> ) さん ( <sup>さん</sup> )、きみ子 ( <sup>こ</sup> ) さん ( <sup>さん</sup> ) わたし ( <sup>わたし</sup> )、車 ( <sup>くるま</sup> ) ディズニーランド ( <sup>ランド</sup> ) 連れて ( <sup>つれて</sup> ) 行 ( <sup>い</sup> ) ってくださいました。

Senshuu ( 1 ) nichiyooobi ( 2 ), kimiko-san ( 3 ) otoosan ( 4 ) kimiko-san ( 5 ), watashi ( 6 ), kuruma ( 7 ) dizunii-rando ( 8 ) tsurete-itte kudasai-mashita.

Last Sunday, Kimiko's father took Kimiko and me to Disneyland.

14. わたし ( <sup>わたし</sup> ) アメリカ ( <sup>アメリカ</sup> ) ディズニーランド ( <sup>ランド</sup> ) ( <sup>い</sup> ) 行 ( <sup>い</sup> ) ったこと ( <sup>こと</sup> ) あります ( <sup>あります</sup> )、東京 ( <sup>とうきょう</sup> ) ディズニーランド ( <sup>ランド</sup> ) アメリカ ( <sup>アメリカ</sup> ) ( <sup>そ</sup> ) っくりで、びっくり ( <sup>びっくり</sup> ) しました。

Watashi ( 1 ) amerika ( 2 ) dizunii-rando ( 3 ) ( 4 ) itta-koto ( 5 ) arimasu ( 6 ), tookyoo ( 7 ) dizunii-rando ( 8 ) amerika ( 9 ) ( 10 ) sokkuri de, bikkuri-shi-mashita.

I have also been to Disneyland in the U.S. I was surprised that the Disneyland in Tokyo was so similar to the one in the U.S.

15. ディズニーランド ( <sup>ランド</sup> ) 遊 ( <sup>あそ</sup> ) んで ( <sup>あそ</sup> )、東京 ( <sup>とうきょう</sup> ) タワー ( <sup>のぼ</sup> ) 登 ( <sup>のぼ</sup> ) りました。

Dizunii-rando ( 1 ) asonde ( 2 ), tookyoo-tawaa ( 3 ) nobori-mashita.

After we had fun at Disneyland, we went up the Tokyo Tower.

16. 夜 ( <sup>よる</sup> ) みんな ( <sup>みんな</sup> )、おすし ( <sup>おすし</sup> ) 屋 ( <sup>や</sup> ) さん ( <sup>さん</sup> ) 行 ( <sup>い</sup> ) きました。カウンタ ( <sup>カウンタ</sup> ) ー ( <sup>ー</sup> ) いす ( <sup>いす</sup> ) 腰 ( <sup>こし</sup> ) かけて、握 ( <sup>にぎ</sup> ) りずし ( <sup>ちゅうもん</sup> ) 注 ( <sup>ちゅうもん</sup> ) 文 ( <sup>ぶん</sup> ) しました。

Yoru ( 1 ) min-na ( 2 ), osushi-ya-san ( 3 ) iki-mashita.

Kauntaa ( 4 ) isu ( 5 ) koshi-kakete, nigiri-zushi ( 6 )  
chuumon-shi-mashita.

In the evening, we went to a sushi restaurant. We sat on tall stools at  
the counter and ordered 'nigiri-zushi.'

17. それ ( ) みんな ( )、カラオケバー ( ) <sup>い</sup>行きました。<sup>かいしゃづと</sup>会社勤  
め ( ) <sup>おとこ</sup>男 ( ) <sup>ひとたち</sup>人達 ( ) <sup>き</sup>たくさん来ていました。お酒 ( )  
<sup>の</sup>飲んでいる人 ( ) <sup>ひと</sup>、マイク ( ) <sup>も</sup>持って <sup>うた</sup>歌 ( ) <sup>うた</sup>歌っている人  
( ) いました。

Sore ( 1 ) min-na ( 2 ), karaoke-baa ( 3 ) iki-mashita.  
Kaisha-zutome ( 4 ) otoko ( 5 ) hito-tachi ( 6 ) takusan  
kite i-mashita. Osake ( 7 ) nonde iru hito ( 8 ), maiku ( 9 )  
motte uta ( 10 ) utatte-iru hito ( 11 ) i-mashita.

Then all of us went to a karaoke bar. There were many men who  
worked at companies who had come (to the bar). There were people  
who were (doing such things as) drinking sake and singing songs,  
holding a microphone.

18. きみ<sup>こ</sup>子さん ( ) わたし ( )、同じ<sup>おな</sup>大学 ( ) <sup>だいがく</sup>勉強しています  
( )、きみ<sup>こ</sup>子さん ( ) <sup>せんこう</sup>専攻 ( ) <sup>えいぶんがく</sup>英文学です。

Kimiko-san ( 1 ) watashi ( 2 ), onaji daigaku ( 3 ) ben-  
kyoo-shite-imasu ( 4 ), kimiko-san ( 5 ) senkoo ( 6 )  
eebungaku desu.

Kimiko and I are studying at the same college, but Kimiko is majoring  
in English literature.

19. わたし<sup>たち</sup>達 ( ) <sup>だいがく</sup>大学 ( )、<sup>しぶや</sup>渋谷 ( ) あります。

Watashi-tachi ( 1 ) daigaku ( 2 ), shibuya ( 3 ) ari-masu.

Our college is in Shibuya.

20. きみ<sup>こ</sup>子さん (    ) わたし (    ), 毎日<sup>まいにち</sup>地下鉄<sup>ちかてつ</sup> (    ) バス (    ) 大<sup>だい</sup>  
学<sup>がく</sup> (    ) 通<sup>かよ</sup>います

Kimiko-san ( 1 ) watashi ( 2 ), mainichi chikatetsu ( 3 )  
basu ( 4 ) daigaku ( 5 ) kayoi-masu.

Kimiko and I commute to school by subway and bus every day.

## Lesson 10

Comprehension Exercises. Complete the sentences below, using appropriate particles.

My Experience Living in Japan (B):

1. 今日 ( きょう )、わたし ( わたし ) 日本 ( にほん ) ( ) 生活 ( せいかつ ) ついて、お話し ( はなし ) しましょう。

Kyoo ( 1 ), watashi ( 2 ) nihon ( 3 ) ( 4 ) seekatsu ( 5 ) tsuite ohanashi-shi-mashoo.

Today, I shall talk about my life in Japan.

2. わたし ( わたし )、毎朝 ( まいあさ ) たいてい六時 ( ろくじ ) ( お ) 起きます。シャワー ( シャワー ) 浴びて、身支度 ( みじたく ) ( ) すると、朝食 ( ちょうしょく ) です。

Watashi ( 1 ), maiasa taitee roku-ji ( 2 ) oki-masu. Shawaa ( 3 ) abite, mi-jitaku ( 4 ) suru to, chooshoku desu.

Every morning, I usually get up at six. After taking a shower and getting ready for school, I have breakfast.

3. 黒川 ( くろかわ ) さん ( ) うち ( ) 朝食 ( ちょうしょく ) ( )、たいてい ( わふう ) 和風 ( ) で、ごはん ( ) おみそ汁 ( おみそ ) ( ) ほか ( )、ゆで卵 ( たまご ) ( ) 野菜 ( やさい ) ( ) あります。

Kurokawa-san ( 1 ) uchi ( 2 ) chooshoku ( 3 ), taitee wafuu de, gohan ( 4 ) omisoshiru ( 5 ) hoka ( 6 ), yude-tamago ( 7 ) yasai ( 8 ) ari-masu.

Breakfast at the Kurokawas is usually Japanese style, and we have (there are) rice, and miso-soup, as well as boiled eggs, and vegetables.

4. わたし ( ) 日本食 ( ) 大好きです ( )、納豆 ( )  
( )、まだどうしても食べられません。

Watashi ( 1 ) nihon-shoku ( 2 ) daisuki desu ( 3 ), natto  
( 4 ) ( 5 ), mada dooshitemo taberare-masen.

I love Japanese food, but natto is the only thing I can't eat yet, no  
matter what.

5. きみ子さん ( ) わたし ( )、うち中 ( ) 一番早くうち  
( ) 出ます ( )、弟 ( ) 伸二君 ( )、学校 ( ) 近いの  
で、七時半ごろうち ( ) 出ます。

Kimiko-san ( 1 ) watashi ( 2 ), uchijuu ( 3 ) ichiban haya-  
ku uchi ( 4 ) de-masu ( 5 ), ootoo ( 6 ) shinji-kun  
( 7 ), gakkoo ( 8 ) chikai node shichi-ji han goro uchi ( 9 )  
de-masu.

In the family, Kimiko and I leave home the earliest, but Kimiko's  
brother, Shinji, leaves home around seven-thirty, since his school is  
close to the house.

6. 黒川さん ( ) ご主人 ( ) 社長さんです ( )、毎朝会社  
( ) 車 ( )、八時ごろ黒川さん ( ) 迎え ( ) 来ます。

Kurokawa-san ( 1 ) goshujin ( 2 ) shachoo-san desu  
( 3 ), mai-asa kaisha ( 4 ) kuruma ( 5 ), hachi-ji goro  
kurokawa-san ( 6 ) mukae ( 7 ) ki-masu.

Since Mr. Kurokawa is the president, his company car (his chauffeur)  
comes to pick him up about eight o'clock every morning.

7. 朝大学 ( ) 着いて ( ) 午後 ( ) 授業 ( ) 終わる  
( )、きみ子さん ( ) わたし ( ) 別々 ( ) 校舎 ( ) 勉

きょう  
強します。

Asa daigaku ( 1 ) tsuite ( 2 ) gogo ( 3 ) jugyoo ( 4 )  
owaru ( 5 ), kimiko-san ( 6 ) watashi ( 7 ) betsu-betsu  
( 8 ) koosha ( 9 ) benkyoo-shi-masu.

After we arrive at school, until our afternoon classes are over, Kimiko  
and I study in separate buildings.

8. にほんご ( ) 先生 ( ) 名前 ( ) 池上 ( ) 言って、若くてき  
れいな女 ( ) 人です。

Nihongo ( 1 ) sensee ( 2 ) namae ( 3 ) ikegami ( 4 )  
itte, wakakute kiree na on-na ( 5 ) hito desu.

The name of my Japanese teacher is Ikegami, and she is a young and  
beautiful woman.

9. にほんご ( ) 文法 ( ) 授業 ( ) 、週 ( ) 五時間 ( )  
ありますし、会話 ( ) 二時間あります。

Nihongo ( 1 ) bunpoo ( 2 ) jugyoo ( 3 ), shuu ( 4 )  
go-jikan ( 5 ) ari-masu shi, kaiwa ( 6 ) ni-jikan ari-masu.

We have a Japanese grammar class (as much as) five hours a week, and  
we also have two hours of conversation class.

10. にほんご ( ) クラス ( ) ( ) 、アメリカ人 ( ) フランス人  
( ) ドイツ人 ( ) 中国人 ( ) います。

Nihon ( 1 ) kurasu ( 2 ) ( 3 ), amerika-jin ( 4 ) furansu-  
jin ( 5 ) doitsu-jin ( 6 ) chuugoku-jin ( 7 ) i-masu.

In my Japanese class, there are students (whose nationalities include)  
American, French, German and also Chinese.



11. 日本 ( ) 文化 ( ) 勉強するクラス ( ) ( ), 今、お茶 ( ) 生け花 ( ) 勉強 ( ) しています。きみ子さん ( ) お母さん ( ) 生け花 ( ) 先生です ( ), わたし ( ) いろいろ教えてもらいます。

Nihon ( 1 ) bunka ( 2 ) benkyoo-suru kurasu ( 3 ) ( 4 ), ima, ocha ( 5 ) ikebana ( 6 ) benkyoo ( 7 ) shite-imasu. Kimiko-san ( 8 ) okaasan ( 9 ) ikebana ( 10 ) sensee desu ( 11 ), watashi ( 12 ) iro-iro oshiete morai-masu

In the class where we study Japanese culture, we are learning tea ceremony and flower arranging. Since Kimiko's mother is a teacher of flower arranging, I learn a lot from her.

12. 日本 ( ) 歴史 ( ) 勉強するクラス ( ) ( ), 明治維新 ( ) ついて ( ) 本 ( ) 読んでいます。

Nihon ( 1 ) rekishi ( 2 ) benkyoo-suru kurasu ( 3 ) ( 4 ), meiji-ishin ( 5 ) tsuite ( 6 ) hon ( 7 ) yonde-imasu.

In the class in which we study about Japanese History, we are now reading a book on the Meiji Restoration.

13. お昼 ( ) たいてい学校 ( ) 食堂 ( ) お友達 ( ) 一緒に ( ) 食べます。和食 ( ) 洋食 ( ) あって、とてもおいしいです。

Ohiru ( 1 ) taitee gakkoo ( 2 ) shokudoo ( 3 ) otomodachi ( 4 ) issho ( 5 ) tabe-masu. Washoku ( 6 ) yoo-shoku ( 7 ) atte, totemo oishii desu.

Usually, I have lunch at the school cafeteria with my friends. Both Japanese and Western style foods are available, and they are delicious.

14. 四時 ( ) 授業 ( ) 終わる ( )、きみ子さん ( ) わたし ( ) 一緒 ( ) うち ( ) 帰ります。

Yoji ( 1 ) jugyoo ( 2 ) owaru ( 3 ), kimiko-san ( 4 ) watashi ( 5 ) issho ( 6 ) uchi ( 7 ) kaeri-masu.

When school is over at four o'clock, Kimiko and I go home together.

15. 夕食 ( ) 楽しいひとときです。きみ子さん ( ) お父さん ( ) とても忙しくて、会社 ( ) 終わって ( ) ( )、外国 ( ) ( ) お客さん ( ) 会ったりします ( )、普段 ( ) わたし達 ( ) 一緒 ( ) 夕食 ( ) 食べること ( ) ありません。

Yuushoku ( 1 ) tanoshii hitotoki desu. Kimiko-san ( 2 ) otoosan ( 3 ) totemo isogashiku te, kaisha ( 4 ) owatte ( 5 ) ( 6 ), gaikoku ( 7 ) ( 8 ) okyaku-san ( 9 ) attari shi-masu ( 10 ), fudan ( 11 ) watashi-tachi ( 12 ) issho ( 13 ) yuushoku ( 14 ) taberu koto ( 15 ) amari arimasen.

Dinner time is a fun time. But since Kimiko's father is very busy, and even after work, he has meetings with visitors from foreign countries, he seldom has a chance to have dinner with us.

16. でも、きみ子さん ( ) お父さん ( ) 夜九時ごろ ( ) ( ) うち ( ) 帰って来ます ( )、みんな ( ) 一緒 ( ) お茶 ( ) 飲んだりお菓子 ( ) 食べたりしながら、学校 ( ) こと ( ) 話します。弟 ( ) 伸二君 ( ) 一緒です。

Demo, kimiko-san ( 1 ) otoosan ( 2 ) yoru ku-ji goro ( 3 )  
 ( 4 ) uchi ( 5 ) kaette ki-masu ( 6 ), min-na ( 7 ) issho  
 ( 8 ) ocha ( 9 ) nondari okashi ( 10 ) tabe-tari shi-nagara,  
 gakkoo ( 11 ) koto ( 12 ) hanashi-masu. Ootoo ( 13 ) shinji-  
 kun ( 14 ) issho desu.

However, when Kimiko's father comes home at around nine o'clock, all  
 of us drink tea and eat sweets while we talk about things (that  
 happened) at school. Kimiko's brother, Shinji, (chats) with us, too.

17. まいにちしゅくだい 毎日宿題 ( ) たくさんある があるので、きみこ きみ子さん ( ) わたし ( )  
よるじゅうに 夜十二時 ( ) べんきょう 勉強します。

Mainichi shukudai ( 1 ) takusan aru node, kimiko-san ( 2 )  
 watashi ( 3 ) yoru juuni-ji ( 4 ) benkyoo-shi-masu.

Because we have a lot of homework assignments every day, Kimiko  
 and I study until twelve o'clock midnight.

18. きみこ きみ子さん ( ) えいご 英語 ( ) わからな い時 ( )、わたし ( )  
おし 教えてあげますし、わたし ( ) にほんご 日本語 ( ) わからな い時 ( )  
きみこ きみ子さん ( ) おし 教えてくれます。

Kimiko-san ( 1 ) eego ( 2 ) wakara-nai toki ( 3 ), watashi  
 ( 4 ) oshiete-age-masu shi, watashi ( 5 ) nihongo ( 6 )  
 wakara-nai toki ( 7 ) kimiko-san ( 8 ) oshiete-kure-masu.

When Kimiko does not understand English, I help (teach) her, and in  
 return, when I don't understand Japanese, Kimiko teaches me.

19. ときどき 時々シカゴ ( ) ともだち 友達 ( ) てがみ 手紙 ( ) き 来ます。わたし ( ) シ  
 カゴ ( ) にほんご 日本語 ( ) なら 習った よこやま 横山 せんせい 先生 ( ) ( ) てがみ 手紙

(     ) <sup>か</sup>書きます。

Toki-doki shikago ( 1 ) tomodachi ( 2 ) tegami ( 3 ) ki-  
masu. Watashi ( 4 ) shikago ( 5 ) nihongo ( 6 ) na-ratta  
yokoyama-sensee ( 7 ) ( 8 ) tegami ( 9 ) kaki-masu.

I sometimes get a letter from my friend in Chicago. I also write letters  
to Mrs. Yokoyama from whom I learned Japanese.

20. わたし (     ) <sup>まいあさ</sup>毎朝シャワー (     ) <sup>あ</sup>浴びます (     )、日本 (     ) <sup>にほん</sup>お  
<sup>ふろ</sup>風呂 (     ) <sup>だいす</sup>大好きです (     )、夜 <sup>よる</sup>よく <sup>ふろ</sup>お風呂 (     ) <sup>はい</sup>入ります。スト  
レス (     ) とれて、いい <sup>きもち</sup>気持ちはです。

Watashi ( 1 ) mai-asa shawaa ( 2 ) abi-masu ( 3 ), nihon  
( 4 ) ofuro ( 5 ) daisuki desu ( 6 ), yoru yoku ofuro  
( 7 ) hairi-masu. Sutoresu ( 8 ) torete ii kimochi desu.

Although I take a shower every morning, because I love Japanese baths,  
I often take a bath in the evening. It rids me of stress, and makes me  
feel good.

## ANSWER KEYS

### 【Lesson 1】

1. 1-か(ga)
2. 1-は(wa)
3. 1-が(ga)
4. 1-は(wa)
5. 1-は(wa), 2-が(ga)
6. 1-は(wa), 2-が(ga)
7. 1-は(wa), 2-は(wa)
8. 1-が(ga)
9. 1-は(wa)
10. 1-は(wa)
11. 1-が(ga)
12. 1-が(ga)
13. 1-が(ga)
14. 1-は(wa)
15. 1-が(ga)
16. 1-が(ga)
17. 1-は(wa), 2-が(ga)
18. 1-は(wa), 2-が(ga), 3-が(ga)/は(wa)
19. 1-が(ga)
20. 1-が(ga)
21. 1-が(ga)
22. 1-は(wa)
23. 1-は(wa)
24. 1-は(wa)
25. 1-は(wa)
26. 1-が(ga)
27. 1-が(ga)
28. 1-が(ga)
29. 1-は(wa), 2-が(ga)
30. 1-は(wa), 2-は(wa), 3-は(wa)

### 【Lesson 2】

1. 1-は(wa)
2. 1-が(ga)
3. 1-が(ga)
4. 1-も(mo)
5. 1-は(wa)
6. 1-は(wa), 2-が(ga)

7. 1-も(mo), 2-が(ga)
8. 1-は(wa), 2-が(ga)
9. 1-は(wa)
10. 1-は(wa), 2-が(ga)
11. 1-も(mo), 2-が(ga)
12. 1-は(wa), 2-は(wa), 3-が(ga)
13. 1-は(wa), 2-が(ga)
14. 1-も(mo), 2-が(ga)
15. 1-は(wa), 2-が(ga)
16. 1-は(wa), 2-は(wa)
17. 1-は(wa)
18. 1-も(mo)
19. 1-も(mo)
20. 1-も(mo)
21. 1-は(wa)
22. 1-が(ga)
23. 1-も(mo)
24. 1-も(mo)
25. 1-が(ga)
26. 1-が(ga)
27. 1-は(wa), 2-が(ga)
28. 1-は(wa), 2-も(mo), 3-も(mo)
29. 1-も(mo), 2-も(mo), 3-が(ga)
30. 1-は(wa), 2-が(ga), 3-は(wa)

### 【Lesson 3】

1. 1-の(no), 2-が(ga)/は(wa)
2. 1-の(no), 2-も(mo)
3. 1-の(no), 2-は(wa)
4. 1-の(no), 2-は(wa), 3-が(ga)
5. 1-の(no)
6. 1-は(wa), 2-が(ga)
7. 1-は(wa), 2-が(ga)
8. 1-は(wa), 2-が(ga)
9. 1-は(wa), 2-が(ga), 3-が(ga)
10. 1-の(no), 2-は(wa), 3-が(ga)
11. 1-の(no), 2-も(mo), 3-も(mo)
12. 1-の(no), 2-は(wa), 3-が(ga), 4-が(ga), 5-の(no), 6-は(wa), 7-が(ga)
13. 1-の(no), 2-も(mo), 3-が(ga)

14. 1-の(no), 2-も(mo)
15. 1-の(no), 2-は(wa)
16. 1-は(wa), 2-が(ga), 3-が(ga)
17. 1-の(no), 2-も(mo)
18. 1-は(wa)
19. 1-が(ga), 2-が(ga)
20. 1-が(ga)
21. 1-も(mo), 2-も(mo), 3-が(ga)
22. 1-が(ga)
23. 1-は(wa), 2-は(wa)
24. 1-の(no), 2-は(wa), 3-が(ga)
25. 1-は(wa), 2-が(ga), 3-も(mo)
26. 1-は(wa), 2-は(wa), 3-が(ga)
27. 1-の(no), 2-が(ga)
28. 1-が(ga), 2-が(ga)
29. 1-は(wa), 2-が(ga), 3-が(ga), 4-の(no), 5-は(wa), 6-も(mo), 7-も(mo)
30. 1-が(ga), 2-も(mo), 3-も(mo), 4-も(mo)

#### [Lesson 4]

1. 1-で(de), 2-を(o)
2. 1-で(de)
3. 1-を(o)
4. 1-で(de), 2-を(o)
5. 1-を(o), 2-で(de)
6. 1-を(o), 2-で(de)
7. 1-を(o), 2-で(de)
8. 1-で(de), 2-を(o)
9. 1-を(o)
10. 1-を(o), 2-で(de)
11. 1-で(de), 2-を(o)
12. 1-で(de), 2-を(o)
13. 1-で(de), 2-を(o)
14. 1-で(de)
15. 1-を(o), 2-で(de)
16. 1-で(de), 2-で(de), 3-を(o)
17. 1-で(de), 2-を(o)
18. 1-を(o), 2-で(de)
19. 1-を(o), 2-で(de)
20. 1-を(o), 2-で(de)
21. 1-を(o), 2-で(de), 3-を(o)
22. 1-を(o), 2-で(de)
23. 1-で(de), 2-を(o)
24. 1-で(de), 2-を(o)

25. 1-で(de), 2-を(o), 3-を(o)
26. 1-で(de), 2-を(o), 3-で(de)
27. 1-で(de), 2-を(o)
28. 1-で(de), 2-を(o)
29. 1-で(de), 2-を(o)
30. 1-で(de), 2-で(de), 3-を(o)

#### [Lesson 5]

1. 1-を(o), 2-で(de), 3-に(ni)
2. 1-へ(e)/に(ni), 2-で(de)
3. 1-で(de), 2-に(ni), 3-を(o)
4. 1-に(ni), 2-で(de), 3-を(o)
5. 1-を(o), 2-へ(e)/に(ni)
6. 1-に(ni), 2-で(de)
7. 1-に(ni), 2-で(de), 3-を(o)
8. 1-で(de), 2-へ(e)/に(ni), 3-で(de), 4-を(o)
9. 1-へ(e)/に(ni), 2-で(de), 3-を(o)
10. 1-に(ni), 2-に(ni), 3-を(o)
11. 1-に(ni), 2-で(de)
12. 1-へ(e)/に(ni), 2-に(ni), 3-を(o)
13. 1-を(o), 2-に(ni)
14. 1-に(ni), 2-を(o), 3-で(de), 4-を(o), 5-へ(e)/に(ni)
15. 1-に(ni), 2-で(de), 3-を(o)
16. 1-で(de), 2-を(o)
17. 1-で(de), 2-に(ni), 3-で(de), 4-を(o)
18. 1-を(o), 2-に(ni), 3-へ(e)/に(ni), 4-で(de), 5-を(o)
19. 1-に(ni), 2-へ(e)/に(ni), 3-に(ni)
20. 1-で(de), 2-に(ni), 3-を(o)
21. 1-に(ni), 2-を(o)
22. 1-で(de), 2-に(ni)
23. 1-に(ni), 2-を(o), 3-で(de)
24. 1-に(ni), 2-を(o), 3-へ(e)/に(ni)
25. 1-を(o), 2-で(de)/を(wa), 3-に(ni)/へ(ni), 4-を(o), 5-に(ni)
26. 1-で(de), 2-に(ni), 3-に(ni), 4-で(de), 5-を(o)
27. 1-に(ni), 2-を(o), 3-で(de)
28. 1-を(o), 2-へ(e)/に(ni), 3-を(o)
29. 1-で(de), 2-を(o), 3-へ(e)/に(ni)
30. 1-を(o), 2-で(de), 3-に(ni), 4-に(ni), 5-を(o), 6-を(o)

## [Lesson 6]

1. 1-から (kara)
2. 1-まで (made)
3. 1-から (kara)
4. 1-から (kara), 2-へ (e)/に (ni), 3-まで (made), 4-へ (e)/に (ni)
5. 1-から (kara), 2-まで (made)
6. 1-から (kara), 2-から (kara), 3-まで (made)
7. 1-から (kara)
8. 1-から (kara), 2-まで (made)
9. 1-から (kara)
10. 1-まで (made), 2-に (ni), 3-から (kara), 4-まで (made)
11. 1-まで (made)/に (ni)/へ (e), 2-から (kara)
12. 1-から (kara), 2-まで (made)
13. 1-まで (made), 2-から (kara)
14. 1-から (kara), 2-に (ni)
15. 1-から (kara), 2-まで (made)
16. 1-に (ni), 2-から (kara), 3-に (ni)
17. 1-から (kara), 2-まで (made), 3-に (ni)
18. 1-まで (made), 2-に (ni), 3-から (kara)
19. 1-から (kara), 2-まで (made)
20. 1-まで (made), 2-に (ni)
21. 1-から (kara), 2-まで (made), 3-に (ni)
22. 1-に (ni), 2-から (kara)
23. 1-に (ni), 2-から (kara)
24. 1-まで (made), 2-から (kara), 3-へ (e)/に (ni)
25. 1-まで (made), 2-から (kara), 3-に (ni), 4-まで (made)/に (ni), 5-まで (made), 6-に (ni), 7-に (ni)
26. 1-から (kara), 2-から (kara), 3-まで (made), 4-に (ni), 5-へ (e)/に (ni)
27. 1-が (ga), 2-から (kara), 3-に (ni), 4-まで (made), 5-へ (e)/に (ni)
28. 1-まで (made), 2-から (kara), 3-へ (e)/に (ni), 4-まで (made), 5-へ (e)/に (ni)
29. 1-から (kara), 2-まで (made), 3-に (ni), 4-から (kara)

30. 1-に (ni), 2-から (kara), 3-に (ni), 4-まで (made), 5-から (kara), 6-まで (made), 7-に (ni), 8-へ (e)/に (ni)

## [Lesson 7]

1. 1-だけ (dake), 2-だけ (dake)
2. 1-や (ya), 2-や (ya), 3-と (to)
3. 1-と (to), 2-だけ (dake)
4. 1-と (to), 2-しか (shika)
5. 1-ぐらい (gurai), 2-だけ (dake), 3-しか (shika)
6. 1-と (to), 2-と (to)
7. 1-と (to), 2-や (ya)
8. 1-と (to), 2-しか (shika)
9. 1-と (to), 2-だけ (dake), 3-ぐらい (gurai)
10. 1-だけ (dake), 2-ぐらい (gurai), 4-しか (shika)
11. 1-しか (shika), 2-ぐらい (gurai)
12. 1-くらい (kurai)
13. 1-ぐらい (gurai)
14. 1-や (ya), 2-くらい (kurai), 3-しか (shika)
15. 1-と (to), 2-と (to)
16. 1-と (to), 2-や (ya), 3-だけ (dake)
17. 1-しか (shika), 2-だけ (dake), 3-ぐらい (gurai)
18. 1-だけ (dake), 2-しか (shika), 3-ぐらい (gurai)
19. 1-だけ (dake), 2-しか (shika)
20. 1-や (ya), 2-ぐらい (gurai), 3-しか (shika)

## [Lesson 8]

1. 1-と (to), 2-と (to), 3-の (no)
2. 1-と (to), 2-と (to)
3. 1-より (yori), 2-の (no)
4. 1-ほど (hodo)
5. 1-より (yori), 2-の (no), 3-ほど (hodo)
6. 1-と (to), 2-で (de)
7. 1-と (to), 2-と (to), 3-の (no), 4-で (de)
8. 1-ほど (hodo), 2-より (yori)
9. 1-より (yori), 2-の (no)

10. 1-で(de), 2-より(yori), 3-で(de)
11. 1-より(yori), 2-ほど(hodo)
12. 1-と(to), 2-と(to), 3-と(to), 4-で(de)
13. 1-より(yori), 2-の(no), 3-ほど(hodo)
14. 1-と(to), 2-で(de), 3-の(no)
15. 1-で(de), 2-より(yori), 3-の(no), 4-の(no)
16. 1-と(to), 2-で(de), 3-の(no), 4-の(no), 5-より(yori)
17. 1-と(to), 2-の(no), 3-で(de)
18. 1-ほど(hodo), 2-の(no), 3-より(yori)
19. 1-の(no), 2-と(to), 3-と(to), 4-で(de), 5-の(no), 6-より(yori)
20. 1-の(no), 2-の(no), 3-で(de), 4-より(yori), 5-の(no), 6-ほど(hodo)

### [Lesson 9]

1. 1-の(no), 2-は(wa), 3-と(to)
2. 1-は(wa), 2-から(kara), 3-で(de), 4-を(o)
3. 1-は(wa), 2-の(no), 3-に(ni), 4-から(kara), 5-へ(e)/に(ni)
4. 1-は(wa), 2-は(wa), 3-が(ga), 4-の(no), 5-で(de), 6-の(no), 7-を(o), 8-の(no), 9-も(mo) 10-から(kara), 11-が(ga)/は(wa)
5. 1-で(de), 2-は(wa), 3-だけ(dake), 4-の(no), 5-や(ya), 6-や(ya), 7-も(mo)
6. 1-の(no), 2-に(ni), 3-は(wa), 4-に(ni), 5-が(ga), 6-で(de), 7-は(wa), 8-を(o), 9-は(wa), 10-と(to)
7. 1-の(no), 2-は(wa), 3-の(no)
8. 1-の(no), 2-は(wa), 3-の(no)
9. 1-の(no), 2-は(wa), 3-の(no), 4-の(no), 5-が(ga)
10. 1-の(no), 2-は(wa), 3-を(o), 4-と(to), 5-と(to)
11. 1-の(no), 2-に(ni), 3-と(to), 4-が(ga), 5-が(ga), 6-は(wa)
12. 1-は(wa), 2-に(ni), 3-から(kara), 4-と(to), 5-を(o), 6-から(kara)

13. 1-の(no), 2-は(wa)/に(ni), 3-の(no), 4-が(ga), 5-と(to), 6-を(o), 7-で(de), 8-へ(e)/に(ni)
14. 1-は(wa), 2-の(no), 3-へ(e)/に(ni), 4-も(mo), 5-が(ga), 6-が(ga), 7-の(no), 8-は(wa), 9-の(no), 10-と(to)
15. 1-で(de), 2-から(kara), 3-へ(e)/に(ni)
16. 1-は(wa), 2-で(de), 3-へ(e)/に(ni), 4-の(no), 5-に(ni), 6-を(o)
17. 1-から(kara), 2-で(de), 3-へ(e)/に(ni), 4-の(no), 5-の(no), 6-が(ga), 7-を(o), 8-や(ya), 9-を(o), 10-を(o), 11-も(mo)
18. 1-と(to), 2-は(wa), 3-で(de), 4-が(ga), 5-の(no), 6-は(wa)
19. 1-の(no), 2-は(wa), 3-に(ni)
20. 1-と(to), 2-は(wa), 3-と(to), 4-で(de), 5-へ(e)/に(ni)

### [Lesson 10]

1. 1-は(wa), 2-の(no), 3-で(de), 4-の(no), 5-に(ni)
2. 1-は(wa), 2-に(ni), 3-を(o), 4-を(o)
3. 1-の(no), 2-の(no), 3-は(wa), 4-と(to), 5-の(no), 6-に(ni), 7-や(ya), 8-も(mo)
4. 1-は(wa), 2-は(wa)/が(ga), 3-が(ga), 4-だけ(dake), 5-は(wa)
5. 1-と(to), 2-は(wa), 3-で(de), 4-を(o), 5-が(ga), 6-の(no), 7-は(wa), 8-が(ga), 9-を(o)
6. 1-の(no), 2-は(wa), 3-から(kara), 4-の(no), 5-が(ga), 6-を(o), 7-に(ni)
7. 1-に(ni), 2-から(kara), 3-の(no), 4-が(ga), 5-まで(made), 6-と(to), 7-は(wa), 8-の(no), 9-で(de)
8. 1-の(no), 2-の(no), 3-は(wa), 4-と(to), 5-の(no)
9. 1-の(no), 2-の(no), 3-は(wa), 4-に(ni), 5-も(mo), 6-も(mo)
10. 1-の(no), 2-に(ni), 3-は(wa), 4-や(ya), 5-や(ya), 6-や(ya), 7-も(mo)
11. 1-の(no), 2-を(o), 3-で(de), 4-は



- (wa), 5-と (to), 6-の (no), 7-を (o),  
 8-の (no), 9-は (wa), 10-の (no),  
 11-から (kara), 12-は (wa)
12. 1-の (no), 2-を (o), 3-で (de), 4-は (wa), 5-に (ni), 6-の (no), 7-を (o)
  13. 1-は (wa), 2-の (no), 3-で (de), 4-と (to), 5-に (ni), 6-も (mo), 7-も (mo)
  14. 1-に (ni), 2-が (ga), 3-と (to), 4-と (to), 5-は (wa), 6-に (ni), 7-へ (e)/に (ni)
  15. 1-は (wa), 2-の (no), 3-は (wa), 4-が (ga), 5-から (kara), 6-も (mo), 7-から (kara), 8-の (no), 9-と (to), 10-から (kara), 11-は (wa), 12-と (to), 13-に (ni), 14-を (o), 15-は (wa)
  16. 1-の (no), 2-は (wa), 3-に (ni), 4-は (wa), 5-へ (e)/に (ni), 6-から (kara), 7-で (de), 8-に (ni), 9-を (o), 10-を (o), 11-の (no), 12-を (o), 13-の (no), 14-も (mo)
  17. 1-が (ga), 2-も (mo), 3-も (mo), 4-まで (made)
  18. 1-が (ga), 2-が (ga), 3-は (wa), 4-が (ga), 5-が (ga), 6-が (ga), 7-は (wa), 8-が (ga)
  19. 1-の (no), 2-から (kara), 3-が (ga), 4-は (wa), 5-で (de), 6-を (o), 7-に (ni), 8-も (mo), 9-を (o)
  20. 1-は (wa), 2-を (o), 3-が (ga), 4-の (no), 5-が (ga), 6-から (kara), 7-に (ni), 8-が (ga)

## PATTERNS

### [A]

about	"ni tsuite について" .....	192
according to	"... ni yotte ~によって (... ni yori ~により/... ni yore ba ~によれば/... ni yora-nai de ~によ らないで)" .....	128
according to (topic)...	"... to ie ba ~といえ、" "... nara ba ~ならば" .....	1
again	"mata mo ya またもや" .....	246
also	"... mo ... ~も~" .....	91
although	"to yuu noni というのに," "ii noni いいのに"	167
and	"... ta nari ~たなり" .....	113
and	"(noun) to (noun) ~と~" .....	201
... and ...	the same verb is repeated with "ni に" in between	131
... <u>and</u> ...	"... shi ... shi ~し~し" .....	180
... and ... (like crazy)	"... (t)te ... (t)te ... makuru ~（っ）て~（っ）てま くる" .....	191
(doing verb) and/while then (doing verb)	"... tari ... tari ~たり~たり" .....	188
anyone	"dare shimo だれしも" .....	184
as	"... no yoo na ~のよう、" "... no yoo ni ~のよ うに" .....	153
as for	"ttara ... nai ったら~ない" .....	186
as for ... and ...	"... to ii ... to ii ~といい~といい" .....	210
as if	"ga gotoku がごとく" .....	38
as well as	"... mo ... mo ~も~も" .....	93
at	"de wa では," "de mo でも" .....	20
at	"... ni yotte ~によって (... ni yori ~により/... ni yore ba ~によれば/... ni yora-nai de ~に よらないで)" .....	128
at	"kore nite これにて," "koko nite ここにて" ...	142
at all	"marukkiri まるっきり" .....	75

### [B]

because ...	"naze nara ba なぜならば" .....	4
(precisely) because	"... kara koso ~からこそ" or "... ba koso ~ばこ そ" .....	76
because (someone) said ...	"to yuu node と言うので" .....	161
between	"... kara ... made ~から~まで" .....	57
between	"(noun) to (noun) ~と~" .....	201
both	"... mo ... mo ~も~も" .....	93
but	"to yuu noni というのに," "ii noni いいのに"	167

by	"... ni yotte 〜によって(... ni yori 〜により/... ni yore ba 〜によれば/... ni yora-nai de 〜に よらないで)" ..... 128
<b>[C]</b>	
cannot do ... even if (I) were to try	"(verb) ni mo にも (verb) zu/nai ず/ない" ... 136
concerning	"ni tsuite について" ..... 192
considering (something, it is evident that ...)	"... suru to 〜すると," "... shita tokoro ga 〜したところ が" ..... 2
<b>[D]</b>	
do (something), but ...	"koso sure こそすれ" ..... 76
doesn't make much difference	"... de mo 〜でも" or "... te mo 〜ても" ..... 94
doesn't matter	"... de mo 〜でも" or "... te mo 〜ても" ..... 94
due to	"... ni yotte 〜によって (... ni yori 〜によ り/... ni yore ba 〜によれば/... ni yora-nai de 〜によらないで)" ..... 128
<b>[E]</b>	
either ... or	"... mo ... mo 〜も〜も" ..... 93
even	"sae ... dakara さえ〜だから" ..... 179
(even if I were to ... )	"doose ... keredomo どうせ〜けれども" ..... 72
even more	"mashite ya ましてや" ..... 246
even though	"... kara to itte 〜からといって" ..... 63
even though	"to yuu noni というのに" "ji noni いいのに" 167
every possible (thing/method)	"ari to arayuru ... ありとあらゆる〜" ..... 209
everyone	"dare shimo だれしも" ..... 184
exactly as (something)	"ga mama ni がままだに" ..... 38
<b>[F]</b>	
from	"... ni yotte 〜によって(... ni yori 〜により/... ni yore ba 〜によれば/... ni yora-nai de 〜に よらないで)" ..... 128
from ... till	"... kara ... made 〜から〜まで" ..... 83
from/to	"... kara ... made 〜から〜まで" ..... 57
from ... to	"... kara ... made 〜から〜まで" ..... 83
<b>[H]</b>	
have/has just done (something)	"... ta bakari 〜たばかり" ..... 7
(he/she) says ...	"datte だって" ..... 234
..., (he/she said)	"te sa てさ," "to sa とさ" ..... 178
<b>[I]</b>	
..., (I hear)	"te sa てさ," "to sa とさ" ..... 178
I regret ...	"... deshoo ni 〜でしように," "... de aroo ni 〜であらうに," "... daroo ni 〜だらうに," "... deshita deshoo ni 〜でした しょうに," "... datta deshoo ni 〜だった しょうに," "... datta roo ni 〜だった しょうに" ..... 135
((I) remember)	"dakke だっけ," "dattakke だった っけ" ..... 69

I suppose ...	"... deshoo ni ~でしょうに," "... de aroo ni ~であろうに," "... daroo ni ~だろうに," "... deshita deshoo ni ~でしたでしょうに," "datta deshoo ni ~だったでしょうに," "... datta roo ni ~だったろうに" ..... 135
I sympathize ...	"... deshoo ni ~でしょうに," "... de aroo ni ~であろうに," "... daroo ni ~だろうに," "... deshita deshoo ni ~でしたでしょうに," "... datta deshoo ni ~だったでしょうに," "... datta roo ni ~だったろうに" ..... 135
I wish (it) would ...	"... nai kana ~ないかな" ..... 53
if only there were (something), even just a little bit of it...	"semete... demo... せめて~でも~" ..... 28
in	"de wa では," "de mo でも" ..... 20
in	"kore nite これにて," "koko nite ここにて" ... 142
in/at (location) and in/at (loca- tion) ...	"... demo ... demo ~でも~でも" ..... 19
in any case ...	"nani wa to mo are 何はともあれ" ..... 221
in terms of (topic)...	"... to ie ba ~といえは," "... nara ba ~ならば" ..... 1
it is certain that ..., but	"... ni wa ... keredo (ga) ~には~けれど(が)" 134
it's not as if ...	"aru mai shi あるまいし." ..... 182
<b>[J]</b>	
just by doing...	"... kara ni ~からに" ..... 65
<b>[L]</b>	
let us say ...	"iwa ba いわば," "tatoe ba たとえば" ..... 4
like	"... no yoo na ~のような," "... no yoo ni ~のよ うに" ..... 153
<b>[M]</b>	
more of a ... than ...	"to yuu yori というより" ..... 257
must do (something)	"ne ba nara-nai ねばならない," "nakere ba nara- nai/nari-masen なければならぬ/なりません" ..... 3
<b>[N]</b>	
neither ... nor ...	"... mo ... ba ~も~ば" ..... 3
no matter ...	"don-na ni ... tomo どんなに~とも," "doredake ... tomo どれだけ~とも" ..... 218
no matter (something)	"... u ga ~うが," "... mai ga ~まいが" ..... 39
no matter what/how (some- thing) ...	"don-na ... demo どんな~でも" ..... 27
not all bad	"manzara ... demo まんざら~でも" ..... 28
not necessarily ...	"kanarazu shimo 必ずしも" ..... 184
not only ...	"nomi narazu のみならず" ..... 166
not only ... but (also) ...	"... dake de(ja) naku ... mo ~だけで(じゃ)なく ~も" ..... 12

not only all ..., but ...	"... to iwa zu ... to iwa zu へといわずへといわ ず" .....	213
not only (something), but also (some- thing)...	"bakari ka ばかりか" .....	8
(not only ..., but) ... also	"... bakari de naku ... sae へばかりでなくへさ え" .....	180
not unthinkable	"manzara ... demo まんざらへでも" .....	28
(nothing else) to do besides ...	"yori hoka よりほか" .....	255
now that	"... kara ni wa へからには" .....	64
<b>[O]</b>		
one after another	"... kara ... e へからへ" .....	58
or	"(noun) to (noun) へと" .....	201
... or ...	"... ka ... ka へかへか" .....	47
... or ...	"... yara ... yara へやらへやら" .....	249
(or)	"... no ... no へのへの" .....	156
(number) or (number)	"... ka ... へかへ" .....	48
... or something/someone	"to yara とやら" .....	248
<b>[R]</b>		
(receive favor from ... by request)	"... te morau(... te morai-masu) へてもらう(へて もらいます)" .....	132
regardless of	"... de mo へでも" or "... te mo へても" .....	94
regardless of the fact that...	"don-na ... demo どんなへでも" .....	27
<b>[S]</b>		
since	"... kara ni wa へからには" .....	64
since/because..., (as expected) ...	"dake atte だけあって" .....	13
since it was so ...	"a(n)mari ... node あ(ん)まりので" .....	161
so to speak	"iwa ba いわば," "tatoe ba たとえば" .....	4
solely due to (one cause), matters	"bakari ni ばかりに" .....	6
took a turn for the worse.		
(something) and (something) also	"... mo ... ba へもへば" .....	3
speaking of (topic)...	"... to ie ba へといえは," "... nara ba へならば" .....	1
such as	"... no yoo na へのような," "... no yoo ni へのよ うに" .....	153
such as ... (and ... )	"... ya ... nado へや へなど" .....	108
<b>[T]</b>		
that (would ...) ...	"sore koso それこそ" .....	76
the more (something), the...	"... ba ... dake へばへだけ" .....	12
the more ..., the more ....	"... suru hodo へするほど," "... ba ... hodo へば へほど" .....	44
the reason being...	"naze nara ba なぜならば" .....	4
things like (something) and (some- thing)	"... dano ... dano へだのへだの" .....	14

this/that many	"koo mo こうも (kon-na ni こんなに)," "soo mo そうも (son-na ni そんなに)," "aa mo ああも (an-na ni あんなに)" ..... 97
this/that much	"koo mo こうも (kon-na ni こんなに)," "soo mo そうも (son-na ni そんなに)," "aa mo ああも (an-na ni あんなに)" ..... 97
(this was the situation) when (some- thing else happened)	"... tokoro e へところへ" ..... 34
..., (to be sure) ...	"... (de) wa ... (da) ga. ~(で)は~(だ)が" ... 239
too	"... mo ... もも" ..... 92
(turn) into	"... ni naru (nari-masu) ~になる(なります)" or "... ni kawaru (kawari-masu) ~に変わる(変わります)" ..... 123
<b>[W]</b>	
wasn't it so that ...	"... de wa/ja nai ka ~ではないか/じゃないか" 50
what is/was it ...?	"dakke だっけ," "dattakke だったっけ" ..... 69
when is/was it ...?	"dakke だっけ," "dattakke だったっけ" ..... 69
whether it's (something) or (some- thing)...	"... datte ... datte ~だって~だって" (or, varia- tion: "... tatte ... tatte ~たって~たって") ... 15
whether or not	"... nari ... nari ~なり~なり" ..... 114
(whether) ... or not	"... (a verb) yoo to ... mai to ~(よ)うと~まい と" ..... 205
whether (you) do (something) or not, it doesn't matter...	"... u ga ~うが," "... mai ga ~まいが" ..... 39
while doing...	"... ta nari ~たなり" ..... 113
why don't you do ...	"... tara doo ka ~たらどうか" ..... 51
with	"kore nite これにて," "koko nite ここにて" ... 142
without ... or ...	"... to naku ... to naku ~となく~となく" ..... 209

## GLOSSARY (English-Japanese)

### [A]

a ... or something	nari なり	114
a fact	no の	154
a matter	no の	154
about	hodo ほど	43
about	kurai(gurai) くらい(ぐらい)	79
about	mo も	95
about	no の	149
accompanied by	to と	202
according to	de で	25
according to	kara から	62
according to	ni に	128
after doing ..., (not once done ...)	kiri きり	74
against	to と	203
..., all right?	no の	155
..., all right.	tomo とも	219
also	mo も	92
also	ni-mo にも (C.P.)	136
although	ga が	39
although	monono もの	102
although	mono-o ものを	104
although	noni のに	167
although (usually) ...	tokoro-o ところを	217
always just doing (something)	bakari はかり	5
among	de で	19
and	ni に	127, 129
and	te て	191
and	to と	200
... (and) ..., so ...	shi し	181
... and ... (among other things/ places)	ya や	242
and ... (other things)	yara やら	249
anyone	datte だって	16
anytime	datte だって	16
anywhere	datte だって	16
approximately	bakari ばかり	7
approximately	hodo ほど	43
approximately	kurai(gurai) くらい(ぐらい)	79
around	mo も	95
as	kara から	61

as	ni に	127
as	to-shi-te として (C.P.)	222
as a token of	ni に	127
as far as	made まで	84, 86
as far (a distance) as	mo も	95
as for ...,	ga が	38
as for	to-shite-wa としては (C.P.)	225
as for ...,	wa は	236
as for ..., also/too ...	to-shite-mo としても (C.P.)	223
as long a time as	mo も	95
as many as	kara から	60
as many/much as	mo も	95
as much as ...	dake だけ	11
as much as	kara から	60
as soon as	nari なり	113
as soon as	to と	208
as soon as	ya や	243
as soon as ...	ya-ina-ya やいなや (C.P.)	247
as well as	mo も	95
as you've already heard ...,	ga が	38
at	de で	18, 20, 23
at	e へ	33
at	kara から	56
at	ni に	119, 124, 125, 128
at	ni-shite にして	140
at	no の	149, 150
(at)	o を	175
... at a time	zutsu ずつ	259
at least	temo ても	197
at least	tomo とも	219
at most	temo ても	197
at most	tomo とも	219
<b>[B]</b>		
because	kara から	61
because	mono もの	98
because	mono-de(mon-de) もので(もんで)	100
because	node(n-de) ので(んで)	161
because	te て	190
(because)	node(n-de) ので(んで)	162
(because)	no-de aru のである	163
before	made-ni までに	90
belong to	no の	144
between	no の	148
but	ga が	39
but	keredomo けれども	70



but	kuse-ni くせに (C.P.)	82
but	noni のに	167
but	tokoroga ところが	217
... but ...	shi し	181
by	de で	23, 25
by	kara から	62
by	ni に	128, 131
by	no の	148
by	te て	191
by/from the fact that ...	no-de ので	162
by way of	ni に	127
<b>[C]</b>		
... called/named ...	to yuu という	227
(the color of)	no の	151
concerning	ni-oite において	139
considering	kara から	61
considering (something, it is evident that ...)	ba ば	2
consequently	kara-shite からして	66
continuously only doing ...	kiri きり	74
could only do (something)	bakari ばかり	5
could (you) do ...	kashira かしら	68
created by	no の	148
<b>[D]</b>		
depending on	de で	25
despite	temo ても	196
despite doing (something)	ga が	39
despite that fact	ni-mo-kakawara-zu にもかかわらず (C.P.)	138
(I'm sorry that I) did not do ..., but ...	n de んで	115
do (verb) and ...	te て	190
do (something) by using (something)	de で	21
do you want to ...	ka か	50
(doing verb) and/while then (doing verb)	tari たり	188
doing only one thing all the time	bakari ばかり	5
don't ...	na な	107
don't say that ...	to-iwa-zu というず (C.P.)	212
due to ...	de で	24
due to	kara から	61, 63
due to	ni に	128
due to ...	nite にて	142
<b>[E]</b>		
(quantity) each ...	zutsu ずつ	259
even	demo でも	26

even	made まで	86
even	mo も	97
even	ni-mo にも (C.P.)	136
even	sae さえ	179
even if (I) were to ...	tte って	234
even if (you) were to ...	tatte たって	189
even if (you) were to ...	tokorode ところで	215
even if (you) were to ...	to-shite-mo としても (C.P.)	224
(even) if (you) were to do ...	ni-shite-mo にしても (C.P.)	140
even (something) is/does ...	datte だって	15
(even) though	domo ども	30
even though	keredomo けれども	70
even though	kuse-ni くせに (C.P.)	82
even though	monono もの	102
even though	nagara ながら	111
even though	nagara-mo ながらも (C.P.)	112
even though	ni-mo-kakawara-zu にもかかわらず (C.P.)	137
even though	noni のに	167, 168
even though	tatte たって	189
even though	te て	192
even though	to-wa-ie とはいえ (C.P.)	227
even though (it's not to the extent that) ...	made-mo までも (C.P.)	88
even while doing ...	nagara-mo ながらも (C.P.)	111
every	to-yuu-to という (C.P.)	231
every single ...	to-yuu という (C.P.)	229
every time	to-yuu-to という (C.P.)	231
(excuse me, but)	keredomo けれども	72
<b>[F]</b>		
for	de で	23
for	e へ	33
for	kara から	61
for	ni に	125, 127
for	ni-shite-wa としては (C.P.)	141
for (i.e. as a means for doing ...)	no-ni のに (C.P.)	169
from	de で	23, 25
from	kara から	54, 55, 56, 59, 63
from	ni に	126, 128
from	no の	150, 152
(from)	o を	175
from	yoru より	255, 256
from a viewpoint of	kara から	62
<b>[H]</b>		
he/she said that ...	datte だって	17
how about ...?	koto こと	79

however	keredomo けれども	73
however	to-itte といって (C.P.)	212
<b>[I]</b>		
I'd thought (I)'d done (something)	ga が	41
but ...		
I hear	tte って	234
I hear	to yuu という (C.P.)	228
I hope..., though ...	ga-na(ga-naa) かな(かなあ) (C.P.)	42
I'm wondering if I could ...	ga が	40
(I say)	te て	194
(I said)	teba てば	195
(I said) ..., (do ... already!)	tara たら	187
(I) think/(I) will do ...	ka-na(ka-naa) かな(かなあ) (C.P.)	53
I wish ...	kashira かしら	68
I wish ...	na(naa) な(なあ)	106
I wish (it) would ...	ka-na(ka-naa) かな(かなあ) (C.P.)	53
I wonder ...	kashira かしら	68
I wonder ...	yara やら	250
(I) wonder ...?	ka-na(ka-naa) かな(かなあ)	52
(I) wonder ...	kashira かしら	66
(I) wonder ...	no-daroo のだろう (C.P.)	159
if ...	ba ば	1
if	ka か	46
if	to と	208
(if ...), but...	keredomo けれども	71
(if ...), can/would do ..., (but...)	ga が	40
(if ...), can/would do ..., (but...)	noni のに	168
if (I) were to ...	te-wa ては	198
if only ...	mono-o ものを	104
if only	sae さえ	179
if ... then	mononara(mon-nara) ものなら(もんなら)	101
if (we) say that, then ...	to-yuu-to というと (C.P.)	231
if (you think) you can ...	mononara (mon-nara) ものなら(もんなら)	102
in	de で	18, 19
in	kara から	55
in	ni に	119, 121, 124, 125
in	ni-oi-te において (C.P.)	139
in	no の	150, 151
in addition	mo も	95
in addition	ni に	129
in (amount of time)	de で	21
in doing ...	no-ni のに (C.P.)	169
in order to do ...	ni に	130
in order to ...	no-ni のに (C.P.)	169
in referring to	wa は	235

in the field of	ni-oite において (C.P.)	139
in the manner of	to と	207
(in this manner) ...	de で	24
(indeed)	kosoこそ	75
... -ing	ni に	134
into	ni に	121
Is it true that ...?	tte って	233
isn't it ...	koto こと	78
is/are probably ...	no-daroo のだろう (C.P.)	159
it's not necessary to ...	made-mo までも (C.P.)	88
it's said	to yuu という...	228
(it so happened that ...)	no deshita のでした	165
<b>[J]</b>		
judging from	kara から	62
just	bakashi ばかり	10
just	dake だけ	10
just	kiri きり	74
just	made まで	87
just about to do (something)	bakari ばかり	7
just for/to ...	made-ni までに (C.P.)	89
just when ...	tokoro-e ところへ (C.P.)	216
<b>[K]</b>		
keep doing ...	tewa ては	200
<b>[L]</b>		
let's ...	ka か	50
let's leave the ...	to-shi-te として (C.P.)	222
like	nado(nanka) など(なんか)	109
<b>[M]</b>		
(made of)	no の	147
merely	made まで	87
<b>[N]</b>		
never (not even once)	to と	204
never mind ...	to-mo-are ともあれ (C.P.)	220
never mind (something)...	dokoroka どころか	29
no ...	mo も	96
no better than	yoru より	256
no fewer/less than	mo も	95
no less than	kara から	60
no matter ...	temo ても	196
no one	datte だって	16
not all bad	demo でも	28
not any	mo も	96
(not) any more (than)	shika しか	182
(not) as much/little as ...	hodo ほど	44
(not) as much as	to と	204

(not) ..., either	mo も	92
(not) even ...	sura すら	185
not even ...	to-shi-te として (C.P.)	223
not having done ...	n de んで	115
not possible to do, (for example)	dokoro どころ	29
not unthinkable	demo でも	28
nothing	datte だって	16
nothing	mo も	96
nothing except for ...	hoka ほか	45
numbering	to-yuu という (C.P.)	228
<b>[O]</b>		
of	de で	23
of	kara から	54
of	kara から	59
of	no の	144, 145, 148, 149, 152, 157
..., okay?	ne(nee) ね(ねえ)	117
on	de で	25
on	ni に	119, 121, 124
on	no の	149, 150
on	o を	176
on the basis of	yoru より	256
one	no の	152
only	bakashi ばかり	10
only	dake だけ	10
only	hoka ほか	45
only	kiri きり	74
only	nomi のみ	166, 167
(only) about ...	bakashi ばかり	9
only if	sae さえ	179
only (this) and nothing else	shika しか	182
... or something	nante なんて	112
out of	kara から	55, 59, 63
over	no の	150
owing to ...	de で	24
owing to ...	nite にて	142
<b>[P]</b>		
per	ni に	125
perhaps because of ...	ka か	47
perhaps it's because ...	no-deshoo のでしょう (C.P.)	164
please	te-ne てね (C.P.)	198
putting aside ...	to-mo-are ともあれ (C.P.)	220
<b>[R]</b>		
rather than doing ...	kurai(gurai) くらい(ぐらい)	81
regardless of	temo ても	196
..., right?	na な	106

..., right?	ne(nee) ね(ねえ) .....	116
<b>[S]</b>		
... say (that)	tte って .....	232
seeing	kara から .....	61
shall we?	ya や .....	244
should (I/we) do ...	kashira かしら .....	67
should there be ...	mononara (mon-nara) ものなら (もんなら) .....	101
since	kara から .....	56, 61
since	mono もの .....	99
since	node(n-de) ので(んで) .....	161
since/because ..., (as expected) ...	dake-ni だけに (C.P.) .....	13
since (... was not expected) ...	dake-ni だけに (C.P.) .....	13
..., so	mono もの .....	99
so	kara から .....	61
(something) is/was done by (some-thing)	de で .....	26
something like ...	demo でも .....	27
(something like)	kurai(gurai) くらい(ぐらい) .....	80
something (like) ...	nado(nanka) など(なんか) .....	108
something like ...	nado(nanka) など(なんか) .....	109
something like ..., (I hear)	toka とか .....	214
(something) that ...	to-yuu という .....	228
speaking of ...	teba てば .....	195
speaking of ...	to ie-ba といえば (C.P.) .....	210
(speaking of)	tte って .....	232
starting with ...	kara-shite からして (C.P.) .....	65
such a thing like	tari たり .....	188
such as	to itta といった (C.P.) .....	211
such as ... and ... (and ..., etc.)	toka とか .....	213
<b>[T]</b>		
than	yoru より .....	253, 254
that (introduces a clause or a phrase)	to と .....	206
that means ...	to-yuu-no-wa というのは (C.P.) .....	230
that which is	no の .....	149
the (noun) called ...	tte って .....	232
the fact is that ...	no の .....	155
the moment ...	ya や .....	243
the one	no の .....	152
the reason (for that) ...	to-yuu-no-wa というのは (C.P.) .....	230
the (thing) that is called ...	to-wa とは (C.P.) .....	225
there is no choice but	shika しか .....	183
they say	to-yuu という (C.P.) .....	228
(they) say	tte って .....	234
(this is what I think), but ...	ga が .....	40

though	keredomo けれども	70
through	kara から	55
through	o を	176
till	made まで	83
to	e へ	32
to	e へ	33
to	made まで	83, 84, 86
to	ni に	121, 122, 125, 132
to	no の	148
to do ...	ni に	130
to tell the truth	no の	155
to the extent of	made まで	86
to the extent that ...	hodo ほど	43
to the extent that ...	kurai(gurai) くらい(ぐらい)	80
to think that ...	to-wa とは (C.P.)	226
too	mo も	92
totaling	to-yuu という (C.P.)	228
towards	e へ	32
<b>[U]</b>		
until	made まで	83, 86
up to	made まで	85
(up to)	made-ni までに	90
<b>[W]</b>		
what is/was it ...?	ke け	69
whatever ...	demo でも	27
when	te-wa ては (C.P.)	199
when	to と	208
when	tokoro ところ	215
when	ya や	243
when (something happens)... (instead of "if ...")	ba ば	1
whenever	demo でも	27
when is/was it ...?	ke け	69
whether ...?	ka か	46
while	ni-shite にして	140
while doing ..., (also doing ...)	nagara ながら	110
while doing ..., on the way, do ...	gatera がてら	42
why don't we ...	ka か	50
why don't we ...?	koto こと	79
why don't you do ...	ka か	51
with	ni に	126, 127
with	no の	144, 148
with	te て	191
with	te-wa ては (C.P.)	199
with	to と	202

with	to-wa とは (C.P.)	225
(with intention to) ...	de で	24
within	made まで	85
would we?	ya や	244
would you ...?	te-ne てね (C.P.)	198
<b>[Y]</b>		
yet	keredomo けれども	73
(you) are asking/saying ...?	tte って	233
(you) did ..., remember?	kuse-ni くせに	82



## GLOSSARY (Japanese-English)

### [B]

ba ば	“considering (something, it is evident that ...)”	2
ba ば	“if ...”	1
ba ば	“when (something happens) ... (instead of “if ...”)”	1
bakari ばかり	“always just doing (something)” “doing only one thing all the time”	5
bakari ばかり	“approximately”	7
bakari ばかり	“could only do (something)”	5
bakari ばかり	“just about to do (something)”	7
bakashi ばかり	“just”	10
bakashi ばかり	“only”	10
bakashi ばかり	“(only) about ...”	9

### [D]

dake だけ	“as much as ...”	11
dake だけ	“only” “just”	11
dakeni だけに	“since/because ..., (as expected) ...”	13
dakeni だけに	“since ( ...was not expected) ...”	13
datte だって	“anyone” “anytime” “anywhere”	16
datte だって	“even (something) is/does ...”	15
datte だって	“he/she said that ...”	17
datte だって	“no one” “nothing”	16
de で	“at”	20
de で	“at” “in”	18
de で	“at” “for”	23
de で	“by” “for”	23
de で	“by” “from” “on” “according to”	25
de で	“depending on” “according to”	25
de で	“do (something) by using (something)”	21
de で	“due to ...” “owing to ...”	24
de で	“from” “of”	23
de で	“in” “among”	19
de で	“in (amount of time)”	21
de で	“(in this manner) ...” “(with intention to) ...”	24
de で	“(something) is/was done by (something)”	26
demo でも	“even”	26
demo でも	“not all bad” “not unthinkable”	28
demo でも	“something like ...”	27
demo でも	“whatever” “whenever”	27

dokoro どころ	"not possible to do, (for example)"	29
dokoroka どころか	"never mind (something) ..."	29
domo どうも	"(even) though"	30
<b>[E]</b>		
e へ	"at"	33
e へ	"to" "for"	33
e へ	"to" "towards"	32
<b>[G]</b>		
ga が	"as" "as for" "as you've already heard ..."	38
ga が	"but" "despite doing (something)" "although"	39
ga が	"I'd thought (I'd done (something) but ..."	41
ga が	"I'm wondering if I could ..." "(this is what I think), but ..."	40
ga が	"(if ...), can/would do ..., (but ...)"	40
ga-na(ga-naa) かな(かなあ)	"I hope ..., though ..."	42
gatera がてら	"while doing ..., on the way, do ..."	42
<b>[H]</b>		
hodo ほど	"about" "approximately"	43
hodo ほど	"(not) as much/little as ..."	44
hodo ほど	"to the extent that ..."	43
hoka ほか	"nothing except for ..." "only"	45
<b>[K]</b>		
ka か	"if" "whether"	46
ka か	"perhaps because of ..."	47
ka か	"why don't we ..." "do you want to ..."	
	"let's ..."	50
ka か	"why don't you do ..."	51
ka-i かい	(not translatable)	52
ka-na(ka-naa) かな(かなあ)	"(I) think/(I) will do ..."	53
ka-na(ka-naa) かな(かなあ)	"I wish (it) would ..."	53
ka-na(ka-naa) かな(かなあ)	"(I) wonder ...?"	52
kara から	"as" "so" "since" "due to" "for" "because"	
	"considering" "seeing"	61
kara から	"as many as" "as much as" "no less than"	60
kara から	"from a viewpoint of" "judging from" "by"	
	"according to"	62
kara から	"from" "at" "since"	56
kara から	"from" "of"	54
kara から	"from" "of" "out of"	59
kara から	"from" "out of" "due to"	63
kara から	"from" "through" "out of" "in"	55
kara-shite からして	"consequently"	66
kara-shite からして	"starting with ..."	65
kashira かしら	"I wish ..." "could (you) do ..."	68
kashira かしら	"(I) wonder ..."	66

kashira かしら	"I wonder ..."	68
kashira かしら	"should (I/we) do ..."	67
ke け	"when is/was it ...?" "what is/was it ...?"	69
keredomo (keredo, kedo, kedomo) けれど (けれど, けど, けども)	"even though" "but"	70
keredomo (keredo, kedo, kedomo) けれど (けれど, けど, けども)	"(excuse me, but)"	72
keredomo (keredo, kedo, kedomo) けれど (けれど, けど, けども)	"however" "yet"	73
keredomo (keredo, kedo, kedomo) けれど (けれど, けど, けども)	"(if ...), but ..."	71
keredomo (keredo, kedo, kedomo) けれど (けれど, けど, けども)	"though" "but"	70
kiri きり	"after doing ..., (not once done ...)"	74
kiri きり	"continuously only doing ..."	74
kiri きり	"only" "just"	74
koso こそ	"(precisely) because"	76
koso こそ	"(indeed)"	75
koto こと	"how about ...?" "why don't we ...?"	79
koto こと	"isn't it ..."	78
kurai (gurai) くらい (ぐらい)	"about" "approximately"	79
kurai (gurai) くらい (ぐらい)	"rather than doing ..."	81
kurai (gurai) くらい (ぐらい)	"(something like)"	80
kurai (gurai) くらい (ぐらい)	"to the extent that ..."	80
kuse-ni ぐせに	"even though" "but"	82
kuse-ni ぐせに	"(you) did ..., remember?"	82
<b>[M]</b>		
made まだ	"even"	86
made まだ	"just" "merely"	87
made まだ	"to" "as far as"	84
made まだ	"to" "till" "until"	83
made まだ	"until" "to" "as far as" "to the extent of"	86
made まだ	"up to" "within"	85
made-mo までも	"even though (it's not to the extent that) ..."	88
made-mo までも	"it's not necessary to ..."	88
made-ni までに	"before"	90
made-ni までに	"just for/to ..."	89
made-ni までに	"(up to)"	90
mo も	"also" "too" "(not) ..., either"	92
mo も	"around" "about"	95
mo も	"as many/much as" "no fewer/less than" "as long a time as" "as far (a distance) as"	95
mo も	"even"	97
mo も	"in addition" "as well as"	95
mo も	"not any" "no ..." "nothing"	96

mo も	"this/that many" "this/that much" .....	95
mo も	"too" "also" "both" "as well as" "either ... or" .....	93
mono もの	"because" .....	98
mono もの	"since" "..., so" .....	99
mono-de(mon-de) もので(もんで)	"because" .....	100
monoka(monka) ものか(もんか)	(not translatable) .....	100
mononara(mon-nara) ものなら(もんなら)	"if ... then" .....	101
mononara(mon-nara) ものなら(もんなら)	"if (you think) you can ..." .....	102
mononara(mon-nara) ものなら(もんなら)	"should there be ..." .....	101
monono ものの	"even though" "although" .....	102
mono-o ものを	"although" .....	104
mono-o ものを	"if only ..." .....	104
<b>[N]</b>		
na な	"don't ..." .....	107
na な	"..., right?" .....	106
na(naa) な(なあ)	"I wish ..." .....	106
nado(nanka) など(なんか)	"like" .....	109
nado(nanka) など(なんか)	"something (like) ..." .....	108
nado(nanka) など(なんか)	"something like ..." .....	109
nagara なから	"even though" .....	111
nagara なから	"while doing ..., (also doing ...)" .....	110
nagara-mo ながらも	"even though" .....	112
nagara-mo ながらも	"even while doing ..." .....	111
nante なんて	"... or something" .....	112
nari なり	"a ... or something" .....	114
nari なり	"as soon as" .....	113
n-de んで	"(I'm sorry that I) did not do ..., but ..." .....	115
n-de んで	"not having done ..." .....	115
ne(nee) ね(ねえ)	"..., okay?" .....	117
ne(nee) ね(ねえ)	"..., right?" .....	116
ni に	"and" "in addition" .....	129
ni に	"and" "with" .....	127
ni に	"as a token of" "as" "for" "by way of" .....	127
ni に	"at" "in" "on" .....	119
ni に	"at" "to" "in" "for" "per" .....	125
ni に	"by" .....	131
ni に	"by" "at" "according to" "from" "due to" ...	128
ni に	"from" "with" .....	126
ni に	"... -ing" .....	134
ni に	"on" "in" "at" .....	124
ni に	"to" "in" "on" "into" .....	121
ni に	"to" .....	122

ni に	"to" .....	132
ni に	"to do ..." "in order to do" .....	130
ni-mo にも	"even" "also" .....	136
ni-mo-kakawara-zu にもかかわらず	"despite that fact" .....	138
ni-mo-kakawara-zu にもかかわらず	"even though" .....	137
ni-oi-te において	"concerning" "in the field of" .....	139
ni-oi-te において	"in" .....	139
ni-shite にして	"while" "at" .....	140
ni-shite-mo にしても	"(even) if (you) were to do ..." .....	140
ni-shite-wa にしては	"for" .....	141
nite にて	"at" "with" "in" .....	142
nite にて	"due to ..." "owing to ..." .....	142
no の	"a fact" "a matter" .....	154
no の	"..., all right?" .....	155
no の	"at" "in" "on" "over" "from" .....	150
no の	"in" .....	151
no の	"(made of)" .....	147
no の	"of" .....	145
no の	"of" "belong to" "with" .....	144
no の	"of" "by" "with" "between" "to" .....	148
no の	"of" "created by" .....	148
no の	"of" "from" .....	147
no の	"of" "on" "about" "at" .....	149
no の	"of" "from" .....	152
no の	"one" "the one" .....	152
no の	"that which is" .....	149
no の	"(the color of)" .....	151
no の	"the fact is that ..." "to tell the truth" .....	155
no-da(n-da) のだ(んだ)	(not translatable) .....	158
no-daroo のだろう	"is/are probably ..." "(I) wonder ..." .....	159
node(n-de) ので(んで)	"(because)" .....	162
node(n-de) ので(んで)	"since" "because" .....	161
no-de ので	"by/from the fact that ..." .....	162
no-de aru のである	"(because)" .....	163
no deshita のでした	"(it so happened that ...) " .....	165
no deshoo のでしょう	"perhaps it's because ..." .....	164
nomi のみ	"only" .....	166, 167
noni のに	"even though" .....	168
noni のに	"(if...), can/would do ..., (but...)" .....	168
no-ni のに	"for (i.e. as a means for doing ...)" .....	169
no-ni のに	"in order to ..." "in doing ..." .....	169
<b>[O]</b>		
o を	"(at)" "(from)" .....	175
o を	"on" "through" .....	176

# [S]

sa さ	(not translatable) .....	178
sae さえ	"even" .....	179
sae さえ	"if only" "only if" .....	179
shi し	"... (and) ..., so ..." .....	181
shi し	"... but ..." .....	181
shika しか	"(not) any more (than)" "only (this) and nothing else" .....	182
shika しか	"there is no choice but" .....	183
sura すら	"(not) even ..." .....	185

# [T]

tara たら	"(I said) ..., (do ... already!)" .....	187
tari たり	"such a thing as" .....	188
tatte たって	"even if (you) were to ..." .....	189
tatte たって	"even though" .....	189
te て	"and" .....	191
te て	"because" .....	190
te て	"by" "with" .....	191
te て	"do (verb) and ..." .....	190
te て	"even though" .....	192
te て	"(I say)" .....	194
teba てば	"(I said)" .....	195
teba てば	"speaking of ..." .....	195
temo ても	"at most" "at least" .....	197
temo ても	"despite" "regardless of" .....	196
temo ても	"no matter ..." .....	196
te-ne てね	"please" "would you ...?" .....	198
te-wa ては	"if (I) were to ..." .....	198
te-wa ては	"keep doing ..." .....	200
te-wa ては	"with" "when" .....	199
to と	"against" .....	203
to と	"and" .....	200
to と	"if" "when" .....	208
to と	"in the manner of" .....	207
to と	"(not) as much as" "never (not even once)" .....	204
to と	"that" .....	206
to と	"that (introduces a clause or a phrase)" .....	201
to と	"when" "as soon as" .....	208
to と	"with" "accompanied by" .....	202
to-ie-ba といえ	"speaking of ..." .....	210
to itta といった	"such as" .....	211
to itte といって	"however" .....	212
to-iwa-zu といわず	"don't say that ..." .....	212
toka とか	"something like ..., (I hear)" .....	214
toka とか	"such as ... and ... (and ..., etc.)" .....	213

tokoro ところ	“when” .....	215
tokorode ところで	“even if (you) were to ...” .....	215
tokoro-e ところへ	“just when ...” .....	216
tokoroga ところが	“but” .....	216
tokoro-o ところを	“although (usually) ...” .....	217
tomo とも	“..., all right” .....	219
tomo とも	“at least” “at most” .....	219
to-mo-are ともあれ	“putting aside ...” “never mind ...” .....	220
to-shi-te として	“as” .....	222
to-shi-te として	“let’s leave the ...” .....	222
to-shi-te として	“not even ...” .....	223
to-shite-mo としても	“as for ..., also/too ...” .....	223
to-shite-mo としても	“even if (you) were to ...” .....	224
to-shite-wa としては	“as for” .....	225
to-wa とは	“the (thing) that is called ...” .....	225
to-wa とは	“to think that ...” .....	226
to-wa とは	“with” .....	225
to-wa-ie とはいえ	“even though” .....	227
to-yuu という	“... called/named ...” .....	227
to-yuu という	“every single ...” .....	229
to-yuu という	“I hear” “they say” “it’s said” .....	228
to-yuu という	“numbering” “totaling” .....	228
to-yuu ということ	“(something) that ...” .....	228
to-yuu-koto-wa ということ	“that means ...” .....	229
to-yuu-no-wa というのは	“the reason (for that) ...” .....	230
to-yuu-to というと	“every” “every time” .....	231
to-yuu-to というと	“if (we) say that, then ...” .....	231
tte って	“even if (I) were to ...” .....	234
tte って	“Is it true that ...?” .....	233
tte って	“... say (that)” .....	232
tte って	“(speaking of)” .....	232
tte って	“the (noun) called ...” .....	232
tte って	“(they) say” “I hear” .....	234
tte って	“(You) are asking/saying ...?” .....	233
<b>[W]</b>		
wa は	“as for ...” “in referring to ...” .....	236
wa わ	(not translatable) .....	239
<b>[Y]</b>		
ya や	“... and ... (among other things/places)” .....	242
ya や	“as soon as” “when” “the moment ...” .....	243
ya や	“shall we?” “would we?” .....	244
yai やい	(not translatable) .....	246
ya-ina-ya やいなや	“as soon as ...” .....	247
yara やら	“and ... (other things)” .....	249
yara やら	“I wonder ...” .....	250

yo よ	(not translatable) .....	251
ori より	“from” .....	255
ori より	“no better than” .....	256
ori より	“on the basis of” “from” .....	256
ori より	“than” .....	253, 254
<b>[Z]</b>		
ze ゼ	(not translatable) .....	258
zo ゼ	(not translatable) .....	258
zutsu ずつ	“... at a time” “(quantity) each ...” .....	259